JULIUS CAESAR

From the marble bust in the British Museum
LATIN READER

NATURE STUDY AND EASY STORIES

FOR SIGHT READING DURING

THE FIRST YEAR IN LATIN

BY

A. B. REYNOLDS

HEAD OF FOREIGN LANGUAGE DEPARTMENT

HITCHCOCK MILITARY ACADEMY

SAN RAFAEL, CALIFORNIA

Bene inceptum, dimidium confectum

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS

BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO
TO
ALL THOSE BOYS AND GIRLS WHO SEEK BY MEANS OF THE LATIN TO IMPROVE THEIR UNDERSTANDING OF ENGLISH TO ACQUIRE A TRUE APPRECIATION OF ANCIENT LITERATURE OR TO KNOW THE FOUNTAIN HEAD OF SO MUCH THAT IS INDISPENSABLE TO THEIR PART IN MODERN LIFE THIS BOOK IS DEDICATED
PREFACE

DURING the first year pupils must form the habit of reading Latin. If we had the material, they might learn to read Latin as they learned to read English, by reading. What can be done to get this material? Of what should this material consist?

We are preparing them to read authors. Our own experience has often shown us that the first few pages of a new book seem difficult — usually the most difficult of the whole book — and so much so that we might say of many books: “Well begun is half done.”

The majority of pupils who read much Latin, read Caesar, Cicero, and Vergil. Their first attack upon each of these authors is nearly always made upon the first pages of the Gallic War, Book I or Book II, the First Oration against Catiline, and the First Book of the Æneid. Their reading during the first year can be made to contain every important word and every form and construction occurring in those few pages.

During the first year’s work, students of Latin are obliged to read hundreds and even thousands of sentences illustrating Latin forms and syntax. Those sentences are for the most part fragments of the sentences of Caesar and other Latin authors and are usually arranged so as to illustrate and review the use of certain constructions with regularity and precision.

Now if those sentences can be made to tell something worth knowing and remembering, the pupil’s interest will not have to be either forced or lacking, and he may find some encouragement to re-read many times and even to memorize passages illustrating the more common forms and constructions and fix them forever in mind. He will also be enabled to bring into play those instincts (that have already been so well trained while learning to read his own language) by means of which he has gathered the meaning of hundreds of English words from their connection in sentences and not lapse from the first into the helpless condition of a vocabulary slave.

The words and constructions of those first few famous pages above mentioned were used by the same authors elsewhere in their works — and by other authors — to say things that are entertaining and worth remembering. By gathering together a large number of phrases and sentences from Nepos,
Preface

Vergil, Sallust, Pliny's *Natural History*, Cicero's Speeches, the *Somnium Scipionis* and the *Tusculan Disputations*, Caesar's sketches of the Gauls, Germans, and Britons, from Tacitus, Livy, and others, one may easily possess the wherewith to tell almost any story about Nature, the Geography of Europe, the History of Romans, or make sketches and comparisons of ancient and modern life, and even construct interesting fiction using all those very words and constructions that the pupil will first meet (with very few additions) till he shall not find anything strange in the first pages of the authors but the story.

Such has been the process in creating this book and such is its purpose.

We merely hope that here and there pupils will find some passage that will be to them not something to pass over and be rid of, but something that they will gladly go back to and learn.

Two distinct methods have been employed to induce the student to help himself. First, where forms are familiar, attention is called to the meaning of the root word in one or more English derivatives; second, where forms require explanation or where the meaning is difficult to illustrate by English derivatives, the particular form is explained at the bottom of the page. The general vocabulary is for occasional reference.

I desire to express my thanks to Mr. S. J. Halley of Belmont School, Belmont, California, for valuable criticisms of the text; to Major G. H. White and Mr. G. A. Broadfoot of Hitchcock Military Academy, and to Mr. J. W. Hunt, formerly of the same school, for suggestions regarding the treatment of grammatical matters; to Mr. W. H. Edmands of the University of California for his help in arranging the plot of the last story; to Mr. Webster Dillon of San Leandro, Cal., for assistance in preparing the appendix; to Miss Hazel E. Kyle of San Rafael for many suggestions regarding the matter and arrangement of the appendix; to Mr. Oscar I. Losey of Meridian, Cal., for his help in reading the proof; and to the last two for their painstaking work in eliminating typographical errors from the manuscript.

A. B. R.

San Rafael, California, May, 1918.
TO THE TEACHER

I. The first twenty-one readings are so arranged as to afford opportunity for a very thorough study or review of the five essential elements of all sentences, viz.:

1. Predicate Verb — the word that asserts (finite verb) or represents a former assertion (infinitive), in boldface on page 3.
2. Subject — printed in boldface on pp. 4, 10, and 23.
3. Predicate Noun or Adjective — represented as being the same person or thing as the subject or as a quality, condition, etc. of the same — i.e. who or what the subject is or is made or called, printed in boldface on pp. 5, 11, and 22.
4. Direct Object — always some other person or thing (except in case of reflexives), printed in boldface on pp. 6 and 15.
5. Modifiers of all classes — all genitives (pp. 14, 19, 20, and 21), datives including the indirect object (p. 8), ablatives (pp. 9 and 12), prepositional phrases (pp. 13, 16, and 17), etc.

II. If left to themselves, pupils are sure to put all their energy into memorizing the English translation and rely on a merely visual impression to retain the Latin which they are setting out to learn. To prevent their forming this pernicious habit, it might be helpful: (1) to have them read each lesson till they can pronounce it with ease, (2) to have them read the Latin over after translating till they can bring out the meaning and show that they understand what they are reading.

In order not to become monotonous, each reading should have a definite purpose. One pupil may be asked to re-read the whole page promptly in Latin after translating. Another may then be required to read one sentence at a time, pausing for a third to select the subject (or some other essential element not in boldface type) and for a fourth to repeat the translation briskly. Concentrating on one element at a time soon develops the habit of reading observingly.

vii
III. After pupils have learned to recognize the elements quickly, they may be required to go over a page taking each word as it comes and writing it in the proper column, thus:

(Classification or Parsing of the Words on page 6)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Nominative</th>
<th>Finite Verb</th>
<th>Predicate Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative Direct Obj.</th>
<th>Accusative of Measure e.g.</th>
<th>Ablatives</th>
<th>Preps.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lūx</td>
<td>dicitur</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>Lūcem</td>
<td>Lūce</td>
<td>Dē</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nox</td>
<td>vocātur</td>
<td>tenebrae</td>
<td>Lūcem</td>
<td>Tenebrīs</td>
<td>ab</td>
<td>ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tellūs</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>lūcida</td>
<td>lumen</td>
<td>sōle</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>dē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ea</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>obscūra</td>
<td>lumen</td>
<td>multās</td>
<td>dē</td>
<td>ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ea)</td>
<td>accipit</td>
<td>Lūcem</td>
<td>lumen</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>ab</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ea)</td>
<td>accipit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sōl</td>
<td>dat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lūna</td>
<td>dat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is, ea</td>
<td>illūminat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lūmen</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>candidum lūcem</td>
<td></td>
<td>Accusative w. Preps.</td>
<td>Accusative w. Preps.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lūmen (nōs)</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>ārdēns suāve</td>
<td></td>
<td>(sē)</td>
<td>(p. 8)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nōs)</td>
<td>legimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(legimus)</td>
<td></td>
<td>suē</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēs duae (nōs)</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>lūx</td>
<td>lūcem tellūrem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nōs)</td>
<td>(legimus)</td>
<td>tenebrae</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Accusative</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Predicate Accusative</th>
<th>Adverbs</th>
<th>Datives</th>
<th>Genitives</th>
<th>Conj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lūcem</td>
<td>dicērī</td>
<td>diem</td>
<td>nōn</td>
<td>terra</td>
<td>sōlis et</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noctem</td>
<td>appellārī</td>
<td>tenebrās</td>
<td>quoque interdiū</td>
<td>et</td>
<td>lūnae et</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tellūrem</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>obscūram</td>
<td>noctū</td>
<td></td>
<td>sōlis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eam</td>
<td>accipere</td>
<td></td>
<td>noctū</td>
<td></td>
<td>lūnae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eum, eam</td>
<td>illūmināre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lūmen (esse)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(lūmen)</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>candidum ārdēns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>suāve</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IV. The meaning of some three hundred Latin words is taught with the text by means of derivatives. This at once compels a careful analysis of the English words and paves the way for collecting and defining other derivatives from the same roots, at first by the help of §§ 40–47; 127, 137 of the appendix, and later by the use of §§ 219–223. See suggestions on page 249.
To the Teacher

V. In the simpler readings pupils are required to translate infinitives in all the ways in which they will be obliged to render them later. Both literal and free translation may be illustrated as follows:

**Legere** read: to read; (be) reading; do reading;
legi (be) read; to be read; (being) read; reading (be) done;

Nós legere iussit he bade us read;
he ordered us to read;
he ordered that-we read;
he bade us be reading.

Nós legere audiit he heard us read;
he heard us reading;
(he heard-about us reading);
he heard-about our reading;
he heard that-we read.

Nós legere patitur he lets us do (the) reading;
he allows us to do reading.

Legi intellegēbat he knew (it) to be read.

Legi passus est he let (it) be read.

Legi audīvit he heard (it) read;
he heard-about (it) being read;
he heard reading done;
he heard-about (the) reading being done;
he heard that-it was read;
he heard that-reading was being done.

In order to make the pupil appreciate the forms used in the Indirect Statement on page 3, it may be rendered, first literally:

"We are reading-about us living on the earth; (about) the earth looking flat; (about) it not being flat, however; (about) it being round; (about) us calling it a globe" and then freely, as:

"We read (that) we live on the earth; (that) the earth appears flat; (that) it is not flat," etc.

VI. Directions for the study of syntax are merely suggestions to be used at the discretion of the teacher.
## CONTENTS

*Introduction*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To the Student</td>
<td>xvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading and Translating</td>
<td>xix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Framework of Sentences</td>
<td>xx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain Work and Thumb Work</td>
<td>xxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Right Attitude</td>
<td>xxi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Pronunciation and Derivatives*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Illustrations and Cautions</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Remains of Ancient Words</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Nature Study*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Earth</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Sun</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Moon</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light and Shadows</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Source of Light</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earthlight and Moonlight</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunlight</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Stars</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starlight</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day and Night</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The North</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Four Winds</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Earth's Interior</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Land and Water</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contents</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE ATMOSPHERE</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE SEASONS</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sketches of Roman Life</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE LATINSES</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHUMS</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN A ROMAN PRIMARY SCHOOL</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A LESSON IN NUMBERS</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIGHT AND COLOR</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE MEASUREMENT OF TIME</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPATIUM</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTHER STUDIES</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOURS AND WATCHES</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE DAYS OF THE MONTH</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE JULIAN CALENDAR</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEASURES OF SPACE</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE ROMAN MEASURES</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE CIRCLE</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRAVITY</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE STUDY OF NUMBERS</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>READING AND THE VALUE OF READING</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE CARE OF THE EYES</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WRITING — ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A ROMAN’S AMBITION</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON THE PLANTATION</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A ROMAN HOUSE AND A ROMAN HOUSEHOLD</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE RETURN FROM SCHOOL</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BROTHER AND SISTER</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE FAMILY AT HOME</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AEMILIUS RESCUES BRENNUS</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A BIRTHDAY REQUEST</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AN Invitation to Visit Rome</strong></td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Roman Politics</strong></td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Arrangements for the Trip</strong></td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A Visit to Cicero</strong></td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The City — with Crassus</strong></td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A Fire in Rome</strong></td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Brennus Saves Aemilius</strong></td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Arminius a Suebian Boy</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Gauls and the Germans</strong></td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>In a German Forest</strong></td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Arminius Goes a-Hunting</strong></td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nasua Returns with Captives</strong></td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Arminius Becomes a Slave</strong></td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Given to the King's Sister</strong></td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Noricia is Sent to Marry Ariovistus</strong></td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>With Ariovistus in Gaul</strong></td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Germans in Gaul</strong></td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Roman Province of Gaul</strong></td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Life in the German Camp</strong></td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Guarding the Hostages</strong></td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>What Arminius Learns about the Gauls</strong></td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Romans Name Ariovistus King and Friend</strong></td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rumors from Helvetia</strong></td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gallic Chiefs</strong></td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Helvetian Nation</strong></td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Harudes Cross the Rhine</strong></td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Fears of Ariovistus</strong></td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Arrival of the Roman Proconsul</strong></td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Helvetians Migrate</strong></td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Caesar Avenges Lucius Cassius</strong></td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contents

The Grain Does Not Arrive ........................................... 90
The Plots of Dumnonix ............................................. 91
The Helvetians Defeated ........................................... 94
The Council of Bibracte ........................................... 96
An Embassy from Caesar ........................................... 97
A Message from Caesar's Enemies ................................. 98
The Parley with Caesar ............................................ 100
Ariovistus Defeated .............................................. 101
The Death of Norica .............................................. 10
Crassus Rescues Arminius and Velaeda ......................... 103
A Long Winter in Captivity ..................................... 104
The Council of Luca ............................................... 105
A Visit to Rome .................................................... 106
Given to Quintus Cicero ......................................... 106
Arminius Warns the Suebians .................................... 107
The Sugambrians Attack Cicero's Camp ......................... 109
Arminius and Velaeda Escape .................................... 110

Appendix

Sounds, Quantity, and Accent .................................... 111
General View of Nouns and Adjectives ......................... 117
Endings and Non-endings ........................................ 118
Observations That Count ......................................... 124
Gender of Nouns and Adjectives ................................ 127
Endings of Nouns and Adjectives ............................... 128
The Meaning of the Cases ....................................... 130
List of Latin Prepositions ...................................... 131
Place, Position, Situation, and Condition .................... 132
Persons and Things ............................................... 133
Indefinite Numbers ............................................... 135
Indefinite or Undefined Persons .............................. 136
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connecting Words</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agreement of Verbs</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bis, Biduum, Biennium</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressions of Measure</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Common Adverbs</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite Quantities and Values</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite or Undefined Things</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cases Known by Their Use in Sentences</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paradigms of Nouns</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Observations — Nouns</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paradigms of Regular Adjectives</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison of Adjectives</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Words Formed from Adjectives</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appositives</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time and Circumstance</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective Forms of Verbs</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duty, Necessity, etc.</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which One (of Two)?</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitives and Possessive Adjectives</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns — Relative, Indefinite, etc.</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns — Personal and Reflexive</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns — Demonstrative</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which One (of Any Number)?</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound Pronouns and Adverbs</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unus, Duo, and Tres</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerals</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitives in English</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finite Verbs and Infinitives</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitives and Their Uses</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Indicative Forms of All Classes</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Subjunctives of All Classes</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDIRECT STATEMENTS, QUESTIONS, ETC. . . . . . . 199
THE LATIN QUESTION MARKS . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 200
SEQUENCE OF TENSES . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 203
CLAUSES OF RESULT . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 205
DESCRIPTIVE AND CHARACTERISTIC CLAUSES . . . . 206
SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN CLAUSES . . . . . . . . . . . . . 207
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 210
USES OF THE GERUNDIVE AND SUPINE . . . . . . . . . 211
SUMMARY OF FACTS ABOUT VERB FORMS . . . . . . . . 211
ACTIVE, PASSIVE, AND DEPONENT FORMS . . . . . . . . 218
PARADIGMS OF VERBS . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 220–259
GENERAL OBSERVATIONS — VERBS . . . . . . . . . . . 260
THE OLDER MEANING OF WORDS . . . . . . . . . . . . 263
WORD-BUILDING — PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOUNDS . . . 264
USE OF COMPOUND VERBS . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 270
FREQUENTATIVE VERBS . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 270
INCEPTIVE VERBS . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 271
THE FRAMEWORK OF COMPLEX SENTENCES . . . . . . . 272
SENTENCE-BUILDING . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 276
THE GOVERNING POWER OF WORDS . . . . . . . . . . . 280

ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 281
VOCABULARY . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 315
INDEX . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 345
INTRODUCTION

TO THE STUDENT

The educational value of Latin is undoubted. Those who hesitate about taking it make it only a question of sparing the time or taking the trouble. But no study ever gives greater returns for the time and labor spent upon it.

Faith in Latin remains firm. Never was there a time when more people were engaged in efforts to direct the beginner aright. The sincerity of these efforts, made by those who know, is evidence of its worth to students. Even those who do not care for the study for its own sake, find it the great lubricator and time-saver among their studies.

The reason is plain. Rome has been compared to a great reservoir into which all the streams of ancient civilization flowed and in which all the growing streams of modern civilization have their source. All the hard-earned and priceless treasures of ancient knowledge and thought were gathered up by the Romans and passed on expressed in the Latin way, and the additions that represent the discoveries, advances and improvements of two thousand years continue to find expression in Latin terms.

It may be in order here to enumerate a few of the benefits you will derive from a careful study of your Latin.

One third of the words of your daily conversation and more than half the words you learn in school have been borrowed from the Romans; and fully four fifths of all the words you will ever use are related to Latin in one way or another.

Thousands of Modern English words have been built up out of Roman materials and on the Roman plan. Each Latin root word

---

1 Read now. Re-read after the first month's work.
2 By the English historian, Freeman.

xvii
you learn gives you the key to the meaning of several other Latin
words and of from two to fifty English words.\footnote{And still more in French, Spanish, Italian, etc.}

1. Two school years well spent on your Latin will save you
five years searching the English Dictionary in after life.

2. English is a language of few forms; and is therefore most
easily mastered by comparison with a language that has many
forms.

3. Latin broadens your mind and widens your view by teaching
you another and a simpler way of looking at things.

4. The study of Latin makes you look at words more closely
and in a new light, and teaches you that accuracy and careful
discrimination which is so necessary in all future work.

5. If a student of Mathematics, Science, Law, or Medicine has
not already learned a few hundred Latin words in the proper way,
he is obliged to learn thousands of technical terms the hardest way.

6. The turning of Latin into English gives you the best practice
you will ever have in the choice and arrangement of English words
and the best possible help toward becoming fluent and orderly in
speaking and writing.

7. It opens up a personal acquaintance with the cradle of civiliza-
tion through our nearest congenial neighbors in the past — the
Romans, from whom we have drawn the beginnings at least of most
that we cherish and appreciate in modern life.

These and many other advantages you will gain slowly and
steadily, often indirectly and unconsciously; so that many, whose
conversation and accomplishments show how largely they are due
to the study of Latin, have not thought of attributing them to that
source, and they are sometimes inclined to give the wrong advice
to students.

How to Read Latin

1. Latin words have no exact equivalents in English. They
mean what the writer or speaker makes them mean or construes
them to mean. *Read each paragraph over and over in Latin* aloud, or at least in a whisper, before trying to translate it. The purpose of reading the Latin is threefold:

a. to look it over, see what it says and get the meaning;
b. to accustom the eye, tongue, ear, and mind to Latin forms and phrases and to the Latin way of looking at things;
c. to have the assistance of *eye-impressions*, *ear-impressions*, *tongue-impressions*, and *mind-impressions* to help the memory retain the Latin forms, phrases, and order of words.

To get the greatest benefit from reading the Latin, we must put ourselves in the writer’s place and try to say what he intended to say, as we endeavor to make his sentences live again on our lips by giving them the proper expression.

*The Proper Time to Begin*

Begin with easy readings now and keep it up. Pupils who start to translate immediately without first reading the Latin make their work an unbearable burden later on, because they lose sight of the fact that it is the Latin that they are studying and not the English rendering of it.

With the proper start and practice of reading, Latin soon becomes “second nature” and the mind a veritable storehouse of familiar forms and phrases in the correct Latin order.

*Translating Latin*

2. The purpose of translating is merely to show others that we understand what we read and to get practice in framing English sentences. It is a waste of time to try to translate without first reading the Latin over till we feel satisfied that we know the constructions, arrangements of phrases, and, in a general way, what the whole paragraph tells. Reading several paragraphs together often clears up the meaning of many words that we might otherwise be obliged to look up.
Introduction

3. How to Attack a Sentence

First, translate the subject, if there is one. The subject is ordinarily omitted, whenever the verb does not end in -t, -nt, -tur, -ntur, and is often omitted even then.

Next, go on to the verb. (There may be two or more verbs.)
Then, go back to the predicate noun (or adjective) or object.
Many sentences have only a subject and verb with modifiers.
The skeleton of every sentence is like one of these types.

Type I. Subject and Predicate Verb.
Nōs, we, is omitted.

In terrā habitāmus. Cf. 5 g.
(On earth live-we.)
We live on the earth.

Type II a. Subject and Predicate Verb and Predicate Adjective.

Terra magna est. Cf. 5 a.
(Earth large is.)
The earth is (a) large (body).

Type II b. Subject and Predicate Verb and Predicate Noun.

Ea globus magnus dicitur. Cf. 5 a.
(It ball great spoken-of-is-it.)
It is spoken of (as) a great ball.

Type III. Subject and Predicate Verb and Direct Object.

Nōs eam globum dicimus. Cf. 5 b.
(We it sphere speak-of-we.)
We call it a sphere.

4. Always seek out and keep in mind the subject and verb of the principal statement, arranging all other parts so as to give the best effect in English.

Avoid changing active verbs to the passive, as it causes too much confusion.

One of the most profitable exercises in choice and arrangement of words is the rendering of Latin sentences in smooth, forceful English, keeping as close to the original as possible.

Relations of Words in Latin Sentences

On the following page is a list of examples of the more common elements of Latin and English sentences.
5. (To be memorized one by one as referred to later.)

a. Puer Mārcus appellātur the boy is called Mark § 74, 3
   (boy Mark named-is) Nom. Pred. — same person as subject.

b. Puerum Mārcum appellāmus we call the boy Mark
   (boy Mark call-we) Acc. — Predicate of the object.

c. Is Mārcus est it is Mark Nom. — Pred. of a subject Nom.
   Eum Mārcum esse nōvimus we know it to be Mark
   (it Mark to-be know-we) Acc. — Pred. of a subject Acc.

d. Puerī Mārcum vident the boys see Mark Acc. — Direct object.
   Mārcum annum aluimus we fed Mark (for) a year
   (Mark year fed-we) Acc. used as a Measure of time. § 68

e. Mārcō libri sunt books belong to Mark or Mark has books
   (Mark-to books are) Dat. of Possessor or Owner (asserted).
   Librōs Mārcī habēmus we have Mark’s books § 105
   (books Mark’s have-we) Gen. of Possessor or Owner (assumed).

f. Mārcō librum imperāmus we demand a book of Mark
   (Mark a-book demand-we) Dat. — Indirect object of a verb.
   Mārcō librōs dedimus we (being near) gave Mark books
   (Mark books gave-we) Dat. — Indirect object of a verb.
   Librōs ad Mārcum dedimus we sent Mark books (from afar)
   (books to Mark sent-we) Ad w. Acc. — distance traveled.
   Eius in Mārcum ōdium nōvimus we know his hatred for Mark
   (his for Mark hate know-we) In w. Acc. — Person aimed at.

g. Mārcus in vicum it Mark is-going to the village. § 60
   (Mark to hamlet goes) Nom. — Subj. of the Finite verb, it.
   Mārcum in vicum ire videō I see Mark going to the hamlet
   (Mark to hamlet go see-I) Acc. Subj. of the Inf. ire.

h. Dic, Mārcē! speak (thou), Mark! Voc. of Person Addressed.

i. Puer cum Mārcō est the boy is (in-company-) with Mark
   (boy with Mark is) Cum w. Abl. — denoting Association.
   Puer librō utītur the boy makes-use-of the book. § 62

j. Minor nātū 1 est quam Mārcus (est) is younger than Mark
   (less age-in is-he than Mark is) Nom. — Subject of est.
   Annō 2 iunior est Mārcō he is a-year younger than Mark
   (year-by younger is Mark-than) Abl. — Measure of Difference
   and Person (or thing) compared.

1 Abl. specifying in what respect. 2 Cf. annum in d. above.
Introduction

Our Task

The Value of Sight Reading

6. a. To be thoroughly acquainted with a piece of Latin is to know or readily recognize the form, meaning, and use of every word in it and get the author’s message to us.

To be thoroughly acquainted with nouns is to know or readily recognize the meaning, the gender, and all the endings each has, to show its number and case. This is our task.

To relieve this huge task of some of its tediousness and length, nouns are divided into classes having the same or nearly the same endings; so that when the endings of a few nouns in each class are known, all one has to learn is the nominative, genitive, and gender as given in vocabularies.

b. If a student is a mere translator (not a sight-reader) and therefore a slave to the vocabulary, his task is still enormous and seemingly endless. The nominative, genitive, gender, and various meanings (or hints at the meaning) of hundreds of nouns and similar facts regarding hundreds of other words must be looked up (often repeatedly). This purely mechanical work occupies four fifths of his time, that is, uses his thumbs four times as much as his brains. And yet the means of lightening this dreary task is constantly before our very eyes, if we will only use it with intelligence. Cf. § 1.

Sight reading is reading (in the original) passages that contain many words whose forms, uses, and meanings are new.

Sight translation is turning the same into English with little or no referring to vocabularies. Here and there a word must be looked up or a hint given.

c. On the one hand, the nominative, genitive, gender, and meaning of every noun must be learned; the nominative, because it is so often irregular and because the vocative is generally the same; the genitive, in order to know the base and the declension; the gender, in order to know to which class it belongs; both genitive and gender, in order to know what the rest of the endings are.
Introduction

Brain Work and Thumb Work

d. On the other hand, vocabularies are not the only source of these facts. An observing reader may gather many or even all these facts regarding the majority of Latin nouns as he goes, without the delay of using his thumbs or allowing the work to become the weary burden it so often proves to be; for modern English words betray the ancestral roots.

Magnitude (bigness) and magnify (make large) show that the Latin base, magn-, means large or great. The connection may reveal the meaning of the strangest looking word, as in:

We heard the aes ring. Someone rang the tintinnabulum.

It requires no effort and we have no choice. Both of these strange words mean "bell."

A single ending may reveal all else we need to know; as in nātūrā. Cf. Appendix § 50.

Its root nā- (sometimes gnā-) is the parent of our words, nation, native, innate (inborn), cognate (relative), nature, naturally, unnatural, etc.

But the ancient word (usually broader in meaning than ours) may include what we call the universe, all nature, make up, character, build, shape, birth, kind, and disposition. Cf. § 218.

e. Its case ending -ā tells all the rest.

Nātūrā is ablative (-ā occurs in no other case) § 55 g
Nātūrā is singular (-ā does not occur in the plural) § 55 d

Its nominative singular is nātūra and its genitive singular is nātūrae, for -ā occurs in no declension except the first. § 55 c

Nātūrā belongs to a class of nouns that are feminine, unless they denote male beings, as poēta, poet. See § 54.

Nātūrā does not denote a male being; therefore it is feminine.

Nātūrā has the same endings as prōvincia, porta, puella, etc. Cf. § 77 a.

The Right Attitude

7. The aim of introductory Latin work is to prepare students to read authors, many of whose words, forms, and usages are still unknown to them. In order that pupils may find themselves in
that situation now and be trained in the proper attitude for such work, they must meet with new words and strange forms mingled with those already familiar to them. Therefore this book is arranged for sight reading.

8. Side by side with the first readings should be studied the working principles by means of which the best readers of Latin consciously or unconsciously gather up the necessary facts, while they read and re-read to impress the Latin words and phrases and the Latin order and constructions on their memory, and enjoy the story without the constant interruption and drudgery of referring to the vocabulary. § 6 d, e.

9. The intelligent reader is always consciously or unconsciously asking himself:

   (a) "What must this word mean?"
and is constantly aware that

   (b) Cases of nouns are easily known by their use. App. § 74.

   In the dictionary a word may be said to have many meanings, but in a sentence, it is a different matter. Every sentence states something very definite, and the meaning of each word is restricted by all the others.

10. Thus when the meaning of four words of a sentence is known, the meaning assigned by the author to the fifth word will always be found to fall within the limits of the possible and the likely. To illustrate that a word must mean what the other words of the sentence force it to mean:

   We habitāmus on the earth. The earth vidētur flat. Ea is not flat autem. The earth vocātur a globe. A globe is et spoken of as sphaera.

   We see magnum lūmen in the sky. Id lūmen is dazzling bright. Id is spoken of as sól. Sól nōn vidētur flat. Is vidēitur globōsus.
**PRONUNCIATION**

The alphabet we use is Roman all but our υ and j.

To pronounce the Latin words below correctly, pronounce the familiar English words printed under each.

The vowels ā, ē, i, ē, ū and diphthongs ae, au, ei, oe, ui are prolonged twice as much as the unmarked vowels.

**CAUTION.** — Utter the syllables that contain short a and short e quickly. These vowels are like the first a in aha and e in omiē.

The meaning of the Latin words is given in parenthesis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ad (up to)</td>
<td>ā (away)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>odd</td>
<td>ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn (not)</td>
<td>dat (gives)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>known</td>
<td>dot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoc (this, it)</td>
<td>sōl (sun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoke</td>
<td>sole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vir (man)</td>
<td>sic (so)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we’re</td>
<td>seek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē (from)</td>
<td>sī (if)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huil (ho)</td>
<td>hei (alas)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whee</td>
<td>hey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aut (or)</td>
<td>out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hāc (this)</td>
<td>hock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vel (or)</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vul’tū (face)</td>
<td>wool’ too</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fir’mae (solid)</td>
<td>fear’ my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coe’pit (began)</td>
<td>coe’pit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>co’lor (tint)</td>
<td>coe lore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haec (this)</td>
<td>hike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēs (fact)</td>
<td>race</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-fe’ri-or (lower)</td>
<td>e’en fe’ rry ore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ob-ce’-di (obey thou)</td>
<td>oh boy’ dee</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Take great pains to learn the correct pronunciation of c, con-, g, nc, ng, s, bs, bt, si, ti, tu, v, and x.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cin’get</td>
<td>cin’gō (I gird)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>king’ get</td>
<td>king’ go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōn’su-lēs</td>
<td>cau’sae (causes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cone’ soo lace</td>
<td>cow’ sigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ob-ten’tō (held)</td>
<td>ope ten’ toe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vir’tū-tī (valor)</td>
<td>we’re too’ tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vī’si-ō (vision)</td>
<td>for-tū-nae (luck)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we’ see oh</td>
<td>fore too’ nigh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.** — Learn to pronounce by imitating your teacher. Read pages 3, 4, and 5 over and over in Latin for pronunciation drill. See also § 23.

1 will surround. 2 consuls.
LATIN WORDS IN ENGLISH

Every one has seen the effects of wear and tear on hats and shoes. The ravages of time have a similar effect on words. Some are lost, some worn and cut, and some escape with little use. Our words are from various sources. Many of them are scarred and tattered fragments of proud, sonorous parts of speech that once ran the streets of Ancient Rome.

Hard use has torn the -t- and -us from rotundus and left it ro und.
With bruised and swollen eyes the ancient inimicus still survives in our humbler enemy.
After varied treatment the Latin, radius is well preserved in our word, radius, but bent and torn in our word, ra y.

multitudinem integrum magister punctum
multitude integer ma ster point, punctual
multitudinous entire mi ster punctuality
sécuritatem planum (flat) Aemiliam ardentem (burning)
security plane, plan Emily ardent, arson
s surety plain, llano ardently

Though lost so far as English is concerned, liber (book) still lives in its relative, library; so also

lúmen (light) in luminous velle (will) in voluntary
puer (boy) in puerile (boyish) ferre (bear) in transfer, suffer

From the various forms existing in English, we see that there must be several classes of nouns in Latin.

Sing. alumnus fórmula strátum index genus axis speciēs
Plu. alumni fórmulae strāta indicēs genera axēs speciēs
DE TELLūRE


Dē quō vōs legitis, discipuli?
Nōs dē tellūre legimus, magister. §§ 3, 10, 24
Quid dē eā legitis?

Legimus: nōs in tellūre habitāre;¹ tellūrem plānam vidēri; eam autem nōn plānam esse; nātūrā rotundam esse; nōs tellūrem globum vocāre; eam globum magnum esse.

You must not only learn new words and new facts, but also take advantage of all you already know. See hints below.

habitation = dwelling autem however, but dē from, about
legible = readable ea (N.) it, she; eam (Ac.) it, her
disciple = learner, pupil est (Ind.) is; esse (Inf.) be, being
magnitude = largeness et also, and nātūrā in shape
telluric = earthy vidē-re (Inf.) see; vidēri be seen, seem
terrestrial = earthy vidē-tur (Ind.) is seen, looks evident
invoke = call upon vocā-tur (Ind.) is called vocation
spherical = globular -mus (we) nōs we, us -tis, vōs you

¹Nōs . . . habitāre (we read . . . about) us living or (that) we live, etc. The same statements as above are repeated here in another form.
DE SÓLE


Dē quō tū legis, puer?
Ego dē sōle legō, magister. §§ 4, 5 a–d, 21, 27
Quae dē eō legis?

10 Legō: nōs lúmen magnum in caeló vidēre; id lúmen candidum esse; id sólem vocāri; sólem globōsum vidēri; eum parvum vidēri; magnum autem esse; terram et sólem globōs esse magnōs.

is (N. mas.) he, it eum (Ac. mas.) him, it id (N. Ac. neut.) this, it lúmen Int. § 10 parvus small quid (N. Ac. sing.) what? quoque too, also sunt (they) are quae (N. Ac.) what things? ego I -ō (I) tū thou -s (thou) -t (he, it, she) -nt (they)

Former declarations are often made a part of new statements. Latin has only one way. English has several ways.

Ea globus dicitur. § 125 It is called a globe.
Eam globum dícī audiō. I hear it (be) called a globe;
Int. § 5 a and c it being called a globe;
that-it is called a globe.

Ego eam globum vocō. I call it a globe;
(I it globe call-I)
Int. § 5 b I am-calling it a globe;
Mē eam globum vocāre audit. He hears me call it a globe.
Int. § 5 g hears of my calling it a globe;
hears that-I call it a globe.
DĒ LŪNĀ


Dē quō puer legit, discipulī?

§§ 1 and 2

Is dē aliō lūmine legit, magister.

§ 74, 7

Quās rēs dē eō lūmine legit?

Legit: mē aliud lūmen in cælō vidēre; id nōn candidum esse; suāve esse; id lūmen lūnam dīcī; eam globōsam vidērī; rotundam esse; eam quoque globum dīcī; lūnam globum esse magnum; terram et lūnam magnās esse; eās globōs esse magnōs.

(a) The nouns, globus and discipulī (cf. inimicus § 75) are masculine like the English nouns, Julius and alumnus (pl. alumni). The nouns, nātūra, sphaera, terra, lūna (like Julia) are feminine. So also caelum (Nom. of cælō) is neuter like stratum (pl. strata).

(b) “Lūmen magnum” (p. 4). Int 5 d and § 82 e.

“Id lūmen,” this light (line 2), must be nominative, since it is the subject of the finite verb, est; but “id lūmen” (line 10, p. 4) must be accusative, as it is the subject of the infinitive, esse.

Nōtēm.—The accusative of neuters is always like the nominative, while the accusative singular of masculines and feminines always differs from the nominative. §§ 78–79

(c) Masculine forms, plānus (flat), is (this, he, it), rotundus, parvus, are used referring to sōl, p. 4. Sōl must, therefore, be a masculine noun. So also, the feminine forms, plāna (flat), ea (this, she, it), rotunda, etc., prove tellūs, p. 3, to be feminine and the neuter forms, aliud (other), magnūm (Nom.), etc., prove lūmen neuter.
DE LUCE ET TENEBRIS


Quam multis de rebus hodie legitimus?
Dex duabus rebus, magister. §§ 23, 30, 31
10 Quae² re sunt, discipuli? §§ 6, 8, 38, 137

Rex duae sunt lux ac tenebrae.

Legimus: lucem¹ diem² dici; noctem tenebras appellari; tellurem obscuram esse; eam¹ ab sole et a luna lucem³ accipere; eum interdiu, eam¹ noctu tellurem illuminare;
15 lumen solis candidum atque ardens, luna suave esse.

avert = turn (away) from  a, ab, abs (away) from  absent
abstain = keep (away) from  accipit gets, receives
diary = daily (record)  dat gives  hodie this-day, to-day
intervene = come between  diés day  interdii during the day
lucid = having light  lux lucem light  nox noctem night
tenebre = (shown) by things  tenebrae shadows, darkness

¹ § 74, 1, 2. ² § 74, 3. ³ § 74, 4. ⁴ § 74, 6. ⁵ Possession assumed.
DE LUMINE TELLURIS

Terra lumen non edit. Altera pars illuminata, altera pars in tenebris est. Terra non lucida est. Ea natura obscura est. Radiis solis illuminatur. Sol terrae lumen dat. Is autem ab ea lumen non accipit. Luna quoque terrae lumen dat. Sol lunaque eam illuminant. (See p. 2.)

DE LUMINE LUNAE


Sol terrae lumen dat the sun gives the earth light. Int. § 5 f. Sol must be a nominative form, since it is the subject of dat; terrae must be dative form, as it is the indirect object of dat; lumen must be accusative form, as it is the direct object of dat.

De lumen telluris about the earth's light. Int. § 5 e. Lumen must be an ablative form, as de always takes the ablative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. is he, it, this, that</td>
<td>ea this, she, it</td>
<td>id this, that, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. eius his, its, of it</td>
<td>eius her, of her</td>
<td>eius its, of that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ei (to) him, it, that</td>
<td>ei (to) her, it, that</td>
<td>ei it, (to) that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eum him, it, this</td>
<td>eam her, it, this</td>
<td>id it, this, that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. ——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. eō him, by it, this</td>
<td>eā her, by it, that</td>
<td>eō by it, that</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

alien = of-another (land) § 109 c accendit sets aglow or afire
clarify = make clear, bright altera the one — altera the other
data = things given edit gives out, sends forth
apart = to one side, aside luce shines —que and § 21
DE LÜMINE TERRAE LÜNAEQUE


Quam multīs dē rēbus hodiē legimus? § 74, 7, 9
Dē ūnā rē sōlā, magister; dē lūmine. §§ 37, 40, 23

Quās rēs dē ēō legimus?

Legimus: et terram et lūnam obscūrās esse; eās neque lūmen ēdere neque nātūrā lūcidās esse; lūcem autem eārum esse aliēnam; sōlem eīs lūmen dare; hunc eās illumīnāre neque ab eīs illumīnāri; et lūnam terrae et terram lūnae lūmen dare; eās suāve inter sē lūmen dare.

Make a list of all subjects of finite verbs. They are all nominative. Also subjects of infinitives. They are accusative. § 125

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. eī, iī they, those</td>
<td>eae they, these</td>
<td>ea these (things)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. eōrum their, of these</td>
<td>eārum their, etc.</td>
<td>eōrum their, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eīs (to) them, those</td>
<td>eīs (to) them, etc.</td>
<td>eīs (to) them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eās them, these</td>
<td>eās them, those</td>
<td>ea them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. eīs (by) them, these</td>
<td>eīs (by) them, etc.</td>
<td>eīs with them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

neither = not...either §§ 65, 118 b et both...et and § 66

none = not one, not any § 118 -que and neque and...not § 24

obscurity = darkness § 45 hic i.e., it, this (I mention) § 117

similarity = likeness § 91 inter sē between themselves, to

sole (owner) = only (owner) § 40 each other, to one another

unity = oneness § 120 quam multīs? how many? § 64
DE CANDORE SOLIS

Sol nulla ex parte obscurs.\(^1\) Is natura candidus est. Sol ex omnibus partibus clarus ardensque. Is lumem in omnis partis edit. Lumen eius non alienum est. Luna ei lumen non dat. Haec ab eo illuminatur, neque eum illuminat.

Hesterno die quid legimus, discipuli?

Multum de lume terrae lunaeque legimus, magister.

Hodie quid legimus?

Hodie multum legimus de candore solis.

Cras quid legemus?

Cras de stellis multum legemus. §§ 9, 10

Hodie legimus: solem nulla ex parte obscurum; eum natura candidum esse; solem ex omnibus partibus clarum ardentemque; lumen eius non alienum esse; lunam ei lumen non dare; hanc ab eo illuminari neque eum illuminare; solem sua, lunam aliena luce lucere; solem et terrae et lunae lumen dare.

Select the predicate adjectives and predicate nouns in several of the preceding lessons while they are being read aloud in Latin.

Predicate adjectives and predicate nouns are nominative, if the subject is nominative; accusative if the subject is accusative.

procrastinate = let go till to-morrow ardens burning, hot § 84
examine = view from all sides e, ex out of, (viewed) from
multiloquent = talking much § 70 haec she, it, the latter
omnibus = for all, much § 38 hesternoe yester-
annul = make as nothing multum much, a great deal
stellar = of stars, starry nulla no, not any ullae any
suicide = killing one’s self § 116 c sua luce with his own light

\(^1\) The verb est, and other forms of esse, are occasionally omitted.
The Stars

De Stellis


Quás rēs vōs hesternō diē légistis, discipuli?

10 Heri multa dē sōlis candōre légimus, magister.

Quibus dē rēbus hodiē legitis?

Hodiē nōs dē stellis legimus. §§ 58, 140 -se

Crās dē quō vōs legētis?

74, 11, 18

Crās dē stellārum candōre legēmus.

15 Hodiē legimus: nōs alia lúmina noctū vidēre; ea crèbra et innumerábilia esse; ea stellās vocāri; stellās et sidera dīcī; eās longē à terrā abesse; parvās vidēri, quod tantum spatium à nōbīs absint; magnās autem permagnās esse.

As a review exercise, re-read several of the preceding lessons aloud in Latin and select and write down all indirect objects of verbs (they are all dative); direct objects (they are accusative).

absent = being away § 185 crèbra (n. pl.) thick, close
alibi = elsewhere § 117 a heri = hesternō diē § 68 c
alias = at another time longē far, at a distance
appeal = to call (upon) multa (n.) many (things)
multiform = of many shapes parva (n. pl.) small, little
innumerable = countless § 220, 7 per- very § 64
punctual = on the dot quod because, that, in that
sidereal = of the stars § 78 b sidera (n. pl.) stars § 78 b
solitary = being alone spatium space, distance
spacious = roomy § 74, 17 tantum so great, so large
Starlight

DÈ CÀNDÒRE SÌDERUM


Dè quô legit Iûlia, discipuli? § 109 c
Ea dè candôre siderum legit, magister. § 74, 11
Quae dè eorum candôre legit?

Ea legit: sidera nûlá ex parte obscura esse; ea nâtûrâ candida atque árdentia; ex omnibus partibus esse clára; sidera lûmen in omnîs partîs radiâre; lûnam sideribus lûmen nôn dare; neque ea ab sôle lûmen accipere; neque sôlem nec lûnam sidera illumínâre; et terram et lûnam lûcem à sideribus accipere; ea autem sôlês esse et lûce suá lûcère; itemque sôlem sidus esse; eum propius adesse; ea longius abesse; terram lûnamque lûmine aliënô illumínâri.

Select all nouns denoting the means of an action or used with the prepositions, à, ab, dè, è, ex. They are all ablative.

acceptance = act of receiving  partial = favoring one side
alien = of another (land) 109 c  radiate = send out rays
ea (n.) they, them. See p. 8  sidus (n. sing.) a star, a sun
longius too far, farther § 69  sider-um of the stars § 78 b
nam for enim (for) indeed § 66 -t-ur he, she, it (acted upon)
propius rather near, nearer -nt-ur they (acted upon) § 180
DÊ DIÆ AC NOCTE


Select all nouns used to denote time at which, in which, or during which. They are all ablative, except vesperi (Loc.).

Select all nouns used with the prepositions, â, ab, and dê. They are all ablative. Select all nouns used with the prepositions, ad, post, and circum. They are all accusative.

decadent = falling down § 219
evanescent = growing dim
nocturnal = nightly
occasional = falling at times
occidental = western § 219, 3
oriental = eastern § 84
ad (w. Ac.) toward, to, for
aurôra eastern sky, dawn
fi-t become-s, is made or done
mâne in the morning, early
meridiês midday, south, noon
postpone = leave till afterward
plenty = fulness
convalesce = get well, improve
reiterate = go over again
rubescent = growing red
vespers = evening services § 76
multô diês late in the day
occcoli-t settle-s, set-s § 180
oriri raise-self, rise §§ 6, 123
-tâs, -tatem -ty, -ness §§ 37–9
-sce- become, grow, get § 223
East, South, and West

Quās rēs vōs in nātūrā vidētis? Multās rēs vidēmus.
Quae dē nātūrā discitis? Multa discimus, magister.
Nam lūcem diem vocāri audīmus. Obscūritātem noctem
appellāri intellegimus. Māne enim aurōram rubēscere,
stellās ēvānēscere, lūcēscere, diem fierī, sōlem orīrī vidēmus. 5
Illam partem caeli Orientem dīcī audīmus. Sōlem tōtō diē
in caelō lūcēre vidēmus. Mediō diē eum altum in caelō
esse cernimus. Illam partem caeli meridiem appellāri
audīmus. Medium quoque diem meridiem dīcī intellegimus.
Multō diē advesperāscere nōvimus. Sōlem occidere vidēmus. 10
Illam partem Occidentem sīve sōlis occāsum dīcī audīmus.
Post sōlis occāsum obscūrēscere, stellās iterum lūcēscere,
noctem fierī vidēmus. Discimus diem ad labōrem, noctem
autem ad quiētem darī. Nōbīs vidētur lūnām et stellās ab
oriente orīrī, ab occidente cadere. Discimus ita nōn fierī; 15
terram autem movērī et circum axem suum volvi.

Make a list of all nouns used as predicate of the subject or
as predicate of the object. See § 74, 3, 5; Int. 5 b

Sōlem
We see
We observe
We know
We have learned

orīrī
the sun
that) the sun
(it)
(that) it

vidēmus.
rise.
rises.
to get light.
gets light.

auditor = hearer, listener
discern = see clearly, distinguish
disciple = learner, follower
intelligent = understanding
noble = deserving to be known

axis, axem axis, axle
cerni-mus we see, notice
disci-mus we learn
fierī be done, happen
movērī move-self

§§ 180–2
§ 142
§ 215
DE SEPTENTRIONIBUS


Signum illud means that (well-known) figure or constellation; illud signum means simply that figure or constellation (yonder).

Septentriō [minor], Smaller Bear or Little Dipper, is nominative and has no ending; -ō is a part of the stem; Acc. septentriōnem; stem or base septentriōn-. See § 42, 2.

Septentriōnis — est is of or belongs to the "Smaller Dipper."

alternate = the one or the other cōnsta-t consist-s, is made
arctic = under the (Great) Bear maior larger minor smaller
et cetera = and all the rest quōrum of which, and-of-them
index finger = pointer finger § 46 Septentriō seven-ox-team
permanent = remaining fixed ūnus only (one), alone § 118 b
September = seventh (month) volvī turn-self, revolve § 182
constellation = group of stars polus pole (-star), sky (above)
DE VENTIS


(a septentriōne)

Boreās

Cōrus

(ab occidente)

Zephyrus

(ab oriente)

Eurus

Āfricus

Euronotus

Auster

(ab meridiē)

aurora borealis = northern dawn
Australia = southland
fact = a thing made, done, caused
frigid = cooling, chilling
nominate = mention the name of
tepid = lukewarm
convene = come together § 220, 4
ventilate = let in draft of air
Zephyr = west wind § 26
fer-t bring-s fuga-t rout-s
h-ōrum of-these, of-them § 117 b
igitur therefore item § 66 a
madēns damp nōbis (to) us
nūbēs cloud pluvia rain § 79
qui which, that, who, as § 115
regiō, regiōnem part, quarter
saepe often semper always
serēna-t clear-s vel or
DE TELLūRE IPSĀ


Useful Observations

(a) Pauca (line 4) must be plural, as it is the subject of sunt. Plurals ending in -a are neuter.

(b) Multa (direct obj. of lēgimus in line 2) must be accusative. Native Latin (not Greek) accusatives in -a are neuter and plural.

(c) Prepositions govern either the Accusative or the Ablative. The word intima must be accusative, for there is no such ablative ending as -a. Therefore intima must be a plural form and mean inmost (things or parts) since it must also be neuter.

comparāble = to be compared
firmness = solidity, hardness
inspect = look-into § 220, 7
intimate = knowing the inmost
mollify = make soft, soften
noted = well known, marked

alibi in one place . . . alibi in another (place) § 117

adhuc up to this (point) so far
inspexit has looked into
-ior, -ius -er, more, rather, too
lēctūrī going to read sumus are
multa many (things) pauca few

nēmō no one nunc now
nōvit has learned, knows
plurā more (things) § 150
penitūs deep (into)
penitūs deeper, farther (into)
quō the eō the (Int. 5 j)
solum ground vidit has seen
DE TERRĀ ET AQUĀ


Select from the reading lesson above:

1. Words that are connected by conjunctions meaning and:
   (a) Five pairs of adjectives;  (b) Three groups of nouns.
3. Three predicate nouns (§ 74, 3); six predicate adjectives.

Select the following from the reading lesson (p. 16):

1. Neuter plurals. 4. Feminine adjectives.

accommodated = adjusted, fitted  fluent = flowing, running
aquatic = fond of water immenso = unmeasured
asperity = ruggedness informal = not of regular form
conforming = adapting-self relic = remaining, the rest (of)
aequor even expanse, sea (level) illa that, former haec latter
 campus plain, level surface inter sē from each other § 74, 9
 collēs hill-s ex up-out-of ubi- -where -que every- § 119
DE AERE ET AETHERE

Aër fluëns terram et aequor ex omnibus partibus cingit atque amplexit tur. Aër tenuis ac fluidus. Aëri tamen pondus est. Pondere suò terram et aequor petit, atque terram et aequor, nös et omnia¹ premit. Inferior aër ³ crassus ac dēnsus, superior rārus et magis tenuis. Quō altius ex aequore itur, eō magis aër rārēscit et tenuis fit. Quō magis ad aequor² dēscenditur eō dēnsior ac magis crassus fit. Quantam in altitūdinem aër e terrā patēscat, nos tum nōn est. Restat ultimus, omnia cingēns, Aether. Hic rārissimus est ac tenuissimus.³ Immēnsus aether ³ āerem et omnia¹ amplexit tur.

§ 152

Aëri pondus est There is weight to air. §§ 51, 105 (to-air weight belongs) Air has weight. See Int. § 5 e Omnia cingēns, embracing (surrounding) everything. Quō altius ex aequore itur, eō rārior fit. § 74, 19 The higher up-from sea-level you-go, the rarer it becomes.

§ 97 fluent = flowing ponderous = weighty §§ 41, 42 omnipotent = all-powerful attenuate = make-thin appetite = a seeking-for § 220 ultimatum = last offer

amplecti-tur surround-s patēscat extends, spreads out crassus thick, dense pre-mi-t press-es, weighs down ē, ex up from Inferior lower re-sta-t stand-s back, remain-s -ior, -ius -er magis more tamen yet, nevertheless

¹ Study the following examples carefully.
Castra capi videt he sees the camp (be) taken. § 40 b
Imperāta faciunt they do the (things that are) commanded.
Propter vulnera militum because of the soldiers' wounds.

Note. — If a native Latin (not Greek) noun ending in -a is used as the subject of an infinitive, as the object of a verb or preposition, it is instantly known to be neuter and plural. § 82 d

² How may the case of aequor be known?

³ The gender of aër and aether?
DE POLIS CAELI AC TELLURIS


Select the following from the readings, pp. 14, 18, 19.

1. Ablatives (w. prep.).  
2. Ablatives (without prep.).  
3. Accusatives (w. prep.).  
4. Accusatives (without prep.).  
5. Direct objects.  
6. Predicates nominative.  
7. Predicates accusative attached to direct objects.  
8. All genitives.  
9. All pronouns.  
10. All adverbs.  
11. Adjectives (comp.).  
12. Adjectives (superl.).  
13. Prepositions (w. Acc.).  
14. Prep. (w. Abl.).  
15. Verbs and pronouns understood (pp. 9, 11, 18).

annual = yearly, of a year  
biennially = every two years  
glacier = stream of ice  
exhume = unearth § 220, 6  
adjacent = that lie near  
(Sierra) Nevada = snow-capped  
rigidity = stiffness  
postpositive = placed after  
subscribe = write (name) under  
exterminate = put an end to  

humi (Loc.) on the ground § 76  
ibi in it, there, among them  
igitur therefore, then  
ipse (emphatic) himself, itself  
nix, nive snow § 78  
omnia all (things), every-thing  
quae, quem, quibus which, that  
rigent are rigid, stiff, frozen  
posita situated, placed, put  
versus, versum -ward, toward
DÉ IV. ANNI TEMPORIBUS


DÉ VĒRE


arable (land) = tillable (land)       nude = bare   pastor = feeder
aviator = birdman                sonorous = loud sounding
tempest = (rough) weather § 78
bovine = of cows §§ 80, 219, 2    verdure = green, green things
Calorie = measure of heat
ad-spici-e-t shall-look-upon     prōsint may be useful § 220, 12
iuvat it helps, is pleasant     seru-nt they sow or plant
DÉ AESTÁTE


Make a list of the genitives (pp. 9–11, 14, 20–1; cf. p. 7, obs.).

apiary = bee farm arid = dried incipient = beginning § 130
auri-ferous = gold-bearing pervade = go through § 220, 10
copiously = with a good supply reserve = keep back, stow away
extremity = last part, end store up, save up § 220, 13
flourish = bloom, blossom rural = of the (country), fields
fructiferous = fruit-bearing umbrella = little shade
hibernate = sleep over winter combustible = easily burned

aureus golden, of gold § 109 c meti-tur is reaped § 136
cæruleum blue, azure pābulum fodder
dulce sweet, pleasant siti on account of thirst § 74, 15
labōra-nt suffer, toil üri-t burn-s, scorch-es § 220, 4


§ 127


§ 182

Select from the readings (pp. 20–23). (See obs., pp. 5, 16, 18.)

1. Neuters in -um (Nom.), -a (Acc.), or -a (pl.).
2. Nouns shown by adjectives to be feminine. § 55 f.
3. Masculine and feminine nouns having the same ending.
4. Ablative of (a) time, (b) means, (c) with preposition.

dēnum finally  focum hearth
crescent (moon) = growing ——
emigrate = move out § 220, 6
respiration = breathing
attract = draw to-self, take on
detecting = uncovering
DĒ HİEME


Select from the readings, pp. 20–23, nouns and adjectives whose declension is known by endings, viz.:

1. -a (sing.), -ās (Ac.), -ae, -ā, or -ārum First Declension.
3. -e (Ac.), -ī (Ab.), -ēs (Ac.), or -īs Third Declension.
4. -ū, -ūs (G.), -ūs (pl.), -ūum (G.) Fourth Declension.

album = white (paged book) ātra black in diēs daily
hibernate = sleep during winter impendet over-hangs, hovers over
promiscuous = mixed up rui-t fall-s, burst-s upon § 136 e
summit = highest point sile-nt are still, are silent
tardiness = slowness § 182 turbine in a whirl vix hardly
LIFE IN ANCIENT ITALY

Let us take a peep into Central Italy of two thousand years ago. What shall we see in the land of those neighbors of ours, who lived out their lives under that famous old "Republic," which had gathered up and was still gathering the fruits of the many civilizations that had gone before, and whose lofty aims and all-embracing power were already showing signs of decline when Christ was born? Where shall we look first? (p. xviii, 7.)


§§ 185, 212

Select (pp. 10, 24–5) a. Neuters; b. Genitives; c. Ablatives.

Nōbis es-t in animō errāre we have in mind to stray; (to-us is-it in mind to-wander) we intend to wander.

auditor = hearer § 207 versatile = able to turn the hands to many things, lively
erratic = wandering

dōnātī sunt (are having-been-presented) have been or were

presented § 101 imperiō government, rule

iam now iam diū long since Latinī Latins

Latinē in (the) Latin (manner)
oppidānī town's people

Saepe mane puerös a fundō venire et Arpinum ire vidēmus. Saepe vesperi eōs ex oppidō in fundum proficisci vidēmus. Equō semper eunt. Aliās et Theodorus et Aemilius ex oppidō exire videntur et posterō die in oppidum reverti; aliās Aemilius sōlus vesperi domum reedit sōlusque mane in oppidum venit.


Die (p. 12) shows dies to be of the fifth declension.

Select two forms each of nouns to show their declension.

-em and -e (pp. 3, 11, 13); and -is and -ēs (pp. 11, 20, 23) Third
-em and -ē (p. 13); and -ēs and -ē or -ēbus (p. 8) Fifth
-is and -ī, -ōs (pp. 21, 24–5) -is and -a, -i (pp. 20, 22) Second
-is and -ae (pp. 8, 10) First -ibus and -ūs (p. 22) Fourth
-ibus and -a (p. 11); and -ēs and -ibus (pp. 21–2) Third

benevolent = wishing well § 69 paternal = fatherly, father's
elude = play out of reach of solitary = alone, lonely
malcontent = ill satisfied revert = turn back § 220, 13

cotidiē every day, daily
fundus river bottom, farm, plantation, estate

in lūdum to school § 74, 10, 12
posterō die on the following day
red-i-t go-es back § 220, 13


cupidity = eagerness, desire enumerate = count out § 220, 6
discipline = learning, training society = companionship

in-ingredients = things going in utilize = make use of, employ

a-scisci-t take-s, accept-s § 220 operam dant pay heed, study
eō to it § 119 d ita so, therefore summi prominent, great § 92
DE NUMERIS


Quārtum genus (Nom.) est neuter. See note, p. 5, and §§ 42, 54. What is the acc. sing. and pl. of genus? tempus (p. 20)? aliu lūmen. id lūmen (pp. 5, 10)? sidus (p. 11)? nōmen (p. 29)?

general = relating to a class  
identity = sameness § 112 b  
inscribe = write upon § 220, 7  
tribute = what is given

agātur it is treated, account is  
taken, one speaks, discusses  
dē quotā (ōrdine) rē about  
which thing (in order)

est eōrum consists of those  
tot so many quot as many § 64  
quotēnae . . . singulīs, how  
totidem just as many § 119 b  
many . . . (to) each

tribuant assign, give cf. § 139


Find the bases of nouns (pp. 28–9) by comparing forms ($§$ 54).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>duplicate</th>
<th>substantive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>added name</td>
<td>the double of</td>
<td>(name) stand-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noting quality</td>
<td></td>
<td>ing out by itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biscuit</td>
<td>twice cooked</td>
<td>plicātūrae folds, repetitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiātur (a thing) is taken</td>
<td></td>
<td>sim-plex one-fold, simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiat (something) is done</td>
<td>$§$ 213</td>
<td>su-cēdi-t come-s up or after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-iēns, -iēs times</td>
<td>$§$ 120 g</td>
<td>ubī- -where -que every-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lice-t it is lawful, permitted</td>
<td></td>
<td>$§$ 119 e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Indeclinable Numerals. (Many numerals are declined, $§$ 120.)

| quīnquē five | quīnquiēns 5-times | decem ten | deciēs 10-times |
| quīndecim fifteen | quīndeciēs 15-times | vīgintī twenty |
| vīciēs 20-times | vīciēs quīnquiēs 25-times | vīgintī quīnquē 25 |
| quīnquāgintā fifty | quīnquāgiēs 50-times | centum hundred |
| centēns 100-times | quīngentiēs 5-hundred times | mīlle 1000 |
DE COLÓRIBUS


Select (pp. 28–9, 30): a. Indicatives; b. Subjunctives (§ 216); c. Datives; d. Ablatives; e. Masculine nouns. See § 55 f.

Suus cui-que color est, every thing has its § 105 (its-own to-each-thing color is) particular color. Int. § 5 e

Omnês coniûcti (when or if) all (are) taken together (§ 95): et iûstîs modîs mixtí and (if) mixed in the right proportions. Dispersî ac sëparâtî (if or when) scattered and separated. Dicendum est it is to-be-spoken, we must speak.

indigo = Indian blue
cum prîsum when first, as soon us
cum prîsum when first, as soon us
property = what is one’s own
possunt can quidem indeed § 69
sanguinary = bloody
summi most important
DE MENSURĀ TEMPORIS


Apud nōs diēs initium capit ā medīā nocte. Pertinet ad medium noctem proximam. Tempus diēi aut noctis hōra nōtāmus, ut sextā hōra Ante Merīdiem [6 a.m.] vel decimā hōra Post Merīdiem [10 p.m.]. Ā medīā nocte ad merīdiem hōrās duodecim numerāmus. Ā merīdiē ad medium noctem posteram hōrās duodecim numerāmus. Diēs igitur in vigintī quattuor hōrās dīvisus est.

Trigintā diērum spatium vulgō mēnsis habētur. Tempora mēnsis numerō vērō diēi indicāmus, ut prīmō diē, secundō diē, tertiō diē, quartō diē, reliquisque ōrdine diēbus ūsque ad ultimum diem mēnsis.


Omnibus ita complētīs mēnsibus, vērus annus exāctus non est. Quārta ferē pars diēi reliqua est. Semel igitur quattuor annōrum spatii ūnus addendus est diēs. Is diēs mēnsī brevissimō additur Februāriō. Hoc quadriennium

addendus est is to be added, mēnsī sunt they measured § 101
has to be added § 104 mēti-mur we measure § 211
initium capi-t take-s its start modus limit, measure

5 Spatium centum annōrum saeculum dicitur. Tempus saeculi annō indicāmus, ut annō nōnāgensimō octāvō ['98]. Omnēs ferē gentēs tempus hodiē indicant numerō anni post Christum nātum aut ante Christum nātum. Ita dicimus Annō Domīni millēnsimō quadtringentēnsimō nōnāgensimō secundō Columbum Americam invēnisse et annō quadrāgen-simō quārtō ante Christum Caesarem interfectum. § 182 b


Sed longē aliā ratiōne hōrās diēi et diēs mensis nōtāvēre ac numerāvēre. Annī autem apud Rōmānōs cōnsulibus nōtāti sunt. Temporibus enim reī públicae Rōmānae Christus nōndum nātus est. Et trecentīs post annīs imperātōribus principibusque populi Rōmānī ille vix nōtus fuit. Quid plūra? Hae res in longiōrem diem cōnferendae sunt. § 67

ac-cēdē-ba-nt were  
cōnferendae sunt are to be  
put off, must be put off  
eisdem by the same—quibus as  
fu-it he-was, has been § 115 b

inter-dum between whiles, at times  
nōn-dum not yet  
nātus est was born § 101 a  
quod and this, which, that  
spatium period, lapse § 77 b
DE SPATIO


Ratione, declinationis, aestas, aestate, altitudinem are feminine. Select feminine nouns (pp. 12, 17, 20–21, 23, 28, 30, 33).


Write out the declension: p. 33, modus (§ 75); omnia (§ 79 b); nulla (like una, § 120); terrae (§ 77 a); initium, intervallum (§ 77 b); p. 32, biduum and biennium (sing. only, § 77 b); trecentis (pl. § 120 d); p. 29, duplicandae (§ 129); librarium (§ 76); milia (§ 120 c); generis (like vulnus, § 78 b); hi (these, they, like pl. §§ 75, 117 b); p. 20, tempus (tempor-) sing. only (cf. § 78 b); loca (pl. like castra, § 77 b); locus (§ 75).

con-tine-nt with-hold, hold in, con-tain, bound, occupy
in-fin-i-tum un-end-ed § 98
in-men-sum un-measure-d
ibi in it loci of space, room
noveimus we have found out, know
omni all, as-a-whole § 88
pate-t lie-s open, extend-s
per-tine-t reach-es, extend-s
praeter (w. Acc.) beyond, past
ALIA STUDIA

In lūdō Rōmānō omnia diligenter in studiūs versantur. Hi legunt, hi scribunt. Nōnnūlli mēnsūris spatī, circuli, ponderis operam dant. Aliī arithmetica discunt. Appolo-5niius eōs multa dē gravitāte, dē spatiō, dē mōtibus siderum docet. Longum est omnia studia magistri puerōrumque perspicere. Sed paucā ac summa nōtābimus, quae iam nōbis magnō erunt ūsuī ad librōs Caesāris, Cicerōnis, Vergilī aliōrumque scriptōrum Rōmānōrum legendōs. § 159 b, g

10 Theodōrus, ut iam ante dīximus, Graecus est et latīnē loquī discit. Audit reliquōs dīcere: proximā nocte dē tertīā hōrā lūnam orīri; servum prīmā vigiliā venīre.

Ille rem difficilem habet hōrās diēi ac noctis rēctē et latīnē dīcere. Etiam nunc multa dē eā rē ex Aemiliō quaerit. 15 Aemilius haec omnia, ut potest, explicat atque prōpōnere cōnātur. Haec rēs nōbis tantum negotī quantum Theodōrō facit. Quā dē causā, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrī fuimus, repraesentābimus; et hodiē discēmus, quā ratiōne Rōmānī hōrās diēi numerent et quō modō diēs mēnsis dicant. 20 Deinde quōsdam labōrēs cotidiānōs sequēmur nōtābimusque quantum differant ab nostrā cōnsuētūdine. § 119 b

explicit = well explained

-persen -ā- shall-, will- § 164
-collāt-ūr-i going to put off
-habe-t ha-s, hold-s, regard-s
-iám now, soon, already
-et-iám even, also nunc now
-in (w. Acc.) till, for, unto
-nōtā-bi-mus we shall notice

ponderous = having great weight

per-spicere look through, over
-prō-pōnere set forth, explain
-re-praesentā-bi-mus shall bring
back to the present, do now
-scrip-tor writ-er
-sequē-mur we shall follow
-tantum as-much . . . quantum as
DE HÖRIS DIEI ET VIGILIVS NOCTIS

Apud illös diès initium capit ab ortū sōlis; pertinet ad occāsum sōlis. Sed singuli diès semper aut longiōrēs aut breviōrēs fiunt. Vēre, cum longiōrēs fiunt, sōl in diès oritur mātūrius paulō, paulō tardius occidit. Itemque autumnō, cum noctēs longiōrēs fiunt, ortum retardat, occāsum mātūrat. Numquam duōs continuōs diès eādem longitudīdine invenimus neque duās umquam continuās eādem longitudīdine noctis.

Rōmānī quemque diem sīve longum sīve brevem in hōrās duodecim dividunt. Quā rē fit, utī, longiōre diē, quaeque 10 hōra paulō longior sit; item, breviōre diē, quaeque hōra paulō brevior sit. Sexta hōra circiter meridiem est; occīdēns hōrae duodecimae sōl finem dat.

Noctem nōnnumquam in hōrās duodecim, saepius autem in quattuor vigiliās dividunt, quod urbīs et castrōrum vigiliae 15 quārtām partem noctis vigilant et per noctem quater mūtan-tur. Ita vigilia est quārta pars noctis. Spatium vigiliae aestimātur hōrārum circiter trium. Sed noctēs nōnnum-

quam longiōrēs, aliās breviōrēs sunt. Quā dē causā fit, utī mediā aestāte propter noctium brevitātem vigiliae brevis-

20 simae sint; itemque summā hieme propter brevitātem diērum vigiliae longissimae sint.

Select (pp. 31, 32, 33, 35) -ā-, -ē-, -e- verb forms (§§ 187–201);
Irregular verbs (§ 212); -ī- verb forms; e.g. mētīmūr (§ 207).

cum (quon-, um-) when, at -que and item-que and like-

which time, at what time wise. Cf. § 119 a, b
um-quam at any time, ever quem-que, quae-que every (one)
n-umquam at no time, n-ever sit (Sub.) be, is, shall be § 183
nōn-numquam sometimes § 119 b utī (w. Sub.) that; (w. Ind.) as
DE DIEBUS MENSIS


Select: a. First and Third Declension noun forms

   b. First and Second Declension adjective forms

Calends = days to be called out approximate = next to, close to
moral = conforming to custom pontifical = priestly [§ 220, 2
faci-t make-s, cause-s, do-es Nōnae Nones, 9th day before Iedes
fie-ri be done, become, happen cuius-que of each, of every
Īd-ūs Ide-s Īd-ibus on the Iedes si if quid any(thing) § 71 b
Mārti, Mārtiae (Adj.) of March quot how many § 64
KALENDÁRIUM

or ante diem octävum Íðüs Decembris. a.d. VIII. Íd. Dec.
or ante diem XIX. Kalendäs Iänüäriäs. a.d. XIX. Kal. Ian.

Kalendärium Iüläänum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Days</th>
<th>March, April, June, July, October</th>
<th>January, August</th>
<th>September, December</th>
<th>November</th>
<th>February</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Kal.</td>
<td>Kal.</td>
<td>Kal.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Kal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>prfd. Nön.</td>
<td>a.d. VIII. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. VIII. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. VIII. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. VIII. Íd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Nön.</td>
<td>a.d. VIII. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. VIII. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. VIII. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. VIII. Íd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>a.d. VII. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. VI. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. VI. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. VI. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. VI. Íd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>a.d. VI. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. V. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. V. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. V. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. V. Íd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>a.d. IV. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. III. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. III. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. III. Íd.</td>
<td>a.d. III. Íd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>prfd. Íd.</td>
<td>prfd. Íd.</td>
<td>prfd. Íd.</td>
<td>prfd. Íd.</td>
<td>prfd. Íd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>a.d. VI. Kal.</td>
<td>a.d. V. Kal.</td>
<td>a.d. V. Kal.</td>
<td>a.d. V. Kal.</td>
<td>prfd. Kal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For leap years, viz.: 1 VI. Kal. 2 V. Kal. 3 IV. Kal. 4 III. Kal. 5 prfd. Kal.
DÉ SPATĪ MĒNSŪRĀ


Modus agrī apud Rōmānōs iugerum fuit. Nōs quoque agrum iugeribus mē-tīmur. Sed iugera quibus illi sunt ūsi multō minōra fuēre quam quibus nōs ūtimur. Apud illōs iugerum in longītūdinem pedum ducentum quadrāgintā et in lātitūdinem pedum centum vigintī patēbat. § 74, 19

For the form of iter (line 1), see § 82 e. Find the bases of pēs, iter, lātitūdō (p. 38); arborum, tenue, vada (p. 39); sīdus, lūmen (p. 11); mel, color, hiemem (p. 21); genus, ōrdō (p. 28). What is the nom. and acc. sing. of each? (p. 5, note.)

Itinerary = list of routes
Finīs ends, limits, boundaries
Iugerum (Roman) acre
Linear = of lines
Sunt ūsi (are having-used) have used, used, did use
Aliae arborës altae, aliae humilës sunt. Trunci arborum magnarum crassë dicuntur. Truncus arboris parvae et gracilis tenuis est. Folium arboris tenue est. Pës modus crassitùdinis est. Crassitùdö truncorum magnorum saepe est pedum circiter trium; saepius pedum circiter duorum; 5 saepissimë unius pedis.

Aquam aut altam aut brevem dìcimus. Flümen alibi angustum et altum, alibi látum est et breve. Lacús plërüm-que látiorës et altiorës sunt. Mare vástissimum est atque altissimum. Altitüdö multorum flüminum alibi nòn est amplius pedum trium aut quattuor, alibi amplius pedum quadrágintä. Loca, quà altitüdö flüminis minima est, saepe vada dicuntur. §§ 64, 70, 212

Flümina nòn nullis locís vado trànseuntur, sed aliás nàvibus vel pontibus trànseunda sunt. À ripís flümina plërümque 15 minus alta sunt. Plërique lacús secundum òràm brevissimì, à medió autem sunt altissimì. Pauci lacús sunt in altitü- dinem pedum amplius mille. Mare secundum òràm plërüm-que breve, per medium autem est in altitüdinem multorum milium pedum.

Nòmen, lùmina; sìdus, sìdera, tempus, tempore are neuter.


navy = fleet of ships § 79 attenuate = make thin § 88
alibi in one place . . . alibi in another place § 117 a minus alta not so deep
amplius more crassì thick secundum (w. Acc.) along
gracilis slender, thin trànseunda su-nt are to be or
ab initiò from (at) the start have to be crossed § 215
vada wading places, fords
Ab initio omnēs hominēs feri erant. Omnia ad corpus suum referēbant, quod aliōs modōs habēbant nūllōs. (Idem faciunt hodiē hominēs barbari ac feri.) Omnia digitis numerābant. Digitī aut palmae lātitūdine, pedis, gradūs aut passūs longitūdine omnia mētiēbantur. Ex his pristinis modīs paulātim ortī sunt illī modī, quibus plēraeque gentēs hodiē ūtuntur.

§ 182 a, b


§§ 62 g, 89


For the form of corpus (line 9) see § 82 b. Select all accusatives used with prepositions (pp. 13, 16, 18, 19, 22, 31, 34, 40).

-bā- was-, were-, did-, -ed

digitus finger, toe § 23 spread-out hand § 81

gradus a step §§ 180–2 à nostrīs from ours [§ 161

gressī sunt (are having-walked) ortī sunt are having-arisen

have walked, walked § 22 palma palm (of the hand)
The Circle

DE CIRCOLI MENSURA


§ 221 b


§ 129

Select all feminine forms (p. 41). Note ratiio, ratiione f.

Libri legendi sunt books are to be read, ought to be read § 106
Libros legendos curro I take care of the books to be read,
I oversee the reading of the books

Haec ratio librorum legendorum this plan of reading books

Dies libris legendis dictus est a day was set for the books to be read, a day was set for reading the books § 158 c

Ei est liber a book belongs to him, he has a book
Liber ei est legendus for him there is a book to be read, § 104
he has a book (that is) to be read, he has to read a book

Ei legendum est for him there is reading to be done,
he has reading (that is) to be done,
he has reading to do, has to do reading

circinio with compasses in diametrum for diameter orbis ring
DÉ GRAVITĂTE


Select all accusatives with prepositions. Mari is Abl.

gravity = heaviness
ignorant = not knowing § 220, 7
cadē-ns (when) fall-ing
ē-mitti-tur is thrown up § 220, 6
eō-dem to the same, back to it
fer-t-ur bear-s itself, is borne, carried § 212
in centrum toward the center
labi-t-ur glide-s § 182 lapse

alleviate = lighten up § 220, 2
ponderous = weighty § 42, 1
mīrā-mur we-wonder admire
nīti-t-ur rest-s (itself) § 180
nūta-t nod-s, droop-s, settle-s
terrestr-ia earthly things
sūmps-it has taken on § 219, 4
trahu-nt draw, pull upon
in vicem in turn vis force § 80
DÉ ARITHMETICIS

Arithmetica dē numerīs agunt. Prīnum numerōs scribere et scriptōs legere discendum est. Eōs et arabicē et rōmānē discimus. Quō factō, summās arithmetīcorūm artīs ērdine dōcēmur. Prīnum īnstituimus ad summam aliquot nu-5 merōrum cōnficiendam; deinde ad alium alīi numerum dētrahendum; tertium ad singulōs numerōs aliquotīenis dūcendōs; quārtum ad reperiendum quotiēns aliō numerus contineātur. §§ 119 b, 120 f

Si quot numerōrum summa quaeitur, inter sē addendi sunt. Exemplī grātiā: quot sunt vigintī quīnque et quīn-decim. Respondētur quadrāgintā esse. §§ 59, 142

Cum dētrahitur, maior numerus minuendus, minor eī dētrahendus est. Exemplī grātiā: si ducenta quingentīs dētrahuntur, quot sunt reliqua? Respondētur trecenta 15 reliqua esse. Si tria tribus dētrahuntur, quid est reliquī? Respondētur nihil esse reliquī. §§ 64, 70–2, 104

Exemplī grātiā: Quot sunt bis bīna? Bis bīna sunt quattuor. Quaerō quot sint quater quaterna. Respondēs quater quaterna sēdecim esse.


minuend = (number) to be lessened  bis bīna twice two §§ 67, 120 e
Dé partitiōne

Multa adhuc dē integris numeris dicta sunt. Dē integris enim rēbus agēbātur. Saepe autem in aequās partīs dividendum est. Haec rēs partitiō dicitur. § 220, 5

5 Si qua rēs integra in duās partīs aequās divisa est, utraque pars dimidium dicitur. Dīmidium et dīmidia pars vocātur. Si quam rem in trīs partīs aequās divisimus, quaeque pars triēns vocātur. Trientem et tertiam partem dicimus. Si cuius reī duae ablātae sunt partēs, tertia pars reliqua est.

10 Si quid in quattuor partīs partitur, quaeque pars quadrāns vocātur. Quadrantem et quārtam partem dicimus. Si cui reī trīs partēs dētractae sunt, quārta pars reliqua est. Item dicitur quinta pars, sexta pars, septima pars, et cētera. Duodecima pars ūncia appellātur. § 113

addenda = things to be added
equalize = make even or equal
detraction⁵ = taking from
dividend = to be divided § 106
integrity⁵ = wholeness

āctum est discussion took place
ab-lātae sunt (are having-been-
taken away) have been taken
dē-tractae sunt have been taken
away
dicta⁵ sunt (are having-been-
said) have been said, were said
dividendum est division has to
be made, one must divide

legends = things to be read
annihilate⁵ = reduce to nothing
partition = separation⁵
quadrant = quarter
subtrahend⁵ = to be taken away
dīvis-imus we have divided
si cui if to any (from any)
si qua, si quam if any § 113
si cuius if of any §§ 110–3
quae- one -que every- § 119 b
utra- one (of two) -que each
parti-tur⁵ is parted, divided
triēns a third
ūncia inch, ounce, etc.

¹ Write a list of words having the same root (§ 47). Define each. Make other lists. Consult Etymological Dictionary of W. W. Skeat.
Dé arte legendi


Omnēs legere docendi sunt. Omnēs legere posse oportet. Primum ars legendi nōbīs est ornamentō, nōbīs usūi est. 10 Priōrēs bona et pulchra scripsēre. Quod bonī aut pulchri scriptum est, id legendo accipere licet. Legenti aditus est ad ea, quae librīs scripta sunt. Hīs rebus hūmāniōrēs fīmus. Legentibus aditus est ad ea, quae ad cultum atque hūmāniātem spectant, quae ad animōs omnium hominum meliōrēs 15 faciendōs pertinent. §§ 56, 3; 72; 159 g

Omnēs posse oportet (that) all be able is necessary § 152
Ars nōbis (Dat.) usūi est the art... is (for) use to us
Quod bonī aut pulchri what (of) good or (of) beautiful § 72
Id... accipere licet gaining that is permitted; one may gain that
Legenti for (a) reading (man), for (one) who reads § 94
Ad animōs hominum meliōrēs faciendōs pertinent tend to make
men's minds better, tend to improve men's minds § 158

ad-itus acc-ess... amplius more parvulī (when) small §§ 94, 95
bon-a good (things) plērumque most § 70
ea, quae those (things), which paulātim gradually plus more
figur-ās shape-s, form-s prīmum first priōrēs former men
habē-mus regard § 219, 3 scrips-ēre (they) have written
hūmānitās refinement spectant look, face, tend
iam soon nōsci-mus we learn vix hardly voc-ēs phrase-s
Deinde nóbis disciplinae est. In scholá, multum audi-
endó, multum videndó, plērumque autem legendó accipimus.
Plēraeque rês legendae sunt. Ita multa et magna accipimus
ac discimus. Item parāti sumus ad plūra et maiōra accipi-
enda. Hīs omnibus rēbus parātiōrēs exīmus ad omnīs
labōrēs vitae subeundōs. §§ 129, 135, 158

tertium, aliqüid novī cotīdiē accidit. Aliqüid pulchri
semper scribitur. Aliqüid bonī cotīdiē cognitum est. Sum-
mae rēs interdum geruntur. Salūs rē publicae omnī tempore
agitur. Hae rēs nóbis cognōscendae sunt. Hās omnīs rēs
legendō accipere licet. § 131

Quārtum, omnibus sunt sociī atque amīcī. Omnibus ali-
quoi nigōtī est. Allī amīcitiae causā nōs sequuntur; allī
nigōtī grātiā ad nōs veniunt. Si quis ad nōs ventūrus est,
15litterīs nōs certiōrēs facit. Litterīs dē amīcorum adventū
certiōrēs fimus. Item dē nigōtio sociōs certiōrēs facimus.
Quid igitur miserius est quam quī aliīm, utī litterās sibi
praeelegat, roget?

Ad maiōra accipienda for learning greater things § 159 b
Hae rēs nóbis cognōscendae sunt for us these things are to be in-
vestigated, we ought to find out about these things
Nōbīs sunt amīcī to us there are friends, we have friends Int. 5 e
Hoc nōbīs cognōscendum est we have this to investigate
Eum certiōrem facimus we make him rather-certain, we inform him
Nēmō est, quī accipiart there is no one that receives or gets § 151 b
Nēmō est, quīn accipiart there is no one but gets (who doesn’t get)

adventus coming agitur is at quam quī than (one) who
stake ali-quad some-thing rēs-wealth pública common-
praee-leg-a-t (that) he read-to ad sub-eundōs for under-going
parātiōr-ēs better prepared vent-ūr-us going to come § 103
Care of the Eyes

Multī sunt, quī ūnās aut bīnās litterās, ūnām aut duās epistulās cotīdiē accipiant. Nēmō est, quīn litterās interdum accipiat. (Litterae plērumque brevēs sunt, epistula longior et maiōre cūrā scripta.)

Nōs litterās a, b, c vocāmus. Apud Rōmānōs litterae l, m, n, vel elementa (el-em-en-ta) dictae sunt. Graeci litterās alpha, bēta, et cētera dīxēre. Hinc sæpe litterās cūntās alphabeticum dīcimus. § 137 b

Hic paucā praecipienda sunt. Cum legitur, sinistrā manū tenendus est liber. Dextra manus libera esse dēbet. Folia enim libri dextrā vertuntur. Ad lūcem vertendum est tergum, ut lūx in folium incidat. Oculī ā lūce āvertendī sunt, nē in oculōs incidat. Cavendum est nē qua umbra in librōm incidat. §§ 139, 221

Apud nōs folia ab alterā parte libera sunt, utī manū ver-tantur. Apud Rōmānōs folia librī neutrā ex parte libera erant. Illī folia nōn vertēre sed tōtum librōm volvērunt. Hāc rē fiēbat, ut liber et volūmen vocārētur. § 147 g

Hoc praecipiendum est this ought to be directed, this ought to be given as a precept, this should be taught

debt = that which is owed

dexterity = skillfulness

incident = falling upon § 220, 7

liberty = freedom § 91

cūntās (coniūntās) all taken together, all

dēbe-t owe-s, ought, should § 219

doli-a leave-s p. 18, note

hic here hinc hence, from this

legi-tur reading is done § 106 c

manual = handbook § 81

oculist = eye specialist § 75

paucity = fewness, scarcity § 64

umbrella = little shade

nē (w. Sub.) not, that not

sinistra awkward, left, unlucky

tergum the back § 77 b

ut, uti (w. Sub.) (in order) that

volv-ērunt they rolled
DE ARTE SCRIBENDI

Parvī legere discimus. Eōdem tempore scribere docēmur. Prima litterārum figūrās aegrē dūcimus. Tardē ac magnā curā nōbis scribendum est. Paulātim prō cotidiānō ēsū et prō diligentia nostra facilius fit. Iam omnia celeriter scribere possimus. §§ 130–2, 155

Scribere magnō nōbis est ēsūi. Nēmō est enim qui omnia memoria tenère possit. Nēmō est, quin quid memorandum interdum habeat. Multō facilius est memoranda scriptis mandāre quam omnia memoria tenère cōnāri. §§ 113, 151 b


Ita, si quid novi est, litterās ad amicos dant. Item de negotiō suō sociōs certiorēs faciunt. Si quis iter factūrus est, litterās ante sē mittit. Ita dē eius adventū sociī certiorēs fiunt. § 102

Nōbis scribendum est for us there is writing to be done, we have writing (that is) to be done, we have to write, must write

accelerate = quicken § 69 commend = entrust, give over
conative = inclined to try § 127 negotiation = business dealing
docile = teachable novelty = new thing [§ 220, 9
induce = draw into § 220, 7 plural = more than one
identify = prove to be the same unused = inexperienced
agre with difficulty, hardly parvi (when) small §§ 92, 94
cotidiānus daily cui for whom qui who qui-n who-not, but
factūrus going to make § 102 scriptis to (things) written
inter-dum at times, sometimes vel-i-t wish-es, will-wish § 140

Apud nōs scribitur pēnicillīs aut pennīs aut māchinātiōnis- bus. Libri māchinātiōnibus celerrimē imprimuntur. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad scribendum ūsuī sunt, summam 10 facultātem habēmus. Sed longē aliter apud Rōmānos rēs sēsē habēbat. Nam omnia ferē, quae tantō nōbis ūsuī ad scribendum sunt, illīs ignōta fuēre. §§ 92, 159 g

Illī vulgō epistolās stilō tabulis cērātīs scripsērunt, librōs autem calamīs papīrō. Stilus erat ferrum ab alterō extreō 15 ad scribendum praecātum, ab alterō lātum ad cērā scripta délenda. Libri apud illōs manū scriptī sunt. Ars imprimendi iam omnīnō ignōta fuit. Quod libri servus Rōmānus aegerrimē multis diēbus scribere potuisset, id hodiē pūncē temporis māchinātiōne cōnficitur.

Scribent-ibus for (those) writing, for those who write § 97
Rēs aliter sē habet the matter stands (holds itself) otherwise

cogēnt = compelling, forcing lateral = of the side § 78 b
indelīble = not to be erased utility = usefulness § 201

aeger-rimē with great trouble nōta known ignōta unknown
calam-īs with reed pens § 74, 12 potuisset would have been able
cērā in wax cērātīs waxed quod libri what of a book § 72
im-primu-ntur are printed script-um (thing) written § 77 b
nam- for -que at any rate § 119 ūsuī ad for use for, useful for
Multa iam in lūdō Rōmānō vidimus, multa mōre ac ratiōne populi Rōmāni didicimus et cum nostrīs rēbus comparāvimus. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre, sed hoc ūnum satis ērit dictum. Puer Aemilius studiis libenter operam dat. Multum legit; scribit multum; graecē multum cum Theodōrō colloquitur; nam memorīa tenet summum Rōmānōrum ōrātōrem philosophumque, Cicerōnem, etiam Arpīnī esse nātum; eum litterārum Graecārum studiōsum fuisse, itemque Gaium Cae-sarem. Eōs quoque adulēscēntīs Rhodi apud alterum Ap-polonium, quem suprā diximus Mōlōnem, artī dicendi operam dedisse. Puer sē quoque ōrātōrem fierī cupit. Hodiē dili-genter studiis operam dedit. Iam hōra nōna fit. Et iam finis est. § 221 b


Itaque in fundum proficiscimus et magnō itinere eō īre contendimus atque nōn amplius quīnque aut sex miliibus passuum prōgressī fundum ante nōs cōnspicimus. Ibi complūris servōs labōrāre vidēmus. Alīī ex his agrōs arant,

ad-olescent = growing up § 223
ad-ult = grown up (person)

didic-imus we have learned
ē-gressī sunt are having walked
out, have come out eō to it
fu-isse (to) have been, was § 127

native = born in, arising in
satisfy = do enough (for) § 70
liben-ter glad-ly (is glad to)
per-venire come over, arrive § 220
profect-ūr-ūs going to set out
secūt-ūr-ī going to accompany
alii equōs, bovēs, ovis currant atque cūstōdiunt. Eōrum ūnus bovēs ad villam agit. Fīdī canēs a tergō sequuntur eique magnō sunt auxiliō ad bovēs ex agris cōgendōs.

Villa ipsa nōn longē abest a flūmine Fibrēnō, quod in Līrim iňfluit. In eō flūmine pōns est, idque nōnnūllis locīs vado trānsitūr. Paulus ad utramque partem eius flūminis possessiōnēs habet. Hominēs cum carris ponte trānseunt. Bovēs autem trādūcunt vadis Fibrēnī, quā altītūdō flūminis minima est. § 220, 15


Prīnum dominus, quid novī sit, ex eō quaerīt. Ille dicit bōbus iam minus aquae in agris esse; ad flūmen cotīdiē agendōs; quendam ex servīs Gallīs paulō ante effūgisse; hūc accēdere quod certā dē causā alius Gallus nōmine Bren-20 nus poenās dare débeat. Deinde dominus Chīlōnem laudat, quod bovēs ad flūmen agendōs cūret. Mandātā eī in proxī- mum diem dat; operīs labōrēs partibus iūstīs aequat; statuit, quō quisque proficiēscātur, quid crās faciat; cuique iūstām partem labōris tribuit. § 111 25

laudable = praiseworthy     eliminate = push from doorstep
ātrium-i (reception) room     parum little § 70 pōns bridge
auxiliō (for) help canis dog     place-t please-s, suit-s § 230
cavē beware dēbeat ought     statui-t decide-s, settle-s


Māter domina est. Mātrōna quoque dīcitur. Mātri cūra domūs est. Mātris est liberōs éducāre, rēs domesticās prōvidēre, domum cūrāre atque omnia domestica perspicere.

Patri . . . est cūrae is (for) a care to the father. EI . . . est auxiliō is (for) a help to him. Patris est it is the father's (duty). Bonō animō in (with or) of good mind toward. §§ 57, 62 g

columba dove. ignis fire. sūmere take (from), inflict (on).
peristylium -i open court. summās tops of. fōcum hearth.
piscēs fish. put-e-t think-s. tēctum -i roof. vita -ae life.
Servae quidem liberōs cūrant, molita cibāria cōnservant, panem faciunt, victum parant, omnia in ordine servant, dominae auxilium ferunt, huic oboediunt, eius voluntātī obtemperant, ei cēdunt. Māterfamiliās liberōs vestiendōs, victum paradum, omnia in ordine servanda cūrat.


belli-gerent = war-making
horticulture = gardening
molar = grinding (tooth)
conservation = keeping together
ab-dūcu-nt they carry off (away)
audīre, ob-ōedīre hear (to)
cibāria food stuffs cibus food
capt-ōs (men who are) taken § 94

service = drudgery, toil
vestibule = hall for clothing
victuals = prepared food
voluntary = willing § 137
met-ē-s thou shalt reap § 197
manū mitte-re let out of hand
obtemperant conform, agree (to)
panis bread red-imere buy


§ 157 b

Statim prōgrediuntur pater et mater puerōs salutatūm. Prima puellae Theodorō salūtem dicunt et, cum Aemilia maior eum ad domum comitatur, Aemilia minor, puella novem annorum, manum frētris prenedit et sēcum gaudēns sēvocat. Tum lenī vōce, nē audiātur: “hodiē,” inquit, “est ante diem tertium Kalendās Maiās.” Cui frater:

Salutātum to greet. Salutem dicere wish good health.

ambiguous = driving at both apprehend = seize upon § 220, 2
gaudy = showing joy, rejoicing secede = go apart § 220, 13
leniency = gentleness, mildness simultaneous = at once with
com-ītā-tur ac-com-pani-es quem = et eum and . . . him
ex-cipiunt take up, welcome raucus -a -um hoarse, guttural
honōrātōte ye shall honor § 189 re-versum (who has) come back
inquit says she olim one day strepitus -ūs noise, din, uproar
Et quibus cōnsulibus? Dic mihi rēctē. § 96 b
Iterum tibi dīcō. Tertīō dīē ante Kalendās Maiās Gaiō Iūliō Caesare et Márcō Bibulō cōnsulibus. Satīn dictum?
Et quid novī aut mīrī est? Quā rē commūvēris?
Num Nōnārum Maiārum oblīvīsceris? Nihilne mēmi-nistī?
§ 145 b, c
Nōnne, soror cāra, oblīta ipsa es mē cotīdiē Arpīnum in lūdum ire ibique tōtō dīē summīs rēbus operam dare?
Minimē, frāter cāre. Eās omnīs rēs memoriā teneō. Sed hodiē gaudēō maximē.
Quā rē gaudēs? Dic mihi.
Nōn tibi dīcō. Cōgitā tantum, quid reī sit. § 72
Numquam cōgitāre possim. Nihil rem intellegō. § 141
Quī vocāris? Nōnne suspicere coepistī?
Nunc puer suspicit aliquid dē suā dīē nātāli esse. Sed ut sorōrem vexet, dissimulat atque ita respondet:
Aemilius vocor. Quid novī in eō est?
Quem ad modum vestītus? Ecquid intellegis?
Togā vestītus sum, ut mōs est Rōmānis.
Nōnne togā praetextā? Tuā causā gaudēō. 20
Certē. Sed cūr meā causā gaudēs?
§ 59
Mihi dicendum esse putō. Nōnīs Maiīs annōs sēdecim complēveris. Tum vir esse incipiēs; togā virīli vestiēre.
Tibi praenōmen dabitur itemque cognōmen. §§ 164 -ē-, 184

Satīn dictum? = satis-ne dictum (est)? has enough been said?
Nōn-ne oblīta ipsa es? Art thou not become forgetful thyself?
cogitation = act of thinking commotion = excitement § 192
certē yes coep-īstī hast begun nātāli birth- pos-si-m I could
cūr? why? incipi-ē-s wilt begin praetexta bordered qui? how?

Cum hōc servō in domum revertuntur, ubi exspectantī patri et sorōribus in ātrīō occurrunt. Inde in trīclīniuinum itur. Torīs discumbitur. Theodōrō licet ad socium Aemilium accumbere. Lentē apud Rōmānōs cēnāri mōs est. Victus in pane, lacte, olīvīs cōnsistent. Paulus et Claudia vinum aquā miscent sed eius rēi parci sunt. Liberi nūllum omnīnō vinum ad sē adferri patiuntur. §§ 137 a, 224

Dum cēnātūr, Aemilia minor iterum mentiōnem facit dē Nōnīs Maiīs. Frāter autem, cum exaudiat, dissimulat; cum Theodōrō graecē colloquitur. Pater filium laudat, quod tam bene loquitur tantamque operam studiis dat.

current = running, rushing parsimonious = sparing
casa -ae hut cēna -ae dinner iube-t bid-s lentē slowly
discumbitur reclining is done, they take places § 220, 5 oc-curr-u-nt come or run upon
ex-audi-t over-hear-s petu-nt go to torus couch
ex-specta-nt-i (who is) waiting trīclīniuin -i dining couch(room)
vocātum to invite, summon § 157
FROM A POMPEIAN WALL PAINTING

A DINING ROOM
A ROMAN AND HIS WIFE
Vatican Museum, Rome
Portrait sculpture from a tombstone
Aemilius Rescues Brennus

Post cēnam omnēs ad focum congregantur. Aemilius autem commovērī vidētur; nam paululum temporis ībi morātus discēdit. Theodōrus sequitur. Domō ēgressī ad flūmen casāisque servōrum proficiscuntur. (Interim secunda fērē hōra noctis facta est.) Iam apud servōs movērī atque ad flūmen concurrī cōspiciunt. Puerī nē videantur, umbrā sēsē tenent atque eō pervenire mātūrant. §§ 100, 137 b

Sunt in rīpā flūminis laurī duae, quae arborēs tantum inter sē distant, quantum locī longitūdō hominis iacentis occupāre potest. Ubi eō ventum est, Aemilius videt Brennum, Gallum dē quō supra dictum est, humī iacēre, manibus ad alteram arborēm, ad alteram pedibus vinctīs. Duo Thraeaces ingenti magnitudine corporum ei verbera parant. §§ 62 g, 95 b


Morāt-us (after) having delayed, (after he) has delayed, waited ē-gress-i (after) having stepped out, (as soon as they) get out tantum distant are as far (apart) — quantum locī as (can occupy) of space homin-is iacent-is of a man (who is) lying (down) § 94 ēo ventum est arrival has been made or they have come there § 106 c quod tempus . . . convēnit which was agreed upon (as) the time rei agendae of doing the thing, to act liberātus (when) set free concurrī a rush (be) being made umbrā shadow verber-a lashes ex-silit leaps up, springs up utrimque from either side § 119 f
Tum vērō puer nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, hāc rē Chilōnī nūntiātā, apud patrem causam dicere cōgātur. Itaque, Brennō quam celerrimē potest ad sē vocātō, domum ire contendit Brennum sibi servum postulātūrus. Sed ubi eō ventum est, verētur, nē patri suā sponte persuādēre nōn possit. Itaque Gallō foris relictō, sorōrem minōrem Aemiliam petit. Quid sui cōnsili sit, celeriter ēdocet, eamque sēcum ad patrem dūcit. §§ 153, 196

Liberī in ātrium ingressi primum patri subrīdent neque ēloquī audent; deinde quid rē gerātur, quaerentī Aemilia dicit: sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ab eō petere velint. Eā rē permissā, sorōrcula petit, utī hōc tempore frāter summā apud patrem grātiā sit; ipse, quam fidem postulet, eam frātrī det memor proximārum Nōnārum. § 107 c


nōn exspectandum (esse) that waiting ought not to be done § 106 d
hāc rē nūntiātā (as soon as) this affair (had been) reported § 96
dum . . . cōgātur (while he be compelled) till he is compelled § 224
postulāt-ūr-us intending to ask sibi servum as a slave for him
verētur nē possit fears that he can sua sponte of his own efforts
verētur ut possit, verētur nē nōn possit fears that he cannot
quaere-nt-i to (him when he is) asking, to (him as he) asks (them)
com-plēt-ūr-um (esse) (is) going to complete libenter gladly

forīs outside gerī be done, go on sub-rīdent stand smiling

Posterā nocte, dum cēnātur, tabellārius Rōmā venit. 10 Dicit sē ā M. Crassō vēnisse; sibi ad Paulum esse datās litterās, quās ipsī in manūs daret. Paulus litterās ad sē ferri iubet. Libenter accipit. Tabellāriō grātiās agit eumque responsūm exspectāre iubet. Tum līnum incidit. Litterās aperit, apertāsque suīs exspectantibus praelegit. Sunt 15 Crassī manū scriptae eiusdemque signum Paulus cognōscit. Sunt autem sine nōmine sed ita:

"S. v. b. e. e. v. Libentissimē lēgī tuās litterās in quibus dixisti Aemilium tuum iam sēdecim annōs proximīs Nōnīs completūrūm. Hōdiē tam multa habeō quae scribam, 20 ut mihi exspectandus videātur adventus tuus. Licēbit, Aemilium, cum vir sit, ad mē dūcās.


filiō esse belongs to his son  novās tabulās a clean sheet
S. v. b. e. e. v. = sī valēs, bene est, ego valeō  D. = datae § 98

unmolested = unannoyed  signet = ring, ring for seating
preterit = gone by, past  inevitable = unavoidable
in (l. 9) for  in-cidi-t cut-s  superb-ē haughti-ly sī §§ 224–5
linum string, cord (of linen)  tabellārius letter carrier
Suís subridēns Paulus tabulās cōnfēstim ad sē ferri iubet. 
Quibus lātīs scribit ita:

"L. Paulus Crassō suō S. D.
Nōs cotidiē tabellāriōs dē Tusculānō exspectāmus, qui 
si vēnerint, erimus certōrēs quandō nōbīs domō proficiscendum sit. Quod spērō fore vī. Īd. Mai. aut postridēē. 
Nisi quid accidit, in Tusculānum nōs ventūrōs prō certō 
putāmus a. d. rv. Īd. Si quid erit impedimenti, faciēmus 
tē statim certiōrem. Ita postridēē eius dīēi sub vesperum 
apud tē fore spērāmus. Datae Arpinō prid. Kal."

§ 113

Hīs litterīs dātīs atque prefectō tabellāriō, Aemilia minor 
ex patre quaeerit, quā dē causā Crassus scripserit litterās suās 
esse datās rv. K. Mai., Iūliō et Caesare cōnsulibus; num 
Bibulum esse mortuum? Cui pater: id per iocum factum.

Quoniam ad hanc rem perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse 
vidētur dē eā breviter, quā rē facta sit, prōpōnere. Eō 
quidem tempore apud Rōmānōs longē nōbilissimus fuit 
Gnaeus Pompeius, ditissimus Mārcus Licinius Crassus, cuius 
ad Paulum litterās modo lēgimus, prūdentissimus autem 
Gaius Iūlius Caesar.

§§ 114, 143

S. D. = salūtem dicit quī si vēnerint and if they come 
Num Bibulum esse mortuum Bibulus hasn't died (has he) § 145 c 
id per iocum factum (that) this was done by-way-of joking

accident = happening, befalling imprudent = not looking ahead 
Dives = the rich man ridiculous = causing laughter

aliēnum strange, out-of-order
confēstim, statim straightway
fore = futūrum (esse) will be
lātus -a -um (when) brought

profectō (as soon as he) set out 
sub toward suis to his family 
tabulae wooden writing tablets 
Tusculānum Tusculan villa
Priōre annō cōnsulātum petēns Caesar Lūcium Lucceium collegam sibi satis amicum fore spērāverat. Id sī fieret, optimātēs intellegēbant magnō cum periculō sibi futūrum, ut ambō cōnsulēs populāribus favērent. Itaque nē agrōs tōtius Italiae paulātim occupāre aut agrum pūblicum sībi 5 colere aut prōvinciās spoliāre prohibērentur, M. Bibulum collegam Caesari creārunt. § 62 g


nē occupāre prohibērentur that they might not be prevented from seizing  ne quid fieret that nothing might take place (be done)

arbitrary = to one man’s notion  pact = agreement
administrator = manager  legal = lawful
constitution = settled law  resistance = standing against
license = permission, allowing  spoliation = plundering, robbing
optimātēs aristocrats  Cf. § 91  populārēs popular party
Kalendis Maiis mātūrius paulō quam necessītās temporis postulat, pueri Arpinum in lūdum pro ficiscuntur. Patri Appoloniō sēsē persuāsūrōs existimant, uti filium Rōmam ire patiātur. Prīmus Theodōrus patrem adit. Is ita cum Appoloniō agit: paucis diēbus amīcum suum Aemilium togam virīlein esse sūmptūrum; quō factō, Rōmam in urbem iter cum patre Paulō esse factūrum; magnō sibi ūsuī fore, si ūnā cum eis iter fēcerit; itaque sē rogāre, uti patris voluntāte sibi iter unā facere liceat; id nōn suā sponte petere sed rogātum atque sollicitātum ab Aemiliō. §§ 56, 3; 159 g

Ita puer instat. Prō hōc Aemilius facit verba: puerum multa latīnē discere posse; magnō nōn sōlum huic sed sibi ipsī ūsuī fore, sī puer ūnā iter fēcerit, quod tantō sibi auxiliō ad Graeca discenda sit; praetereā in itinere tam longō sēsē amīcum Theodōrum magnopere désiderātūrum. § 226

Appolonius rem concēdendam putat, sed ut spatium inter- cēdere possit diemque uti ad delibera ndum sūmat, negat sē mōre Graecōrum posse id filiō dare. Dīcit quamquam sibi grātissimum sit, ut Theodōrus Rōmam videat, tamen neque sē velle neque mōrem Graecōrum patī ut suī molestiae cui- quam aut impedīmentō sint. § 159 g

Huic cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possint, ad Paulum eunt ut eō déprecātōre ab Appoloniō inpetrent: Theodōrum patre invītō Rōmam iter facere nōn posse.

cui- to one -quam any- § 119 c invītus unwilling iter trip
déprecātor (as an) intercessor rogātus (because he was) asked
désiderāre miss diēs time suā sponte of their own efforts
im-petr-e-nt they may obtain sūmat may take § 159 e
īn-stat stands on, persists sui his (people)
inter-cēdere inter-vene § 220, 8 sümptūrum (esse) will put on
Itaque Paulus rem suscipit atque a magistrō impetrat, utī filium ūnā proficisci patiātur. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, diem dīcunt, quā diē Theodōrus ea, quae ad profectiōnem perti-nent, in fundum ferat. Is diēs erat III. N. Mai. § 225

Prīdiē Nōnās Maiās tabellārius Formiūs venit, qui sē ā 5 M. Cicerōne cōnsulāri missum esse dīcit. Paulō trādit epistulam, in quā clārus ille Arpīnās scripsit sēsē IV. Nōn. Mai. in Tusculānum profectum; diē, quō dictum erat, amīcum Paulum filiumque libentissimē ibi exceptūrum.

Nōnās Maiās in peristyliō domūs magna fit grātulātiō. 10 Familia omnis eō convenit iuvenem Lūciūm Aemiliīm Paulum grātulātum, quod togam virīlem sūmpserit. Et quoniam est eōdem praenōmine, quō pater, appellātus, licet appellētur L. Aemilius Paulus iunior; pater L. Paulus senior.

Servī omnēs dominō futūrō salūtem dīcunt. Chilōnī, 15 petente Aemiliō, mandātur, eō diē uti servis quiēs ab labōre dētur. Idōneīs verbīs adulēscēns omnibus grātiās agit, quod bonō in sē animō sint. Et cum advesperāscit Brennum ad sē vocat atque ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinent, com-parāri iubet. § 57, “in” 20

Primā lūce domō proficiscuntur Paulus, Aemilius, Theodō-rus, Brennus. Biduō post, cum iter nōn intermissat, hōrā diēi circiter duodecimā Tusculum perveniunt. Inde in Tusculānum contendunt, ubi Cicerōnem eōs in hortīs exspectantem inveniunt. Ille Arpīnātīs libentissimē suscipit. Paulī 25 diē, quō on the day, on which eōdem by the same... quō as § 115 juvenile = of young people verbosity = wordiness Arpīnās -ātis son of Arpinum § 45 profectum (esse) had started
iuniōris manum prēndit. In ātrium ītur. Orātor adulēs-
centem ad Quintum frātrem dēdūcit. Terentia coniūnx et
fīlia Tullia Paulum salūtant. Dē Arpinātibus quaeritur.
Dē Claudiā et filiābus exquiritur. § 137
5 Cicerō diū cum Paulō colloquitur. Fāta sua queritur.
Rei pūblicae statum miserātūr: Sēsē omnīnō ā rē pūblica
abesse; Graecīs litterīs operam dare; scripta sua pūblicāre.
Aemilius sērmonem ērūtōris vocēsque mīrātur. Longum
est omnia ēnārrāre. Illud ūnum satis erit dictum. Adulēs-
10 centī librum orātōnūm, quās in Lūcium Catilinam habuerit,
sēsē datūrum esse pollicētur. § 225
Posterō diē dē hōrā tertīā ē Tusculānō pōfectī viā Lātīnā
ad urbem accēdunt et circiter merīdiem nōta moenia cōn-
spiciunt. Portā Capēnā urbem ingrediuntur. Aemiliō
15 multā mīranda videntur. § 100
"Mīrātur portās strepitumque et strāta viārum."
In forum ītur. Hinc tabernae, ubi librī, pictūrāe, statuae
exposita sunt; hinc servī et servae vēneunt. Ibi morātur
ignōbile vulgus. Nam frūmentum pūblicum exspectant.
20 Nihil agunt. Nihil student, nisi lūdis et circō. Sēcūrī
fātōrum rei pūblicae commūnisque salūtis praeterunt
equitēs Rōmānī et patrēs cōnscriptī; aliōrum enim oblītī,
sui memorēs sunt. Ūnus ex omnibus Gaius Cæsar omnia

patrēs cōnscriptī enrolled fathers, senators (heads of families)

commiserate = take pity on
con-iūnīx wife, husband
ex-quīri-tūr inquiries are made
lūd-i game-s memor mindful
mōen-iā wall-s (of a city)

sermon = a talk, a speech
porta gate
sēcūrī careless, regardless
strāt-a pavement-s
taberna shop vēnīre be sold
nōn modo videt sed etiam perspicit plānēque sentit. Reliquī
omnēs clārissimam fortūnātissimamque rem pūblicam in
exitium ruere patiantur. §§ 107 c, 223 b

Inde mātūrius paulō, quam litterīs dictum est, in Mārcī
Crassī domum veniunt. Ibi amicē excipiuntur. Omnia ibi 5
miranda videntur; nam Crassus, cum multās domūs pos-
sideat, ūnam sibi et eam magnificentissimam aedificāvit,
eaque rēgāli lūxū ōrnāta est. Paulus diū cum Crassō et
Pūblīō filīō adulēscente colloquitur. Ibi Aemilius dīci audit
Caesarem proxīmō annō Galliae prōvinciae prōcōnsulem sē 10
fore spērāre; Pūblium velle ūnā cum eō in prōvinciam īre;
nihil omninō in senātū Caesari impedimentō esse, ex quō
M. Catōnem in carcerem dūci iuссerit; Bibulum semper ā
senātū abesse; iam nōn Catōnem eō cōnsiliō tōtum diem
dicendō cōnsūmēre, ut alicui lēgī resistat. 15

Postrīdiē eius dīē Aemilius cum patre et M. Crassō in
cūriam venit. Ibi patrēs cōnscriptōs, summōs rei pūbli-
cae virōs, videt atque loquī audit. Dē summā rē pūblicā
dēliberātur. Multae ā Caesariānis dicuntur sententiae,
quaē optimātibus displicēre videntur. Hi saepe inter sēsē 20
aspiciunt; plērumque silent; sibi exspectandum statuunt,
dum perāctō cōnsulātū Caesar in prōvinciam abierit. Hūc
accēdit, quod lēgātī ab Ariovistō rēge Germānōrum Rōmam
vēnēre societātem postulātum. Senātus hortante Caesare
dēcernit, cōnsulēs videant, utī ad Ariovistum mūnēra amplē 25
remittantur, ipse rēx atque amīcus appellātūr. § 137 b

Inde in M. Crassī domum proficiscuntur. Iam strepitum
ac tumultum in viūs audiunt. Accelerant, ut quid reī sit

cūria -ae senate house         ruere rush       sentīre understand

Misēri habitantēs correpta sua ex aedificiō in omnīs partīs efferunt aut fugā sībi salūtem petunt. Brevī tempore servī accessitī adsunt et magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū operī ignis restinguendi īnstant.

Atque in ēā rē omnium intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte latrō impetum in Aemilium facit, sīve spoliandi causā seu quod magis vēri simile est abdūcendi et retinendi, dum pater magnā ređimat pecūniā. At Brennus celeriter latrōnem bracchiō arripit ac longē per terram sternit. Quod nisi fidissimus adfuisset Gallus neque eum prōpulsāisset, nēquā quam facile dīcī potest, quid dē Aemiliō factum esset. § 119 b

Posterō diē Paulus, quod ipse paucōs diēs apud Crassum morātūrus erat, Theodōrum et Aemilium cum Brennō domum remittit, nē plūs temporis studiōrum dīmittant. Illī autem, multīs rēbus et in itinere et in urbe cognōtīs, libenter Arpīnum ad studia sua revertuntur.

avarice = greediness
edification = up-building
arcessere = summon
bracchium = arm
ārdē-nōs (while it is) = burn-ing
cor-repta (that were) = snatched
cōemere = buy up
incrediō = starter of fires
pecuniary = of money, monetary
latrō = brigand
morāri = stay § 191
quam primum = as soon as possible
rēs familiāris = estate, property
red-imere = ransom §§ 219, 4; 220,
sternere = lay low
ARMINIUS PÆR SUÆBUS

Rhēnus antiquitus Gallōs à Germānis dividēbat. Gallī
cis Rhēnum, plērique Germāni trāns Rhēnum incolēbant.
Hōrum magna pars finium ex silvīs ac palūdibus cōnstābat;
illī agrōs ferācis possidēbant. Antiquī Gallī hūmāniō-5
rēs erant; nam privātōs ac sēparātōs agrōs habēbant. Frū-
mentō, lacte, pecore vivēbant. Maximam partem agri-
cultūrā, parum vēnātiōne ad vivendum nitēbantur.

Germāni antiquī ferī ac barbarī erant neque multum
frūmentō sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivēbant. 10
Parum agricultūrae studēbant multumque erant in vēnātiō-
nibus. Privātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil erat. Ita
sēdis fixās nōn habēbant. Lātē quotannis vagābantur.
Meliōra semper petēbant loca, ubi ovēs, iūmenta, bovēs
pāscentur. Potentiōrēs gentēs optimum occupābant 15
agrum. Ínfirmiōrēs finibus expellēbantur. §§ 84, 97

His rēbus factum est, utī paucīsannis ante Caesaris in
Galliam adventum quaedam Suēbōrum nātiōnēs ad superiō-
rem partem flūminis Dānūbī accēderent. (Eōrum gēns erat
longē maxima et potentissima Germānōrum omnium.) Paucī 20
ex Suēbis id flūmen trānsiēre nōn longē ab eō locō ubi ex
monte Abnobā prōsfluit. In his erat princeps Nasua nōnine.

ameliorate = make better
antiquity = antiquity, oldness
ferāx rich factum est happened
ferus wild gēns, gentis tribe
hūmans -a -um civilized
iūmenta yoke animals -itus -ly
lac, lactis milk lātē wide-ly
optimistic = expecting the best
sediment = setlings
nītē-ba-ntur depend-ed, lean-ed
ovis sheep palūs marsh § 43
pāsce-re-nt-ur might feed § 181 b
quotannis every year, yearly
vēnātiō -ōnis a hunt, hunting
In a German Forest

Locis natura erat haec, quem locum Nasua domicilió sibi ac sēdibus suis délēgerat. Flūmen est Isāra, quod ex Alpibus ā meridiē in Dānubium influit. Collis ā mediō aequaliter déclivis ad flūmen Isāram vergēbat. Ab eo flūmine, non magnā interiectā plānitiē, pariter acclivis collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius. Uterque collis ab superiōre parte silvestris. Hic tōtus locus altissimis montibus undique continēbātur. Hinc atque hinc secundum flūmen loca erant aperta, quō pāstōrēs bovēs et iūmenta 10 agerent. §§ 119 d, f, 159 g

In ripā eius flūminis in umbrā arborum magnārum Nasua casam aedicārat humilem, proximō annō relinquendam, quod nōn longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licēbat sēdēsque quotannis erant mūtandae.

15 Eō quī secūtus est autumnō, quī fuit annus Mārcō Messālā et Mārcō Pīsōne cōnsulibus, paulō post meridiem diēī clāri atque serēnī, puer undecim annōrum, flāvō capillō, oculis caeruleīs, cervī pelle vestītus prō casā Nasuae stābat. Paulō robustior prō ætāte erat; namque nōbis quīndecim 20 esse annōrum vīsus esset; tantā enim statūrā, tantis membris, tantāque erat magnītūdine corporis.


de-clivity = down-sloping
nascent = being born, rising
relinquishing = abandoning
vestige = trace, track  § 77 b

aequal-iter even-ly aetās age
harēna sand lūstrat surveys
capillus hair cervus buck
pellis skin quō where-to § 119 d
Arminius Goes a-Hunting


His rēbus adductus nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum armīs dēsiderātīs atque inventīs vēstīgīs māter cōnseque-rētur sēcumque domum redūceret. Itaque cōnstituit opti-20 mum esse quam celerrīmē potuit prōcurrēre. §§ 69, 90

Eā rē cōnstitūtā, quam maximō poterat cursū prōvolāvit et circiter quīngentōs passūs prōgressus cum lupō congrēdi-tur. Qui cum fugere nōllet, puer ei sagittam in apertās faucis misit. Fera īrāta impetum in puerum facit atque 25 iterum vulnerāta hastā cōnficcitur.

adversō flūmine upstream § 96 indignābātur was irritated
arcus bow adductus induced pharetra quiver
fera wild (beast) lupus wolf red-i-re-t would re-turn
hasta spear inventīs found sagitta arrow
Interea désiderátis armís mäter filium vēnātum proficisci sēnsit, et verita nē cum feris congrederētur, servōs vocat et subsequi iubet. Ipsa vehementer commöta praecurrīt et prima filium, vixdatum lupō interfectō, est cōnsēcūta. Simul puerum incūsat, quod sōlus exisset, et glōriātur, quod tam parātus esset ad periculum subeundum.

Cum autem servōrum auxiliō puer lupō pellem dētraheret, vōcēs hominum pedumque sonitus audiuntur. Nasua cum suis accēdit. Duo magna cervōrum corpora reportābant.

Erant praeterēa trēs hominēs Nōricī, qui dicēbantur cum eis in vēnātiōne armīs congressī pugnam commisisse ac superāti esse. Hōs captōs manibus post tergum vincitis trahēbant.

Nasuae cum id nūntiātum esset, uti puer lupum sōlus interfēcisset, factum magnopere laudat. Sociī autem, magnā grātulātiōne factā, puerum altē sustulērunt atque in casam patris reportārunt.


predication = statement  tacitly = quietly  uti (line 13) how
Tum dēnum Nasuam in lūdum próvocat. Dicit aleā cōnsulerent, utrum ipse in servitūte manēret an sē in libertātem vindicāret. Nasua assēnsit, et aleā semel atque iterum iactā, Nōricus nōn sōlum suam sed etiam suōrum libertātem cōsequitur. Suēbi dextram prēndit. Fidem inter sē dant.5


Miser Arminius in cōnspectū servōrum, patrum, amīcōrum in servitūtem abdūcitur. Immōtus tamen, fortis et aequō animō mōre suōrum condicionem accipit.


Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, hōrā diēi circiter quartā proficīscuntur, et magnīs itineribus Nōreiam contendunt. Tertiō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, eō perveniunt.


Hostēs autem ancipīti periculō perterriti terga vertunt ac per ordinēs Nóricōrum ērumpunt sēque fugae mandant atque in proximās silvās abdunt. Pauciēs diēbus discēdunt et eō tōtō annō vagāti ad Helvētiōs perveniunt. Hī Boiōs amicē suscipiunt et sociōs sibi asciscunt.


Proximā aestāte multī barbarī finibus ab Suēbis expulsī sunt et magnā cum multitūdine hominum in Nóricōs vēnērunt. Ibi agrōs vāstābant, aedificia incendēbant, vīcōs cēpē-
Noricus Sent to Marry Ariovistus

runt, multòs ex incolis in servitūtem abdūxērunt. Extrêmō
tamen autumnō proeliō superāti sunt et prīmā hieme cum
omnibus cōpiis discessērunt sēque tràns flūmen Dānubium
recēpērunt.

Eā quae secūta est aèstāte, qui fuit annus Gaiō Caesare 5
et Márcō Bibulō cōnsulibus, Vociō cum Suēbīs pācem et
amicitiam cōnfirmāre volēbat, nē Boīi aliique barbarī saepius
impetum in suōs finis facere audērent.

Quam ob rem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret,
qui societātem cum eō peterent atque postulārent, uti Suēbōs 10
sibi conciliāret; eique sorōrem suam Nōricam in mātri-
mōnium dat — multi enim Suēbī Ariovistum in Galliam
sequēbantur; ipse uxōrem ex Suēbis habēbat, et propter
eam affinitātem et fortūnam suam magnā erat grātiā apud
Suēbōs et aliōs Germānōs. Itaque lēgātī, Nōrica et Arminius 15
proficiscuntur cum mercātōribus, qui iter in Galliam factūrī
erant sēque eōs ad Ariovistum dēductūrōs polliciti sunt.

Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs erant duae. Alterius principēs
erant Aedui, alterius Arvernī. Hī inter sē multōs annōs
contendēbant. Sēquani, qui proximi flūmini Rhēnō erant, 20
sēsē cum Arvernīs coniūnxērunt. § 159 g

Ubi neutri victōriam reportant, factum est ut Sēquanī
arcesserent Germānōs, qui tràns Rhēnum incolēbant.
Hōrum primō circiter milia quīndecim duce Ariovistō Rhē-
um trànsiērunt et Arvernīs subsidiō vēnērunt. Germānō- 25

Arvernīs subsidiō vēnērunt came for aid to the Arverni
Quam ob rem = et ob eam rem and for this reason, and therefore
placuit ei it suited him, it was decided by him, he decided § 133
affinity = relation (by marriage) mercantile = trading
reconcile = make friendly uxorious = fond of a wife
rum auxiliō Aedui victi et coācti sunt Sēquanis obsidēs dare et iūrāre sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum imperiō essent. §§ 154, 229


Hae rēs dum apud Sēquanōs geruntur, cum omnibus cōpiīs suis Ariovistus in silvās sē ac palūdēs recēpit. Ibi multōs mēnsīs sē castris tenēbat neque suī potestātem fēcit. Gallī exspectāndo fatīgāti dē pugnā dēspērant et domum discēdere 15 coepērunt. Quōs Germānī dispersōs adortī vicērunt. § 107


adortī surprising coāctī forced gerī go on exsequī enforce
cōpiāe troops fēcit made, gave sui potestātem a chance at him
erat grātiā apud Suēbam uxōrem et filiam novem annōrum, 
cui nōmen erat Velaeda. Multōs etiam amīcōs inveniēbat 
in servīs rēgis, et nōnnūllōs et Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum 
obsidēs, quī apud Ariovistum erant, cognōvit. § 105

Cum ab hīs quaereret, quō statū rēs in Galliā sē habē-5 
rent, sic reperiēbat: tōtius Galliae factiōnēs esse duās; 
haerum alterius principātum tenēre Aeduōs, alterius Arver-
nōs; hōs omnī tempore dē potentātu inter sē contendere; 
Sēquanōs, quī sēsē cum Arvernīs coniūnxissent, auxilium ā 
Germānīs implōrāsse; hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia quīndecim 10 
Rhēnum trànsisse; Germānōrum auxiliō Aeduōs victōs et co-
āctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare et cīvitātem iūre iūrandō 
obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetīturōs neque recūsā-
tūrōs, quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum imperiō essent; Ae-
duōs omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum 15 
āmisisse; sed peius Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs accidisse, prop-
tereā quod Ariovistus domum reversus nōn esset et tertiam 
partem agri Sēquanī occupāvisset ibique cōnsēdisset. § 56, 3

Cum autem ex eis quaereret, quae genera Germānōrum et 
quam multi in Galliā essent, ita repperit: prīmō Suēbōs 20 
et Marcomannōs Sēquanīs auxiliō vēnisse; posteā, cum Aeduīs 
victīs cīvitātēs Galliae Ariovistō bellum īnferrent et 
ad eum oppugnandum vēnissent, trāductōs esse plurīs; 
nunc esse in Galliā ad numerum c. milium; hōs sēpārātm 
cōnsēdisse atque eis generātīm esse datōs agrōs, Marcoman-25 
nīs, Tribocīs, Vangionibus, Nemetibus, Sedusiīs, Suēbīs.

generātīm by tribes or nations  potentātus -ūs power, supremacy
iūre iūrandō by a right (that is)  principātus -ūs leadership  § 81
   to be sworn, by oath  rēs sē habent matters stand
Haec omnia Gallōs molestē ferre ac verēri, nē omnēs Ger-
manī Rhēnum trānsīrent et omnīs Gallōs finibus expellere
cōnārentur; nam hōrum meliōrem esse quam illōrum agrum.

Dē Rōmānis quoque paucā interdum audiēbat; populum
5 Rōmānum tōtius orbis terrārum firmissimum esse ac poten-
tissimum; magnam et superbam habēre urbem, quae Rōma
appellārētur; hanc maximam et flōrentissimam tōtius orbis
aestimāri; Rōmānīs rēgem esse nūllum; duōs magistrātūs
créāri annūos, quōs cōnsulēs appellārent; iam Ariovistum
10 lēgātōs Rōmam ad senātum misisse, quī et mūnera ferrent
et societātem cum populō Rōmānō peterent. § 217 f

Rōmānī saepe numerō cum Gallīs bellum gesserant, cum
finibus suīs eōs aut prohibērent aut expellērent, eōsque
plērumque superārant. Antiquitus enim Gallī semel atque
15 iterum in Rōmānōrum finīs impetum fēcerant atque etiam ad
Rōmam accesserant; et quī ex Gallīs in Ītalīā cōnsēderant
et ab utrāque parte flūminis Pādī vicōs possessionēsque
habēbant, eī contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāverant atque
sēsē cum Hannibale, ācerrimō acerbissimōque Rōmānōrum
20 hoste, coniūnxe rent.

His rébus fīebat, utī eae cīvitātēs Galliae, quae proximae
essent, paulātim ā Rōmānis victae et in prōvinciam redāctae
sint. Hanc appellābant ‘prōvinciam nostram’ sīve
‘Galliam prōvinciam.’ Quae pars prōvinciae citrā Alpis
25 posita est, eam ‘citeriōrem prōvinciam’ sīve ‘citeriōrem
Galliam’ vocābant, et quae pars ultrā Alpis posita est,
eam ‘ulteriōrem prōvinciam’ sīve ‘ulteriōrem Galliam’
dicēbant. §§ 74, 5 ; 152

citerior nearer, hither remunerate = return gifts, repay
Ibi collocábant legiônēs, quae praesidiō essent civibus Romānis, quī hīs in locīs versārentur. Ibi dispōnēbant praesidia, quae barbarōs intrā finīs Romānōrum ingredi prohibērent. Ibi prōcōnsul imperium tenēbat, délectūs habēbat, totī prōvinciae militēs imperābat. Eō mercātōrēs cum mercibus proficiscēbantur atque inde coinmeābant ad eās civitātēs, quae sub septentrionibus postīae sunt. § 119


Quā rē inductus rēx nōn inimīcō erat in puerum animō; namque eum tacēre vidēbat neque aliīs sēsē antepōnere intellegēbat. Fortem, modestum, diligentem esse sciēbat. Et eius summum in utramque uxōrem studium animadverterat, summam in Velaedam voluntātem, fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat.

Hīs rēbus fiēbat, utī Arminius inter dum cūstōs pōnerētur puerīs Aeduīs et Sēquanīs, quī obsidēs in castrīs tenēbantur. Post paulō, ubi bonō in eōs animō est cognitus, fiēbat, utī eum magis prō amīcō quam cūstōde aestimārent.
Et in prīmis obses Aeduus, puer quattuordecim annōrum, nōmine Litavic cus ei maximam fidem habēbat.

Ex eō Arminius multa dē Aeduīs, dē Sēquanīs et dē aliīs civitātībus Galliae cognōvit: apud Gallōs quīnque esse 5 genēra homīnum; hōrum ūnum genus esse druidum, quī sacris praeessent; alterum nōbilium, quī essent optimātēs Gallōrum ac plērumque agrī tenērent; in hīs esse principēs civitātūm, ē quibus magistrātūs creārentur et quīdam dē-
ligerentur ad summās rēs conficiendās; tertium genus esse 10 equītum, quī plērumque in bellīs versārentur; quārtum genus esse plēbis,—partim quī sēsē divītum et potentiō-
rum amīcītiae dēdunt et ā patrōnīs ‘clientēs’ appellantur, partim quī aere aliēnō oppressī ‘obaerātī’ dīcuntur; quō-
rum condiciō paulō est suprā servitūtem;—quintum genus 15 esse servōrum, quōrum plēriquē essent, quī bellō captī sint.

Multīs ante annīs Arvernōs cum populō Rōmānō bellum gessisse ac superātōs esse; posteā autem populum Rōmānum pācem cum eis fēcisse neque stipendium imposuisse atque eōs lēgibus suiō utī voluisses; Rōmānōs enim rārō umquam 20 exercitum ē finibus Galliae prōvinciae ēdūcere et Gallōs liberōs esse velle; quā ex rē fieri, utī Gallī multō minus imperium Rōmānōrum quam Germānōrum timēre dēbērent.

Aeduōs populī Rōmānī esse amīcōs, saepe numerō frātēs et cōnsanguineōs ā senātū appellātōs; eōs rēgem nūllum 25 habēre sed magistrātum creāre annuum, quem ‘vergobretum’ appellārent; eius imperium summum neque firmissimum esse,
sacrīs (Dat.) praeessent were to take charge of sacrifices. § 220, 11
aes aliēnum another’s money ob-aerātī held for debt, debtors
druid-um of druids (priests) stipendium tribute, tax
quod Dumnorix, frater Divitiáci, qui paucis ante annis principátum in civitáte obtinuerat, facultátes magnás ad largiendum habéret; hunc nón sólum domi sed etiam apud finitimás civitátes largiter posse; magnum numerum equi-
tätús suó súmptú alere et circum sē habère; saepe plébem dèterrère, nē imperiús oboedirent; quod eius auctóritátis apud plébem privátim plús valétet quam ipsórum magistrá-
tuum; ipsum rēgni obtinendí cupidum esse; quā cupiditáte inductum, nisi quid accideret, rēgnum iam occupátırum.

Dixit idem Litaviccus apud Sēquanós suisse rēgem patris sui memória hominem potentissimum, Catamantaloedem; rēgnum in Sēquanís multós annós obtinuísse et á senátu populi Rōmānī amicum appellátum esse; nunc autem apud Sēquanós longē nōbilissimum esse et ditíssimum Casticum, Catamantaloedis filium; rēgnum obtinère cupere neque occupáre audère propter inimiciús principum Sēquanórüm et Arioivistí auctóritátem.

Paucís post diébus lēgáti, quós Rōmam miserat, ad Ario-
vistum reversí sunt: senátum múnera accépisse et petente Gaiō Caesare, qui eō tempore erat cōnsul, Arioivistum rēgem atque amicum appellássse. Quibus rébus Arioivistus magnopere sublátus, praesentibus obsidibus Aeduís et Sēquanís, summopere gloriátus est atque íta locútus: sē quoque frā-
trem esse Rōmānōrum; Caesarem, qui proximō annō prōcōnsul imperium Galliae prōvinciae obtentūrus esset, sibi suísque amicissimum esse. §§ 100, 228–9

Eō quod secútum est vēre, qui fuit annus Lūciō Písōne, Aulō Gabiniō cōnsulibus, crēbrī rumōrés ad Arioivistum

*alere* feed  *audère* dare  *súmptus* expense  *sub-látus* puffed up
afferēbantur, itemque per mercātōrēs certior factus est Helvētiīs esse in animō dē finibus suis cum omnibus cópiis exīre. Exeundi hās esse causās; primum, quod prō multitudine hominum angustōs sē finis habēre arbitrārentur; deinde quod ab nōn nullīs principibus sollicitārentur. Repe- riēbat etiam in quaerendō Arioquistus quōsdam ex Aeduīs et Sēquanīs vidēri nōn inimīcō in Helvētiīs animō esse.

His rēbus commōtus Arioquistus explōrātōrēs in diversās civitātēs Galliae dīmisit. Eis negotium dat, utī ea quae apud eās gerantur cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certīōrem faciant. Eōdem ferē tempore lēgātōs trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit; sed quā dē causā aut quam in partem iter factūrit essent, Arminiūs nōn cognōvit.

§ 226

Itaque ad obsidēs Aeduōrum sē recēpit. Litaviccum ad sē vocat. Quaerit ex sōlō quibus dē causīs dē finibus Helvētiī exitūri essent, quī hominēs essent, et quā rē Arioquistus tantō opere commovērētur. Aeduus respondit: his paucīs annīs belliō frāctōs esse Aeduōs, Arvernōs, Sēquanōs; nōn esse dubium, quīn eō tempore tōtīs Galliae plurimum Helvētiī possent; bellandi cupidōs esse; reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdere; magnō dolore affici, quod angustōs finis habērent; montibus enim altīs aut lātīs flūminibus undique continēri; hīs rēbus prohibēri, quō minus aut lātē vagārentur aut facile fīnitimis bellum inferrent.

Eis negotium dat utī assigns them the task that (they find out).

commotion = agitation  doubled = doubtful § 153
fractured = broken  query = seek to know, ask § 147 e
angustus -a -um narrow  plurimum possent were most able
dīmittere send away, let go  prae-cēdere pre-cede, excel § 220, 11
Omnem civitātem Helvētiam in quattuor pagōs divisam esse; hōrum ūnum pagum Tigrinum appellāri; Tigrinōs patrum suōrum memoriā domō exisse; bellum cum populō Rōmānō gessisse; Lūciōm Cassium cōnsulem occidisse exercitumque eius pepulisse et sub iugum misisse; hāc victōriā Helvētiōs insolenter gloriāri et virtūtem Rōmānōrum dēspicere cōnsuēsse. § 60

Ubi Arminius ex eō quaesivit, quis rēx apud Helvētiōs esset, Litaviccus ita respondit: eōs rēgem habēre nūllum; Gallōs enim libertātem maximi aestimāre; cupere sē ipsōs 10 creāre magistrātūs, qui sibi praecessent; rēgēs habēre nōlle; ipsum nōmen rēgis verēri atque ōdisse. §§ 128, 130

Potentiōrēs tamen vulgō rēgna occupāre cōnāri; qui cum ob eam rem aliās domō expellantur, aliās ā civitāte interficiantur (apud Helvētiōs enim poena erat ut damnāti ignī 15 cremārentur), tamen hoc cōnātū nōn dēsistere; omnīs sibi conciliāre; domī coniūrāre; societātēs cum principibus aliārum civitātum petere. Atque eō sorōrēs, filiās, propinquās suās nūptum collocāre. § 157

In hōc genere fuisset Celtillum Arvernum, qui victiōs Aeduīs, 20 principātum tōtius Galliae obtinēret, Orgetorīgēm Helvētium, Casticum Sēquanum, Dumnōrigēm Aeduōm, quōrum prīmus ab Arvernīs interfectus esset, alter timōre poenae perterritus sibi mortem cōnsēvisset, duo reliquī etiam nunc in spem rēgni obtinendi venirent.

belli-gerent = making war
cremate = burn up
nuptials = marriage ceremonies
consciscere = take upon

odium = hatred, dislike
penalty = punishment
vulgar = of the crowd
iugum yoke
propinqua relative
Idem dixit: Helvētiōs virtūte omnibus praestāre; Ario-vistum hoc intellegere atque timēre, nē Sēquanōs dēfēnsum et Germānōs oppugnātum venirent; — namque biennio ante Orgetorix coniūrātiōnem nōbiliōm domī fēcerat et Helvētiōs 5 persuāsum habēbat, ut de finibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiis exīrent, tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent, imperiōque potūrentur et domiciliō maximē frūmentāria loca occupārent. § 182 b

Hīs rēbus adductī Helvētiī cōnstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmenta et carrōs 10 coēmere, sēmentis quam maximās facere, frūmentī quam maximam cōpiam parāre, cum proximīs civitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt. Profectiōnem in tertium annum lēge cōnfīrmantr. §§ 129, 158


biennial = two-yearly § 67 copious = well supplied probable = to be proven
conciliation = winning over
lēgātiō mission lēgātus envoy
con-firmāre establish, assure op-pugnāt-um (§157 b) to at-tack
ducere lead, draw, decide potiri get praestāre excel
The Harudes Cross the Rhine


Arminius hāc ōrātiōne Litavicci intellēxit post eius mortem Helvētiōs nihilō minus e finibus exire cōnāri et iam ad eam rem parātōs esse. Ariovistum autem eōs timēre vidit atque 15 lēgātōs trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam auxiliōrum petendōrum causā misisse sentiēbat. 118 c

Quīndecim post diēbus lēgātī, quōs trāns Rhēnum ab Ariovistō missōs super dēmōnstrāvimus, ad eum revertērunt: Harūdēs hominum mīlia vigintī quattuor eī auxiliō mittere; 20 hōs iam domō proletōs esse. §§ 56, 3; 94 b; 159 g

Eōdem ērē tempore speculātōrēs ex Aeduīs rediērunt: esse omnīnō itinera duō, quibus itineribus Helvētiī domō exire possent, ūnum per Sēquanōs angustum et difficilī, vix quā singuli carri dūcerentur et quā Sēquanīs invītīs 25

carriage = cart, car, wagon  incited = roused, angered
e-nunciation = a telling out  indicator = pointer (accuser)
ex-execution = following out  speculator = one who spies
causa case  dicere plead  quà $119 g  vix hardly
ire non possent; alterum per prōvinciam Rōmānam, multō
generis atque expeditius, propterea quod inter finis Hel-
vētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluat, isque nōnnullis
locis vadō trānseātur; in eō flūmine pontem esse; illāc
autem Caesare invītō Helvētiōs trānsīre non posse. § 119 g

Plērōque Aeduōs et Sēquanōs recūsāre, quō minus per
suōs finis eōs ire patenterunt; timēre enim, nē agrōs popu-
lārentur; spērāre faciliōre itinere adductōs Helvētiōs iter
per prōvinciam temptātūrōs et cum exercītū populi Rōmānī
armis congressūrōs. § 153

Únōs ex omnibus Casticum et Dumnorīgem nihil eārum
rērum dicere, quās relictū dicerent, sed tacitūs permanēre
et nihil eīs rēbus commovēri. § 137 c

Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Ariovistus nihil sībi timendum putāvit
ac satis habēbat in prāsentia domī remanēre et, quid
Caesar faceret, exspectāre. Dumnorīgī autem et Castīcō
cūstōdēs pōnere instituit. Eius reī causā quōsdam ē suīs
in Sēquanōs et in Aeduōs mittit speculātūrēs, qui negōtiātum
et mercātum venire vidērentur. § 157 b

Hīs negōtiūm dat, utī quae agant et quibuscum loquantur
cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Nam
societātis reminiscēbatūr, quam biennīo ante cum illīs
Orgetorīx fēcerat, et memoriā tenēbat Dumnorīgem filiām
Orgetorīgis in mātrimōnium dūxisse. § 107 b

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{commotion} & = \text{disturbance} \\
\text{desperation} & = \text{hopelessness} \\
\text{facility} & = \text{easiness, ease} \\
\text{in praeentia for the present} & \\
\text{negōtiāt-um to do business} & = \text{keep in boundaries} \\
\text{patient} & = \text{allowing, suffering} \\
\text{taciturnity} & = \text{silence, stillness} \\
\text{recūsāre give back reasons . . .} & \\
\text{quō minus why not, refuse to} & \\
\end{align*}
\]
Dum haec in Sêquanis geruntur, Helvêtiī nôn sibi exspectandum statuunt, quin domō proficiscantur. Trium mënsium molita cibâria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Reliquum omne frûmentum combûrunt. Oppida incendunt, ut domum reditiônis spem tollerent. Quâ sublâtâ, sësë 5 parâtiôrês ad omnia pericula subeunda fore spërant. § 106 d

Helvêtiī iter per Sêquanös timëbant. Per prôvinciam iter temptâre målunt. Sibi Rhodanum esse trânseundum cûstituunt. (Eis enim in animô erat Allobrogibus vel persuâdère vel vi cögere, ut per finis suös eös ire pate-10 rentur.) Diem dicunt, quâ dië ad ripam Rhodanî omnês conveniant. Is diës erat ante diem quintum Kalendâs Aprilîs, Lûciô Pisône, Aulô Gabîniô cûnsulibus. § 151 b

Caesari cum id nûntiûtum esset, eös per prôvinciam iter facere cûnari, mâtûrat ab urbe Rômâ proficisci, et quam 15 maximês potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriôrem contendit et ad Rhodanum pervenit. Tôtî prôvinciæ militês imperat. Pontem, qui in Rhodanô erat, rescindit. §§ 5 f, 148 g

Cuius adventû cognîtô, ad eum Helvêtiī mittunt, qui dicèrent: sibi esse in animô sine üllô maleficiô iter per 20 prôvinciam facere; rogâre, ut id sibi facere liceat. § 229

Caesar concêdendum nôn putâtbat. Tamen, ut spatium intercêdere posset, dum militês convenirent, lægâtîs respondit: diem sê ad déliberandum sümptûrum; si quid vel-lent, ad Ídûs Aprilîs reverterentur. § 147 d 25

imperative = demanding
inter-cede = come-between.
com-bûrere burn up § 220, 4
dicere say, set gerî be done
tollere, sus-tuî, sub-lâtus take away, remove, lift

male-factor = evil-doer
re-scind = cut away or down
Interea ripam Rhodani vallō fossaquē mūnivit. Hoc opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius si sē invītō trānsīre cōnentur prohibēre possit; et, ubi lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre populi Rōmāni posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare, et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. §§ 80, 96, 148 f

Quā spē dēiectī Helvētiī, sī vadīs Rhodani perrumpere possent, cōnuntur. Operis mūnitiōne repulsi hoc cōnātū dēstītērunt. Lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Aeduōm mittunt. Is ā Sēquanis impetrat, ut per finīs suōs ēōs ēre patiantur.

Interea Caesar mūnitiōnibus Titum Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit. Ipse inĪtaliām magnīs itineribus contendit, duāisque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit et trīs, quae inĪtaliā hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulterīorum Gallīam per Alpis erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ēre contēndit. Ibi pulsīs barbarīs, quī inīnere exercitum prohibēre cōnābantur, in ulterīorum prōvinciam diē septimō pervēnit. § 63 a

Helvētiī iam per angustiās et finis Sēquanōrum cōpiās suās trāḑūxerant et ēn Aeduōrum finīs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haec eōdem tempore Caesari referēbantur et lēgātī ab Allobrogibus et ab Aeduīs veniēbant; Allobrogēs nūntiātum sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliquī; Aeduī auxiliōm rogātum et questum, quod

de-jected = dis-ap-pointed, refer = relate = report = bring back (word or news)
mūnire, com-mūnire fortify quest-um (§ 157) to complain
per-rumpere break through quō = ut eō that by this means
praeficere put in charge trādT-ux-era-nt had led over
Helvētiī eōrum finis populārentur: ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs Rōmāni agrī vāstāri, liberī in servitūtem abdūci, oppida expugnāri non dēbuerint. §§ 130, 149

Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar mātūrandum sibi statuit; et Aeduīs frūmentum exercituī pollicentibus, magnīs itineribus hostīs sequitur. Helvētiī trīs iam partīs cōpiārum flūmen Ararim trādūxerant. Caesar subītō ad eam partem pervenit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopīnantis aggressus magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliqui sēsē fugae mandāvērunt. Is pagus appellābātur Tigurīnus. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae Lūcium Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. §§ 98 1, 156

Hōc proeliō factō, pontem in Arari faciendum cūrāt atque ita exercitum trāducit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōtī, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cuius lēgātiōnis Divicō princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs, ubi Caesar eōs esse voluisset; sin bellō persequī persevērāret, reminiscētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum; nē ipsōs dēspiceret; sē virtūte contendere quam dolō nītī mālle. §§ 107 b, 143

ag-gressor = at-tacker § 220, 2
merited = were deserving

casually = by chance or luck
opinion = way of thinking

insolvent = not paying § 220, 7
peninsula = almost an island

incommodum -Ī defeat, disaster
repite or subitō suddenly

mandāre bid, entrust, give up
nītī rely

nōn-dum not yet
The Grain Does not Arrive

His Caesar, quae visum est, respondit, sed exitus fuit oratiōnis: si obsidēs ab eis sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et si Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās eis intulerint, item si aliis satisfaciēnt, sēsē cum eis pācem esse factūrum. §§ 143, 148 g


Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem praemittit, qui videant quās in partīs hostēs iter faciant. Suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac sātis habēbat in praesentia hostem rapīnīs prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agimen et Rōmānōrum prīnum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset. § 115, p. 28

Hīs omnibus diēbus Caesar frūmentum flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat. Id cum animadvertissent Helvētiī, iter ā Ararī āvertērunt, sī forte Caesarem ā flūmine abdūcerent et frūmentō commeātūque interfūderent.

Interim cōtidiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī; cōnferri, comportāri, adesse dicere. § 134 b

avert = turn away, turn aside
contain = withhold, hold in
exclude = shut out, cut off
commeātus supplies
forte perchance [§ 220, 7
inferre, intulī, illātus bring upon, carry against, inflict
inter-clūdere shut off, cut off
rapine = plundering, robbery
satisfactory = doing enough
secession = withdrawal
novissimus newest, last (of)
sī abdūcerent (to see) if they might draw (him) away
sub-vex-er-a-t had brought up
visum est seemed (good, right)
Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mētiri oportēret, convocātis Aeduōrum principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in īsīs vergobretō Liscō, qui ā vita necisque in suōs habuit potestātem, graviter eōs acćusat, quod cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī frūmentum posset, tam necessāriō tempore ab īs nōn sublevētur. Multō gravius queritur, quod ab īs sit dēstitūtus, quibus auxiliō venīret. § 66

Tum dēnum Liscus āratōne Cāesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōnnullōs, qui privātī plūs possint quam īpsi magistrātūs. Hōs sēdiōsā āratōne multitūdinem dēterrēre, nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod dēbeant: Aeduōs Helvētiōs cupere dēbēre; Rōmānōs ē finibus prōvinciae ēgredi incipere; neque quemquam dubitāre dēbēre, quīn, si Helvētiōs superāverint, Aeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eisdem Rōmānōrum cōnsilia hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē-coercērī nōn posse. §§ 119 b, 219, 4

Cāesar hāc āratōne Liscī Dumnorīgēm dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plurībus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter conciliō dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat. Dicīt liberīus atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit. Reperit esse quibus auxiliō venīret for aid to whom he was coming §§ 159 g, 225 privātī plūs possint (though) private citizens are more powerful neque dubitāre dēbēre quīn nor ought (anyone) to doubt, but-that si superāverint, sint ēreptūrī if they overcome, they will take away plurībus praesentibus when too many were present § 95 b coercion = restraint, checking instance = pressing on, urging counsel = advice, plan § 119 c querulous = complaining iactārī be aired quem-quam tacu-era-t had kept quiet
vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā
apud plēbem propter liberalitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum
novārum. Omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia quotannis parvo
pretiō redimere; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmpṣū
semper alere et circum sē habēre; nēminem domī contrā eum
quicquam audēre; neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud proximās
civitātēs largitēr posse; huius potentiae causā sorōrem
et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātēs collocāsse; ip-
sum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs
propter eam affīnitātem; ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem
et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta sit.
Quibus rēbus cognītīs, Caesar satis esse causae arbitrābātur,
quā rē in eum animadverteret. § 72

His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Divitiācī frā-
trīs summum in populum Rōmānum studium cognōverat;
nam, nē Dumnōrigis suppliciō Divitiācī animum offendēret,
verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Divitiā-
cūm ad sē vocāri iubet. Per interpretēm cum eō colloquitur.
Petit atque hortātur, ut sine eius offēsīōne animī vel ipse
dē Dumnōrigē statuat, vel civitātem statuere iubet.

Divitiācūs Caesarem obsēcrāre coepit, nē quid gravīus
in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē, illa esse vēra; nec quωm-
quam plūs quam sē dolōris capere. Sēsē tamen et amōre
frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commovēri. Quod si quid
25 ei ā Caesare gravīus accidisset, futūrum, utī tōtius Gall-
liae animī ā sē āverterentur. §§ 115 c, 119 b

Postrīdiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō viduum supererat cum exercitūī frūmentum mētīri oportēret, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit. Iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte, oppidum Aeduōrum longē maximum et cōpiōsis simum, īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs hostibus nūn-tiātur. Helvētiī, quod Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs existimā-bant, ā novissimō agmine īnsequi ac lacessere coepērunt.

Caesar cōpiās suās in proximum collem subdūcit equi-tātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem ĭnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum. In summō colle duās legiōnēs novās et omnia auxilia collocāvit. Impedimenta in ūnum locum

apprehend = seize upon  
condone = forgive  
orator = pleader  
admonition = a warning, advice  
ad-hibère = have present  
cōnsuērat = was accustomed  
colle mediō = halfway up the hill  

ostentatious = showy § 220, 9  
preterit = bygone  
science = knowledge  
inevitable = unavoidable  
lacessere = harass, annoy  
ā novissimō = on the rear (of)  
super-esse = be (left) over § 220, 15
cönferri et eum müniri iussit. Helvētīi impediamenti sua in ünum locum contulērunt. Ipsi phalange factā sub primam aciem Rōmānōrum successērunt.

Caesar primum suum, deinde suōrum equōs ex cōnspectū sustulit, ut spem fugae tolleret. Quibus sublātīs, suōs cohortātus proelium commīsīt. Rōmānī ē locō superiore pila mīsēre. His phalangem facile perfrēgērunt, quod plūra hostium scūta pīlis trānsfixa et colligāta sunt, ut multi scūtum manū ēmitterent et nūdō corpore pugnārent.

Tandem vulneribus cōnfectī et pedem referēbant et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum, ēō sē recipiēbant. Captō monte et succēdentibus Rōmānīs, Helvētīi rūrsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coeōrunt. § 130

Ita ancipītī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Nam hoc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā īusque ad noctem pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Diūtius cum sustinēre Rōmānōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentīs castrīsque Rōmānī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiīs captus est. § 106 c

phalange factā with a phalanx formed, after forming a phalanx
proelium commīsīt let the battle go together, joined battle

fragile = breakable
ancipital = two headed, double
escutcheon = ornamental shield
succeed = come up, get up (to)

colligāta bound together § 220, 4
sub-esse be near
cön-ferre, con-tuli, col-lātus
tollere, sus-tuli, sub-lātus lift,
bring together, collect, put off
sub-esse, sus-tuli, sub-lātus lift,
take away, remove § 220, 14
Ex eō proeliō circiter milia hominum CXXX. (centum tri-
gintā) superfuerunt, eāque totā nocte continentur iērant. Caesār litterās nūntiosque ad reliquōs Gallōs missit, nē
eōs frumentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent. Helvētiī omnium rē-
rum inopiā adductū lēgātōs dē dēditioē ad eum misērant. Quō cum eum in itinere convēnissent, sēsē Caesāri ad pedēs
prōicērunt et flentēs pācem petiērunt. Obsidēs, arma,
servōs, quō ad eōs perfugiēissent, poposcit. His trāditis eōs
in dēditioēm accēpit. § 115 c
Helvētiōs in finīs suōs revertī iussit. Allobrogibus im-
perāvit, uti eis frumentī cōpiam facerent. Ipsōs oppida
vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Boiōs peten-
tibus Aeduīs ut in finibus suīs collocārunt, concessit. § 97
Dum haec in Aeduīs geruntur, Arminius inter spem atque
metum dubius erat. Dominam et Velaedam amābat. Ari-
ovistum ōderat. Rēs Sēquanōrum miserābātur. Amicō
Litavicco et Aeduīs cupiēbant. Suēbōs autem trāns Rhēnō
in armīs esse et Ubīs bellum īnferre intellegēbat. His
praesse patrem Nasuam et Cimberium patruum audiēbat.
Saepe ārdēbat effugere sēque ad patrem Suēbōsque cōnferre. 20
Eōdem tempore multa Ariovistō erant cūrae. Gallī finīs
lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēbant. Trāns Rhē-
num autem cōnferī Germānī sībi ipsī impedīmentō erant.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adjutant</td>
<td>helper, assistant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>se cōnferre</td>
<td>betake himself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnferō</td>
<td>crowded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-ditiō</td>
<td>giving up, surrender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facere</td>
<td>make up, give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flēre</td>
<td>weep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>metus</td>
<td>fear, dread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obses</td>
<td>hostage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restitution</td>
<td>rebuilding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per-fugere</td>
<td>(i) flee over § 220, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poscere</td>
<td>demand, ask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prae-esse</td>
<td>be in command (of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qui</td>
<td>= et ei and (when) they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prō-icere</td>
<td>(i) throw forward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trà-derē</td>
<td>hand over, deliver</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hī paulātim consuēscēbant Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam venīre optimōsque agrōs occupāre. Id Gallī molestē ferēbant neque Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versāri volēbant.

His rēbus adductus hūc illūc animō ferēbātur. Prīmō 5 gaudēre coepit, quod Aeduīs causa inimīcitiae cum Helvētiīs intercēderet, quod veterēs inimīci Helvētiī cum Rōmānīs essent armīs congressī. Eī autem grātum fuit, quod Aeduus Dumnorīx Caesāri in suspicīōnem vēnisset. Posteā autem cum Helvētiōs proelīō pulsōs in Lingonas fugere, Caesarem 10 īnsequī audīret, ancipītī sententiā commovēbātur. § 147 g

Dum dubitat, quid faciendum sit, speculātōrēs, quōs in Aeduōs Sēquanōsque ab eō missōs suprā diximus, ad eum revertērunt: Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, Caesarem in prōvinciam nōn revertī exercitumque eius in Lingonibus esse. 15 Prīncipēs autem tōtius Galliae Celticae ad eum grātulātum vēnisse; hōs petiisse, utī sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere licēret, quod habuerint quāsdam rēs, quās ā Caesare petere voluissent; quod concilium permīssum et paucīs post diēbus Bibracte convocātum esset; neque abesse suspicīōnem, quīn contrā Germānōs coniūrārent.

His rēbus commōtus Ariovistus mātūrat nūntiōs in omnīs partīs dimittere. Iubet manūs cōgī, in armīs exercērī, exercitum in Tribocōs condūci, ut, si quō opus esset ad bellum ēdūci posset; nam quā dē causā Caesar exercitum suum

Aeduīs . . . intercēderet there happened (to be) a reason of hostility for the Aeduan; they happened to have reason for hostility in diem . . . indicere arrange (set) for a certain day § 221 b
si quō opus esset if there should be need of any § 71 c

 congressī essent had met manūs bands, hands
in Lingonibus tenēret, nōndum perspexerat; et cuius absentis amicitia anteā nīxus erat, eius praesentis imperium magnopere verēbātur. § 70–3

Eōdem tempore, quod parātiōres ad bellum erant, prīncīpēs Harūdum ad sē vocat. Quōs maximē cohortātus docet, quōs quantō opere communēs salūtēs intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ēnō tempore conīiligendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suās cópiās Harūdēs in finīs Aeduōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populāri coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs, eōs ā sē dīmittit.

Dum haec in Triboccis geruntur, lēgātī ā Caesare ad Ariovistum missī sunt, qui dīcerent: Haec sibi ad Ariovistum esse data mandāta; nē quōs Germānōs amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliām trādūceret; obsidēs Aeduīs redderet. Si id ita fēcisset, Caesari populōque Rōmānō perpetuām amicitiam cum eō esse futūram; sīn obsidēs retinēre et bellō persequī perseverāret, Aeduōrum iniūriās Caesarem nōn esse neglēctūrum. §§ 143, 225

Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī, ut quī vicissent, eīs, quōs vicissent, imperārent; Aeduōs bellī fortūnam temptāsse ac superātōs esse; si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet, quem ad modum suō iūre ēternū, nōn oportēre sē ā Caesare in suō iūre impedīrī. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn esse neglēctūrum, nēminem 25

cuius absentis on whose (friendship . . . when he was) absent
eius praesentis imperium his power (he feared when) present § 94 (Direct Statement.) Obsidēs reddē give back the hostages § 143

ultī, nīxus rely, depend dis-tinērī See § 220, 5

Paucis post diēbus nūntiī Rōmā missī ad Ariovistum vēnērumt: Iniussū senātūs Caesarem ē finibus prōvinciae égressum; Gallōs sibi conciliāre cōnāri; iam apud eōs plurimum posse, et huius potentiaē causā inimicōs rēgis atque amīci populi Rōmānī dēfendere; haec omnia contrā senātūs voluntātem facere; Rōmae Caesarem rei publicae hostem aestimāri; Catōnom, Lentulum, Mārcellum aliōsque summōs populi Rōmānī virōs Caesaris potentiam verēri; magnō opere rei publicae commūnisque salūtis interesse eum aut capī aut interīci; Rōmānīs tamen id facere nōn licēre. Quod sī Ariovistus fēcerit, multīs nōbilibus prin-15cipibusque populi Rōmānī gratum esse factūrum, quōrum omnium amicitiām Caesaris morte redimere posset. § 73 c

His Ariovistus ita respondit: Sibi esse in animō Caesarem in colloquium venīre invitāre; quem, sī posset, vel captūrum vel interfēctūrum; sī minus potuisset, factūrum, uti intelle-20geret, quid Germānī in bellō possent. §§ 70–1

His rēbus cōnstitūtīs, Ariovistus castra mōvit et ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod erat longē maximum et mūnītissimum oppidum Sēquanōrum, contendit. Cum septem diērum viam prōcessisset, nūntiatum est eī, Sēquanōs Cum vellet, congregerētur when he wished, he should come on interesse eum . . . capi it was the interest (of the state) that he be (either) captured (or killed) . . . § 66, 73 c, 143, 151 estimate = reckon, rate § 73 pernicious = ruinous, destructive gratum favor minus not so quod sī but if quōrum and their
Rōmānīs frūmentum sumministrāre et Caesarem magnis itineribus accessisse et Vesontiōnem iam occupāsse.

Quibus rēbus vehementer commōtus Ariovistus cum omni-bus cōpiis in Tribocōs sēsē recēpit nūntiōsque ad Nasuam et Cimberium mīsit, quī ab eis postulārent, utī quam celer-5 rimē possent, Rhēnum trānsīrent sibique centum pagōs Suē-
bōrum auxiliō addūcerent aut, si minus potuissent, quam plūrimōs possent sibi subsidiō summitterent. § 90

İntereā paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae causā morātus Caesar castra mōvit et in Tribocōs praefectus 10 est. Ariovistō cum id nūntiātum esset, Caesarem ad sē venire neque iam longē abesse, lēgātōs ad eum mīsit: Quod anteā dē colloquiō postulāset, id iam fierī posse, quoniam propius accessisset; diem colloquiō dīceret; nē quem peditem addūceret; uterque cum equitātū venīret. §§ 113, 158 c 15


Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōratiōnis sua senatūisque in eum beneficiā commemorāvit. Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātis in mandātis dederat; nē Aeduí bellum inferret; 25 obsidēs redderet; nē quōs Germānōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur. § 143

postulant = one who asks vehemently = mightily subsidiary = giving support vehicle = carriage, carrier
Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris paucā respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa prae dicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Galliā: sēdīs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntātē datūs. Nōn sēsē Gallīs sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse. Amīcitiam populi Rōmānī sibi ornāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre; aliā ratiōne nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetierit atque Caesarem nōn prō amīcō sed hoste habitūrum. Quod si eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum. § 115 b

Dum haec in colloquīō geruntur, equītēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad Caesariānōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in eōs conicēre. Quō factō, Caesar loquendi finem 15 fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum reicerent. Eō factō, Ariovistus intellēxit armīs sibi esse cum Rōmānīs congrēdiendum. Statuit autem Suēbōs exspectāndōs, Rōmānīs frūmentō prohibēndōs. §§ 113, 134 b

Trīduō post Ariovistus castra prōmōvit et praeter castra 20 Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit atque milibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, uti frūmentō commēātūque Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et Ariovistō pugnāndī potestātem fēcit. §§ 58, 103, 226

potestātem fēcit made, arranged, or gave an opportunity (to fight)
lapidary = polisher of stones predication = declaration
ad-equītāre ride at, dash at prō-dūxit led forth § 220, 12
aliā ratiōne otherwise, else prō-movēre move forward
arcessītum (because) sent for praeter by re-icere hurl back


Quō factō omnēs Germānī terga vertere coāctī sunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi perpauci proficiscentīs (them as they were) starting out (for battle)
spatium pīla coniciendi time to throw javelins (was not given)

dē-super from above
eō on them fās right, fate
īn-silīre leap up on
īn-struere draw up (in order)

passae manūs outstretched hands
raeda wagon prōcurrere run
re-vellere pull back, tear away
sors, sortīs lot superāre win

§ 100


§ 60


agnem rout  cōnﬁsi relying  nāre swim
ferrum iron  nactus finding  uttrimque § 119 f
nāvicula little boat  virēs strength  via.  See p. 142
neque iam lacrimās tenēre poterat. Arminiī amplexū haesit atque flēns ei collō pependit. § 134 b

Tum per interpretēm comperit Caesar puellam barbam Ariovistī rēgis filiam esse, mātrem et īnfantem sorōrem in fugā āmīsisse, alteram quoque rēgis coniugem Nōricam 5 perisse, huic Arminium fuisse servum. Quibus cognitis rēbus, prōcōnsul vix ipse lacrimās continuēbit; namque in miserōs ac supplicīs semper misericors et mānsuētus erat.


Multōs diēs puerī miseram apud Crassum agēbant vitam. Omnia verēbantur. Quid dē sē fieret, ignōrābant. Abditī 15 in tabernāculō crūdēlia fāta suōrum miserābantur. Fātum suum sēcum querēbantur. § 64


Saepe per hiemem parva Velaeda flēbat et misera mātrem quaerēbat. Puer autem eam cōnsōlābatur animumque verbis

caedere cut
confirmare comfort
miserari bemoan
occisi the killed
cōnfirmābat. Timōrem mittere ac bene spērāre iubet, illud saepe dictāns, quod elegantius posteā Vergilius: §§ 154, 222
"Forsan et haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit."


Extrēmā aestāte, dispersīs ac fērē superātīs Belgis, Caesar Públim Crassum cum ūnā legiōne misit ad Venetōs, Venel-lōs, Osismōs, Esubiōs, Aulercōs, quae sunt maritimae civi-tātēs Ōceanumque attingunt. His omnibus civitātibus in dicīōnem postestātemque populi Rōmānī redēctīs, obsidi-bus datis et pāce factā, in Andēs legiōnem in hiberna dēdūxit. Tum vērō faciendum nōn existimābat, utī Velāedam semper

forsan perhaps idōneus suitable mittere let go ōlim one day
iuvat delights meminisse recall sistere halt solvere release
in castris aut in itinere tenēret, et quod cōnstābat paucis mēnsibus patrem M. Crassum esse Lūcam ad Caesarem ventūrum, eō Suēbōs obsidēs cum Caesare mittit. § 61 b

Ibi prīnum vidērunt concursum et divitiās Rōmānōrum. Eō enim Cn. Pompeius et M. Licinius Crassus vēnērunt. § 62 g 15
Eō alii summī rei publicae virī multi et nonnullae mātrōnae Rōmānae convēnērunt ad Caesarem grātulātum, quod tantās rēs armīs gessisset. Ibi inter Caesariānōs convēnit Pompeium et Crassum proximō annō cōnsulātum esse petitūrōs ac per eōrum auctōritātem alterum quīnquennium Caesarem Galliam prōvinciam obtentūrum. Cf. § 67

Āctō conciliō Suēbī obsidēs magnum in spem veniēbant clārissimae pulcherrimaeque urbis videndae. Libenter eō proficiscuntur. Sed paucis diēbus, quibus in M. Crassi domum perventum est, patriās silvās désiderābant. § 62 g 15

Bienniō post Velaeda flāvō capillō, oculis caeruleis, fōrmā pulcherrimā quintum decimum iam annum agēns omnibus admirātiōni fuit. Quam L. Paullus iunior, dē quō supra dictum est, apud Crassum vidēns adāmavit atque in mātrīmōnium dūcere volēbat. Petenti autem ita respōnsum est: Suēbam virginem Rōmānō numquam nūbere posse. § 97

Eōdem annō P. Crassus ex Galliā ā patre revocātus Rōmam vēnit. Quem obsidēs libentissimē excipiunt, quod antea prō

aliment = nourishment, feeding  tangent = touching  § 219, 3
concourse = gathering  contingent = touching
efficient = bringing about  tutor = protector, guardian
omnibus admirātiōni (for admiration to all) the admiration of all
ad-amāre take a liking to  nūbere wear veil, marry
āctus over flāvō (See p. 30) patrius native virgō girl
tūtōre habuerant. Iterum cum eō ire volunt. Ille autem cum patre ad Parthōs profectūrūs sēcum dūcere nōn potest. Ea spē dēiectī rogant, sē ad exercitum remittat. Itaque eōs Publius cūstōdiendōs trādit amīcō Q. Cicerōnī, qui 5 legātus in Galliā militābat; illī cum legiōnibus tribus ex Italīa prōfiscīsentibus ad exercitum perveniunt. §§ 96, 102

Dum iuvenēs Rōmae apud M. Crassum habitant, quàdrienniō intermissō omni Galliā pācātā, Caesar nāvibus Britanniam bis adierat et primum ponte factō exercitum Rōmānum trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam trādūxerat.

Hoc annō complūrēs Galliae civitātēs ā populō Rōmānō dēscere et contra Caesarem consūrāre coepēre ac Trēveri finitimōs Germānōs sollicitābant. His autem ā Labiēnō pulsīs, Suēbī, qui auxiliō veniēbant domum sēsē recēpere. 15 Cum hīs quidam Trēverōrum ex civitāte excessērunt, et, quod cōnstäbat iterum Caesarem exercitum Rhēnum trāducērunt, Arminius quendam Gallum profugum mittit, quī patrī Nasuae dēnūntiāret: Sēsē iam vivere; obsidis locō in exercitū Caesaris tenēri itemque régis Ariovistī filiam. Mōnēre, nē Suēbī proelium umquam cum Rōmānis committerent, nisi in locum inīquum aut in silvās induī possent.

Ponte factō atque exercitū trāductō fit ab Ubiis certior Caesar Suebōs ad extrēmōs suōs finis sē recēpisse atque ibi in silvās adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre. Ita inopiam frūmentī veritus, quod hominēs Germānī minimē agrī cultūræ studēbant, cōnstituit nōn prōgredi longius. Sed

excessive = going out or beyond  
iniquity = unfairness  
metus fear, dread, anxiety § 107  

prefect = one put in charge  
survive = live over or through  
veritus (because he) feared
nē omnīnō metum reditūs sui barbarīs tolleret, reductō exercitū partem ultimam pontis in longitudīnem pedum du-
centōrum rescindit praesidiōmque cohortium duodecim pontis
tuendi causā pōnit. Ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta in-
ciperent, ad bellum Ambīriōgis principis Eburōnum profectus 5
est; quī cōpiās suās nōn condūxīt sed missīs per agrōs nūntiūs
sibi quemque cōnsulere iussit. Quōrum magna pars in
Arduennam silvam profūgit.

Tum cōpiās suīs in trīs partīs distribūtīs impedimenta
omnium legiōnum Aduātucam contulit. Id castelli nōmen 10
est. Hoc fere est in mediīs Eburōnum finibus. Praesidiō
impedimentis legiōnem quārtam decimam reliquit. Ei legi-
ōnī castrisque Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praefiicit ducentōsque
equitēs eī attribuit. §§ 100 e, 220, 12

Partitō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus ad 15
Ōceanum versus proficīscī iubet; C. Trebōnium cum pari
legiōnōm numerō ad agrum Eburōnum dēpopulandum mittit;
ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flūmen Scaldem extremāsque
Arduennae silvae partīs ire cōnstituit. Discēdēns post
diem septimam sēsē reversūrum cōnfirmat. § 119 b 20

Dimittīt ad finitīmās civitātēs nūntiōs Caesar. Omnīs
ēvocat spē praedae ad diripiendōs Eburōnēs, ut potius īn
silvis Gallōrum vita quam legiōnārius miles periclitētur.
Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit. §§ 40, 154

Diēs iam appetēbat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad im- 25
pedimenta legiōnemque revertī cōnstituerat. Trāns Rhēnum

famous = talked of, reported disparity = inequality
ap-petere be at hand, seek for periclitāri be risked § 181 b
diripere rob pecus cattle

15 Cicerō omnīs superiōrus diēs militēs in castris continuerat ac nē calōnem quidem ēgredi passus erat. Septimō diē diffidēns dē numerō diērum Caesarem fidem servātūrum, quod nūlla dē reditū eius fāma afferēbātur, nūllum cāsum exspectāns, quinque cohortēs frumentātum in proximās sege-tēs mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus omnīnō collis intererat. Magna praetereā multitudō calōnum, magna vis iūmentōrum sequitur. Arminius et Velaeda datā facultāte ex castris ēgrediendi longē sequuntur. §§ 149 b, g, 221 b

Hōc ipsō tempore Germānī equitēs interveniunt prōtīnus-que ab decumānā portā in castra irrumpere cōnantur, nec

ap-propinquāre come close to sectā-minēi you are seeking
aegrē hardly calō camp servant seges grainfield
ir-rumpere break into § 220, 7 vis drove
prōtīnus straight on, straightway üsque eō so far (that)
The Sugambrians Attack Cicero


Germānī dēspērātā expugnātiōne castrōrum, quod militēs 20 Rōmānōs iam cōnstitisse in mūnitiōnibus vidēbant, sēsē

indelible = not to be destroyed
dif-fident = dis-trustful
casually = accidentally
erratic = likely to wander
abdere hide  ad-itus ap-proach
cōnspicāti having spied § 100
ē-ripere(ī) snatch out, rescue
ex-audīre over-hear, hear

novelty = newness, strangeness
relent = slow up, slacken
pronunciation = speaking out
intrepid = unfearing, fearless

in-columnis un-harmed, safe
in-opināns un-suspecting
praecurrere run ahead § 220
sign-a (military) standard-s
recipere coeperunt. Quōs Arminius ē latebris ēgressus
adiit hortātusque est utī datā facultāte rēgis Ariovistī filiam
ē manibus Rōmānōrum ēripērent. Eā rē ēmptrātā, Armi-
nius et Valaedā amicē ā Sugambris susceptī cum eis trāns
Rhēnum in Germāniam sēsē recēpērunt. Paucīs post diē-
bus cum equitātū Sugambrōrum iūvenēs in Suēbōrum finīs
ad suōs pervēnērunt.

Biennīō post Ariovistus, quem ā Caesare superātum suprā
dēmonstrāvimus, filiam Velaedam Arminiō in mātrimōnium
dedit. Germāni autem nōmen Caesaris et opēs Rōmānōrum
ita verēbantur, utī satis habērent patriās silvās ā populō
Rōmānō dēfendere atque annīs quadrīgentīs vix Rhēnum
trānsīre audērent.

credence = believing, trust  latent = hiding, lurking

cuneiform = wedge-shaped  opulent = having resources

hostile = inimical, of enemy  susceptible = capable of taking
APPENDIX

SOUNDS

21. Latin letters are always sounded as indicated below by the English words printed under them.¹

VOWELS

a    ä    e    ê    i    ï
pars (side) pår (equal) vel (or) pês (foot) sit (be) sic (so)
parse   par    well    pace    sit    seek
o    ō    u    ū    y    ų
cor (heart) nôn (not) vul'-tû (face) Pyr'-rhô ²  Cy'-rô ²
core   known     wool'too     peer'roe    key'roe

DIPHTHONGS

ae    au    ei    eu    oe    ui
aes (money) laus (praise) hei (alas) seu (or) coe'-pit    hui (hol')
ice     louse    hey    say'oo    coy'pit    whee

CONSONANTS

22. Double consonants are sounded separately

buc'-cam (mouth) ad'-dû (add) il'-li (him) mis'-sî (sent)
book'calm       odd'doe    ill'Lee    miss'ee

dû'-cam (lead) dë'-dô (give up) vê-lis (sails) mî'-sî (I sent)
do'calm         day'doe     way'lease    me'see

23. The following require special attention

bs and bt like ps and pt ob'-stô (block) ob-ten'-tô (held)
ope'stow       ope ten'toe

c and g always hard cin'-get (gird) con'-dô (build)
king'get        cone'doe

¹ Words illustrating the sounds of short a and short o should be uttered quickly.
² Pronounce peer and key with the lips rounded as for ū.
Latin Sounds

i-consonant ¹ or j  
iū'-ra or jū'-ra ²  
you’rah  
ma’-ior or ma’-jor ²  
ma’yore

n before c or qu as ng  
cin-get (gird)  
king’get  
in-quit (says)  
ing’quit

s always as in  
rēs (thing)  
race  
trēs (three)  
trace

si and ti always as in  
vi-si-ō (sight)  
we’see oh  
nā-ti-ō-nī (tribe)  
knotty oh knee

tu always as in  
vir-tū-tī (valor)  
we’re too’tea  
för-tū-nae (luck)  
fore too’nigh

u (never as in union)  
ū-nō (one)  
oo’no  
o-cu-lis (by eyes)  
oh’coo lease

u in qu-, -ngu--; sometimes in sua- and suē- as w  
in-quit (says)  
ing’quit  
suē-tae (used)  
sway’tie

v always as w  
vī-tae (of life)  
we’tie  
vel-let (would)  
well’let

x always as ks or cs  
sa-xō (written for sac-sō, with rock)  
sock’so

ch, ph, th practically ³  
pul-chrō (pretty)  
pull’crow  
the-ā-trō (theatre)  
tay ah’trow

24. Final -e is silent in English words of more than one syllable. There are no silent letters in Latin. It is not easy for beginners to get the correct pronunciation of the Latin short final -e. This will become much easier, if one forms the habit of pronouncing all Latin words with the tip of the tongue well down behind the lower front teeth. The tongue may be bent upward somewhat back of the tip, when necessary.

¹ The i is a consonant (sounded as y in yet) before a vowel at the beginning of a word or root syllable, as in Itūlia (Julia), īūra (rights), and inīūria (wrong), or between two vowels within a word, as in maiūr (greater).

² In some works these words are written Jūlia, īūra, inīūria, and major.

³ Strictly as in blockhouse, uphold, and knothole.
25. It will be very helpful to pronounce the following words several times, then repeat them omitting the final -t, taking pains to keep the quality of the vowel unchanged.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>dē'-det</th>
<th>vel'-let</th>
<th>cin'-get</th>
<th>es'-set</th>
<th>a'-get</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>day'debt</td>
<td>well'let</td>
<td>king'get</td>
<td>ess'set</td>
<td>ah'get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-de</td>
<td>vel-le</td>
<td>cin-ge</td>
<td>es-se</td>
<td>a-ge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sé-de</td>
<td>mit-te</td>
<td>nōn-ne</td>
<td>ca-pe</td>
<td>e-me</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26. We are utterly indifferent about the pronunciation of vowels before final -r in English words. Constant care must be exercised to sound all unstressed Latin vowels distinctly.

---

To Be Avoided (as pronounced in English)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>altar</th>
<th>vin'-car (be won)</th>
<th>ca'-pi-ar (be taken)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alter</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>wing'car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaffir</td>
<td>fir</td>
<td>ca'-pi-er 1 (be taken)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labor</td>
<td>for</td>
<td>copy ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulphur</td>
<td>fur</td>
<td>nūn'-ti-er (be reported)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zephyr</td>
<td>myrrh</td>
<td>fear'my</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pyr'-rhō (to Pyrrhus)</th>
<th>zep'-hy-rō 2 (west wind)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>peer'roei</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. — Be careful always to pronounce -er like the English word *ere* (before) in *ergā* (toward), *tergum* (back), *alter* (the other), *inter* (between), *iter* (journey), *ter* (thrice), *per* (through), etc.

1 An older form of the infinitive, *capit*.
2 To pronounce the Latin *y*, the lips should be rounded as for *ū*. The Latin *r* is made farther back in the mouth than the English *r*.
27. Diphthongs are always long and do not have to be marked. The quantity of vowels must be learned in order to pronounce each syllable correctly. § 21

28. Vowels are always long in certain combinations and nearly always long in certain positions.

(a) A vowel is lengthened before nf, ns, nx, nct.\(^1\)
Final u is always long.
Final o is long except in ego, duo, modo (only), cito.
Final i is long except in mihi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, nisi, quasi.\(^2\)

(b) A vowel is usually shortened before h, nd, nt, or another vowel.

A vowel is shortened before final m and t, and before final l and r, except in a few monosyllables, as pär, söl.

\[
\text{in} + \text{fāns} \quad \text{cingere} \quad \text{prō} + \text{habē} \quad \text{habeō} \quad \text{agāmus} \quad \text{vocēre}
\]
\[
\text{infāns} \quad \text{cānxi} \quad \text{prohibē} \quad \text{habētur} \quad \text{agam} \quad \text{vocer}
\]
\[
\text{in} + \text{stō} \quad \text{cānectus} \quad \text{habendī} \quad \text{habet} \quad \text{animālis} \quad \text{pār}
\]
\[
\text{instō} \quad \text{cānectū} \quad \text{habet} \quad \text{habeam} \quad \text{animal} \quad \text{paris}
\]

The length or quantity of final a and e, and of all the vowels in many positions and various root syllables will be easily mastered with the vocabularies.

SYLLABLES

29. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. Lone consonants go with the vowels that follow them; as, cae-di-tur.

\(^1\) See Latin Grammar of Hale and Buck.
\(^2\) Sometimes used as long in verse.
30. Where there are two consonants together, the first regularly goes with the preceding, the second with the following vowel.

\[
\begin{array}{llll}
\text{parte} & \text{illud} & \text{contentō} & \text{saxō} \\
\text{par-te} & \text{il-lud} & \text{con-ten-tō} & \text{sa-c-sō} \\
\end{array}
\]

But if the last of the two consonants is \( l \) or \( r \), they combine with the vowel that follows; \( h \) is not counted.

\[
\begin{array}{llll}
\text{sacrō} & \text{du-plicēs} & \text{tenebrae} & \text{pulchrō} \\
\text{sa-crō} & \text{du-pli-cēs} & \text{te-ne-brae} & \text{pul-chrō} \\
\end{array}
\]

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

31. The quantity or length of syllables must be learned in order to know where to accent words.

As would be expected, syllables containing long vowels or diphthongs are long, but those containing short vowels are not all short.

32. Short vowels followed by no consonants make short syllables; as, \( ea, e-a \); \( duo, du-o \); \( tua, tu-a \); \( mihi, mi-hi \).

Short vowels followed by lone consonants make short syllables: \( erat, e-rat \); \( vocat, vo-cat \); \( legit, le-git \).

But short vowels followed by \( x \) or \( z \) or two consonants that are separately uttered make long syllables.

\[
\begin{array}{llll}
\text{tentant} & \text{contendēbant} & \text{saxis} & \text{mittunt} \\
\text{ten-tant} & \text{con-ten-dē-bant} & \text{sa-c-sis} & \text{mit-tunt} \\
\end{array}
\]

Latin words are strung together in reading or speech.

Furit aestus harēnīs.

Fu-ri-taes-tu-s’a-rē-nīs.

1 The letter \( x \) is thus divided into \( cs \) in speech but not in writing or print.
One of the consonants may begin the next word. All the syllables except -ci-bu- are long in the following line.

Ad quem tum Iūnō supplex ħīs vōcibus úsa est.
Ad-que-m-tum-Iū-nō-sup-plec-s'is-vō-ci-bu-sū-sa'st.

33. A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel followed by no consonant or a lone consonant (except x or z).

34. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong, or a short vowel followed by x or z or any two consonants (the latter one of which is not l or r).

If the last of two consonants with a short vowel is l or r, the syllable may be used either as long or short in verse. Such syllables are called common.

35. An occasional shortened form has the accent on the ultima or last syllable, or on a short penult.

ē-dūc’ (for ē-dū’-ce); cōn-si’-lī (for cōn-si’-li-lī)

36. Words of two syllables are accented on the first.

Words of three or more syllables are accented on the penult (next-to-last), if it is a long syllable; if not, on the antepenult (syllable before-the-penult).

vo’-cat, vo-cā’-tur, ma-gis’-ter, Iū’-li-us, dis-ci’-pu-lus, vō’-cem, vo-cē’-mus, te’-ne-brae.

SUMMARY OF CASE ENDINGS

37. Nearly all pupils summarize facts in their own way and for the convenience of their own habits of study and remembering. The following general view of all the forms of nouns (and adjectives) is given here to prevent their
jumping at conclusions that are destined to be shattered as work proceeds, and the getting of impressions that it is so wearisome to root out and unlearn later.

It is not to be expected that all these important summaries and working principles will be learned at once, but rather that they will be read and re-read till a correct general idea of them has been gained and the pupil knows exactly where to find the help he needs. They are intended to serve as a guide in all future work and to be referred to again and again as the reading of Latin continues till they are finally mastered.

What Are Endings and What Are Not Endings

38. An ending is an element annexed to the end of a base or stem to show its relation to other words. What the endings of Latin nouns originally were does not particularly concern us here. They now appear as -s, -m, -rum, -bus, or a vowel; of which -rum is always genitive plural and -bus is always dative, ablative, or locative plural. But so many changes and contractions have taken place that it is now customary to speak of them as including at least one vowel.

39. A complete list of the endings of Latin nouns and adjectives is as follows:

-a, -ā, -e, -ē, -ae, -ēī (ēī-), -ī, -īa, -ō, -ū, -ua;
-am, -em, -im, -um, -ārum, -ērum, -ium, -ōrum, -uum;
-s, -ās, -ēs, -is, -is, -ōs, -us, -ūs (-ius, -ius) ;
-ābus, -ēbus, -ibus, -ōbus (-ubus).

1 Endings in parentheses are found in but few words.
40. The following adjectives have -ius (-ius) instead of -i and -ae in the Genitive singular and -i (-i) instead of -ō and -ae in the Dative singular.

Some of them have -d, -id, -od, or -ud (for -e or -um) in the neuter singular and -e (for -us) in the masculine.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. F. N.</th>
<th>M. F. N.</th>
<th>M. F. N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ūnus, ūna, ūnum one, only</td>
<td>ūnius</td>
<td>ūnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sōlus, sōla, sōlum alone</td>
<td>sōlius</td>
<td>sōlī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōtus, tōta, tōtum whole</td>
<td>tōtius</td>
<td>tōtī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alter, -ra, -rum the other</td>
<td>alterius</td>
<td>alterī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alius, alia, aliud other</td>
<td>alterius</td>
<td>alī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neuter, -tra, -trum neither</td>
<td>neutrius</td>
<td>neutrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūllus, ūlla, ūllum any</td>
<td>ūllius</td>
<td>ūllī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūllus, -lla, -llum none</td>
<td>nūlius</td>
<td>nūllī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qui, quae, quod that</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquī, -qua, -quod some</td>
<td>alicuius</td>
<td>alicui</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Mention is here made of these few irregular words because aside from them and their compounds, no nouns or adjectives have any endings not found in the list in § 39. In all other native Latin nouns and adjectives, any form not having one of the endings of this list has no case ending.

1 Quis, quid is not an adjective. It is the interrogative pronoun.
41. Forms with no case ending occur only in the singular, and in the nominative and vocative of masculines and feminines and in the nominative accusative and vocative of neuters. Such are the forms below. Figures are used to indicate the declension.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom. or Voc. Sing.</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Related Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 ager field, territory</td>
<td>agr-</td>
<td>agriculture, agrarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 liber scroll, book</td>
<td>libr-</td>
<td>librarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 puer boy, hand, slave</td>
<td>puer- § 76</td>
<td>puerile (boyish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pater father § 82</td>
<td>patr- § 78 a</td>
<td>paternal, patrimony</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 māter mother</td>
<td>mātr-</td>
<td>maternal, matrimony</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sōl sun</td>
<td>sōl-</td>
<td>solstice, solar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 lūmen¹ light § 78 b</td>
<td>lūmin-</td>
<td>luminous, illuminate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 nōmen¹ name</td>
<td>nōmin-</td>
<td>nominate, nominal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 mel¹ honey</td>
<td>mell-</td>
<td>mellifluous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 vēr¹ springtime</td>
<td>vēr-</td>
<td>vernal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 aequor¹ level expanse</td>
<td>aequor-</td>
<td>equal, equity, iniquity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

42. But the most deceiving of all and most puzzling to the uninitiated are those Third Declension Nouns that

¹ Nom., Acc., or Voc.
appear at first to have the case endings -s, -us, -ús, -òs, -ás, -ö, etc., when they really have no case endings at all.

1. Because the final s of stems remains where there is no ending and becomes -r- between two vowels wherever endings are annexed, as in mòs, habit, mòrës,1 habits, character.

2. Because the final n of stems is lost after -ö-, if there is no ending, as in nàtiò, tribe, nàtiònës, tribes, breeds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative, Gender and Meaning</th>
<th>Earlier Stem</th>
<th>Present Base</th>
<th>Related Words in English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>genus n. kin, kind § 82 d</td>
<td>genes-</td>
<td>gener-</td>
<td>gender, kin, general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tempus n. season, time</td>
<td>tempes-</td>
<td>tempor-</td>
<td>tempest, temporary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vulnus n. wound § 78 b</td>
<td>vulnes-</td>
<td>vulner-</td>
<td>invulnerable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vetus m. f. n. old § 86</td>
<td>vetes-</td>
<td>veter-</td>
<td>veteran, inveterate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rús n. field, country</td>
<td>rús-</td>
<td>rür-</td>
<td>rustic, rural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iús n. right, law § 78 b</td>
<td>iús-</td>
<td>iür-</td>
<td>just, injury, jury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maius n. larger</td>
<td>maiòs-</td>
<td>maiör-</td>
<td>majority</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative, Gender and Meaning</th>
<th>Earlier Stem</th>
<th>Present Base</th>
<th>English Cognates and Derivatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tellús f. earth, soil</td>
<td>tellús-</td>
<td>tellûr- § 82</td>
<td>telluride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulvis m. dust</td>
<td>pulves-</td>
<td>pulver-</td>
<td>pulverize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mòs m. custom, way</td>
<td>mòs-</td>
<td>mör-</td>
<td>immoral, moralist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flòs m. blossom</td>
<td>flòs-</td>
<td>flòr-</td>
<td>florist, flourish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ördö m. order, rank</td>
<td>*ördon-</td>
<td>ördin-</td>
<td>ordinal, ordinary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>origò f. beginning</td>
<td>*origon-</td>
<td>origin-</td>
<td>orient, original</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regiò f. line, side</td>
<td>regiön-</td>
<td>regiön-</td>
<td>reach, regional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ratiò f. method, plan</td>
<td>ratiön-</td>
<td>ratiön-</td>
<td>reason, rational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statiò f. stop, post</td>
<td>statiön-</td>
<td>statiön-</td>
<td>stationary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>látitudö f. breadth</td>
<td>*látitudon-</td>
<td>látitudìn-</td>
<td>latitudinal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Cf. was and were; is, are; us, our (once oure).

* Possible forms in very early Latin.
43. Almost equally annoying are those in which -t- or -d- have disappeared before the ending -s:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formation</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>From the Same Root</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ped-s</td>
<td>pēs m. foot §§ 78, 82</td>
<td>ped-</td>
<td>pedal, impede</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pedet-s</td>
<td>pedes m. foot-soldier</td>
<td>pedit-</td>
<td>pedestrian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equet-s</td>
<td>eques m. horseman</td>
<td>equit-</td>
<td>equestrian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lapid-s</td>
<td>lapis m. small stone</td>
<td>lapid-</td>
<td>lapidary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanguin-s</td>
<td>sanguis m. blood</td>
<td>sanguin-</td>
<td>sanguinary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custód-s</td>
<td>custōs m. keeper</td>
<td>custōd-</td>
<td>custody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aequitát-s</td>
<td>aequitās f. fairness</td>
<td>aequitāt-</td>
<td>equity, iniquity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dignitát-s</td>
<td>dignitās f. office</td>
<td>dignitāt-</td>
<td>dignity, deign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiët-s</td>
<td>quiēs f. rest, peace</td>
<td>quiët-</td>
<td>inquietude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit-s</td>
<td>lis f. dispute</td>
<td>lit-</td>
<td>litigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palūd-s</td>
<td>palūs f. marsh</td>
<td>palūd-</td>
<td>paludal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salūt-s</td>
<td>salūs f. welfare</td>
<td>salūt-</td>
<td>salutation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servitūt-s</td>
<td>servitūs f. slavery</td>
<td>servitūt-</td>
<td>service, servile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtūt-s</td>
<td>virtūs f. manly quality</td>
<td>virtūt-</td>
<td>virtual, virtue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fraud-s</td>
<td>fraus f. trick</td>
<td>fraud-</td>
<td>fraudulent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

44. In the list below, eight nouns have the case ending -s, seven have no ending, and no two others have the same ending.

mās male
rēs thing
finis limit
lis quarrel
tribus with three
fraus deceit
puerōs boys
tellūs ground

brevitās shortness
pēs foot
pulvis powder
miles soldier
statiō station
senātus senate
colōs tint, hue
iuventūs youth-

filiās daughters
Cerēs Ceres
lapis stone
armis with arms
filiō to a son
genus class
custōs guard
tribūs tribes
45. The following list shows how easy it is to know the endings by comparing two different forms of the same noun so as to get the base. Cf. §§ 42, 43.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>más</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>brevitās</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>filiās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marēs</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>brevitāte</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>filiābus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>pēs</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>Cerēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rē</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>pedibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>Cererī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finis</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>pulvis</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>lapis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finium</td>
<td>-ium</td>
<td>pulverem</td>
<td>-em</td>
<td>lapidis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>līs</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>mīles</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>armīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>līte</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>mīlitum</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>armōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>statīō</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>filiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tria</td>
<td>-ia</td>
<td>statīōnem</td>
<td>-em</td>
<td>filīis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fraus</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>senātus</td>
<td>-us</td>
<td>genus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fraudis</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>senātūs</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>genera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerōs</td>
<td>-ōs</td>
<td>colōs</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>cūstōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puer</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>colōre</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>cūstōdum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tellūs</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>iuventūs</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>tribūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tellūre</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>iuventūtī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>tribuum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
46. Just as ag-, leg-, and reg- become ac-, lec-, and rec-
before t in
agent (one who acts) legible (readable) regent (ruling)
active (quick to act) lecture (a discourse read) rector (ruler)

So in Latin g becomes c before s or t.
Note that cs is always written x.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formation</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Having the Same Root</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pāc-s</td>
<td>pāx f. agreement</td>
<td>pāc-</td>
<td>pay, pacify, peace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēg-s</td>
<td>rēx m. ruler, king</td>
<td>rēg-</td>
<td>regal, royal, reign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iūdec-s</td>
<td>iūdex m. judge</td>
<td>iūdic-</td>
<td>judicious, judicial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duc-s</td>
<td>dux m. guide, leader</td>
<td>duc-</td>
<td>duke, induce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lēg-s</td>
<td>lēx f. agreement, law</td>
<td>lēg-</td>
<td>legal, legislator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nigui-s¹</td>
<td>nīx f. snow</td>
<td>niv-</td>
<td>niveous, Nevada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nocti-s¹</td>
<td>nox f. night</td>
<td>noct-</td>
<td>nocturnal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An Observing Reader’s Habit of Thought

47. There are several things we must find out about a word, as we read, or we shall sooner or later have to stop all progress to look it up. Our first observations may not reveal what we most wish to know. But we shall soon meet the word again, if we but read on; and the comparing of the two forms will show more than the base and the two endings. Suppose, for example, we have for the first time met

in eandem partem, or maximam fidem, or finem.

Each noun appears to be an accusative singular. It is.

One reminds us of part, partial, partly, partisan, depart, impart, compartment, counterpart.

It likely means part,² side, direction, share, or division.

¹ Probable form in very early Latin. ² Cf. § 218, a, b.
Another resembles fidelity, bona fide, or the name Fido. It probably means faith, fidelity, trust, confidence, loyalty. The third calls to mind final, finish, and Finis at the end of a book.

It must mean end, limit, border, or boundary.

Yet partem, fidem, and finem might all be either of the Third or of the Fifth Declension (see table § 55); eandem, however, is an adjective and there are no adjectives of the Fifth Declension. Suppose, now, we have read on and found eiusdem, or fidē, or finīs lātōs

(1) Fidem and fidē are Fifth Declension forms, as no Third Declension forms end in -ē, except famē, by hunger. (See § 55 c, 3.) Maximam shows that fidem is feminine; besides, all Fifth Declension nouns are feminine, except diēs, day and ineridiēs, midday, south.

(2) Eiusdem immediately shows that -em is not the ending of eandem; -dem is only a particle annexed after the case ending -am, which is then written -an before d (cf. compel and condemn). The ending -ius shows eiusdem to be one of the irregular adjectives (§ 40), meaning same, also (-dem appearing as -den- in identical).

(3) Finīs must be a Third Declension form. There is no such ending as -is in the Fifth, and accusative plurals in -is all belong to the class known as Masculine and Feminine i-stems (3 i M. and F. § 55 b). The adjective lātōs shows that finīs is Mas. Acc. Pl. § 54 b.

(4) Knowing the meaning of partem and that it is Fem. Acc. Sing., we can afford to wait about the rest till we meet it again.
48. This illustrates the advantage of "making haste slowly" — of watching, waiting, and comparing, of using our brains more than our thumbs — for a little careful observation trains us to see in ten minutes what it takes an hour to look up, and if we depend upon looking up everything, the task is endless.

How to Use the Tables Below

49. To get the best results from comparing different forms of a word and take advantage of every means of discovering the necessary facts about nouns as we meet them in reading, we must gradually master the tables below, which aim to show how far each ending may be relied upon.

(1) To indicate the class to which a new noun belongs;
(2) To show its number and case at first sight, and
(3) What a given ending indicates regarding the other endings of a noun (or adjective) seen for the first time.

50. Some endings tell the whole story at a glance; as, -ae in the noun nátūrae (see Int. § 6 e), others tell a great deal, while some tell little or nothing.

51. The following observations do not apply to the irregular adjectives and pronouns in § 40 nor to nouns having mixed declensions nor to words borrowed from the Greek; as, āēr (acc. sing. āera or āerem) and aethēr (acc. aetherā), p. 18, etc., all of which fall an easy prey to one who has mastered these tables.

52. We must start aright. The first essential is to know whether the case ending is

-ās -ēs -is -īs -ō -ōs -us -ūs as in
Determining Gender by Observation

hōr-ās, rēs, fin-is, arm-īs, radi-ō, vīc-ōs, ann-us,
or -s, as in

aetā-s, pē-s, lapi-s, lī-s, pāx, cūstō-s, frau-s,
or lacking altogether, as in

mās Cerēs mōs genus rūs statiō
puer pulvis vir aequor mel lūmen

Note the following also:

fīli-a fīli-us e-i vacu-i radi-um vacu-um vacu-a
omn-ia e-ius r-eī senāt-ui omn-ium pass-uum corn-ua

53. The endings of all classes of regular nouns and adjectives are given below (§ 55) in parallel columns. It will be seen that certain endings occur only in particular declensions or in particular cases.

The Gender of Nouns and Adjectives

54. a. Annum (Ac. masculine) resembles oppidum (N. Ac. V. neuter); Victor (N. V. masculine) resembles aequor (N. Ac. V. neuter).

Except in such instances (in the singular), neuter nouns differ from masculines and feminines in the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases. Masculine nouns, however, cannot always be distinguished from feminines by their endings, e.g.

annus (m.) Cyprus (f.) hōrae (f.) incolae (m.)

but in adjectives -us is always masculine and -ae feminine.

b. Thus many endings of adjectives never fail to show the gender of the nouns they modify. See § 55 f.
## Endings of Nouns and Adjectives of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>55. a. 2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M. (F.)</strong></td>
<td><strong>F. (M.)</strong></td>
<td><strong>N.</strong></td>
<td><strong>M. or F.</strong></td>
<td><strong>N.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>S. Pl.</strong></td>
<td><strong>S. Pl.</strong></td>
<td><strong>S. Pl.</strong></td>
<td><strong>S. Pl.</strong></td>
<td><strong>S. Pl.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>N.</em> (-us) -i</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>G.</em> -i</td>
<td>-ōrum</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-ārum</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>D.</em> -ō</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ac.</em> -um</td>
<td>-ōs</td>
<td>-am</td>
<td>-ās</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>V.</em> (-ē)</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ab.</em> -ō</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>L.</em> -i</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 -ibus, m. and n., and -ābus, f., are used instead of -is in duōbus, duābus
two, ambōbus, ambābus both, and in filiābus and deābus.

c. Some endings always show the Declension. § 52

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
<th>Fifth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-a (sing.)</td>
<td>-um (N.), -ō</td>
<td>-um (G.), -s, -is, -ēs</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-iēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-am, -ā</td>
<td>-i (N. G.)</td>
<td>-(Ac.), -em, -im</td>
<td>-ui, -ū</td>
<td>-iēi, -ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ae, -ās</td>
<td>-ōrum, -ōs</td>
<td>-i (D. Ab.), -is (Ac.)</td>
<td>-ua</td>
<td>-iem, -ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ārum</td>
<td>-e (V. m.)</td>
<td>-e (N. Ac. Ab.)</td>
<td>-uum</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 -ēs and -em are preceded by -i- in all Fifth Declension forms except
rēs, rem, thing, spēs, -em, hope, fidēs, -em, faith, plēbēs, -em, plebs.
2 Except in famē, by hunger, which is of the Third Declension.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st or 2d</th>
<th>2d or 3d</th>
<th>2d or 4th</th>
<th>3d or 4th</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-is (D. Ab.)</td>
<td>-a (pl.)</td>
<td>-um (Ac.); -us</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e. Gender in Nouns (§ 54)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. (F.)</th>
<th>F. (M.)</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-i or -ūs (pl.)</td>
<td>-us, -ōs</td>
<td>-um (N.)</td>
<td>-a (pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-am, -ā, -ārum, -ās</td>
<td>-(Ac.)</td>
<td>-e (N. Ac.)</td>
<td>-ū (N. Ac.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Never neuter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-is (N.)</th>
<th>-is (Ac.)</th>
<th>-s, -em, -ēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

§ 52

f. Gender in Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Always reliable §§ 42–3, 54</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-i (pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-e (2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### All Declensions and Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>b. 3 i</th>
<th>3 i</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M. or F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
<td>M. or F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
<td>M. or F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. Pl.</td>
<td>S. Pl.</td>
<td>S. Pl.</td>
<td>S. Pl.</td>
<td>S. Pl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-is, -s -ēs</td>
<td>-e1 -ia</td>
<td>-us -ūs</td>
<td>-ū -ua</td>
<td>-ēs -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-is -ium</td>
<td>-is -ium</td>
<td>-ūs -uum</td>
<td>-ūs -uum</td>
<td>-ei4 -ērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-i -ibus</td>
<td>-i -ibus</td>
<td>-ui3 -ibus3</td>
<td>-ū -ibus</td>
<td>-ei -ēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-em5 -is</td>
<td>-e1 -ia</td>
<td>-um -ūs</td>
<td>-ū -ua</td>
<td>-em -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-is, -s -ēs</td>
<td>-e1 -ia</td>
<td>-us -ūs</td>
<td>-ū -ua</td>
<td>-ēs -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-i, -e -ibus</td>
<td>-i -ibus</td>
<td>-ū -ibus3</td>
<td>-ū -ibus</td>
<td>-ē -ēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-e, -i -ibus</td>
<td>-e, -i -ibus</td>
<td>No adjectives or locative case.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 All Present Participles; as, vacāns being empty, vidēns seeing, and a few adjectives; as, audāx bold, ingēns huge, have -s.
2 Rarely -ū. 3 -ibus in tribus tribe, and rarely in a few others.
4 Rarely -ē, -ēī after a vowel. 5 -im in a few nouns.

### d. Always Singular Always Plural

| -a (f.) ; -ā, -e, -ē, -ō, -ū | -a (n.) ; -ae (N.) ; -ī (N. V.) |
| -ae (G. D.) ; -ī (G. D. Ab.) | -ās ; -ēs (Aec.) ; -īs, -ōs § 52 |
| -ūs or -ius or -ius (G.) § 43 | -ūs (N. Ac.) ; -um (G.) ; -ium |
| —, -s, -is, -us, -ēī, -ēī | -ārum, -ērum, -ōrum, -uum |
| -um (N. Ac.) ; -am, -em, -im | -ābus, -ēbus, -ibus, -ōbus |

1 Plural in ambō both.

Note. — Do not try to apply this without first comparing two forms (§§ 42, 45).

### g. Always Nom. Always Dat. Always Voc.

| -us (Adj.) §§ 41–3 | -ui | -e (2) |
| Always Gen. | Always Acc. | Always Abl. |
| -is (n.) ; -ius | -am, -em, -im | -ā, -ē, 1 and |
| -ūs (sing.) ; -ius | -ās, -ōs, -is (3) | if used w. prep. 2 |
| -i (sing. 2)3 | if used w. prep.2 | -e or -ū (m. f.) |
| -ārum, -ōrum | —, -s, -um | -is (1, 2) ; -ō |
| -um (3) ; -ium | -ēs, -ūs §§ 42–3 | -ābus, -ēbus |
| -uum, -ērum | -a, -ia, -ua | -ibus, -ōbus |

1 Rarely used for -ēī in poetry. See also § 81 b.
2 §§ 57, 58. 3 Except nouns in -ius.
56. ENDINGS AND THEIR VALUES

Case Sing. Plur. Relations to Other Words (see Int. § 5)

1. N. (-us) -i indicates the subject of a finite verb, the predicate of a subject nominative, etc. (5 a, c.)

2. G. -i -ārum possessor, —'s, —s'; of; (son) of; (more) of; (fear) of; (be estimated) of or at (value).

3. D. -ō -īs indirect obj.; to; (give) to; (belong) to; (lacking) to; for; for (aid) to; as far as concerns.

4. Ac. -um -ōs direct obj.; subj. of Inf.; for (days, years, miles); for (most part); see also § 57.

5. V. (-e) -i direct address; O —! thou —! ye —! Never put the Vocative first in a sentence.

6. Ab. -ō -īs at, during (night); (alarmed) at, on-account-of or by; (rate, buy, or sell) at or for. by (boat), by (land), by-means-of; by, according-to (plan); (older) by (a year), § 68 b. for; for or on-account-of (courage); § 73 b. (free) from; (kept) from; (suffer) from. of, (deprive) of; (full) of; (born) of; (need) of; (make use) of; (man) of or with (good mind); (worthy) of; (glad) of; § 62 g. in; in, during, within (a day); in (wisdom, width); (kept) in; (defeat) in (war). on (a day); (feed or live) on; (lean or rely) on; (go, ride, be carried) in or on. over, (boast,) over, about, on-account-of. with; (fill) with; (mix) with; (suffer) with. than; with preps. § 58.

7. L. -i -īs at, in, on (see §§ 60, 61 c).

1 This table is to be used as a general guide (see § 230).
2 And so on following the lines across pp. 128–9, § 55 a, b.
57. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

ad in the direction of, till, for, to (border of), toward, up to, to (the presence of, when travelling is done), against (enemy), at, close by, near, next to; quantum ad as for; ad decem about ten.
ante before, ahead of. post behind, after, since.
apud before the face of, in the eyes, sight, opinion, hands, or care of; apud mē at my house; apud oppidum in sight of town.
circum around, in the vicinity of. circiter (cf. circus), about.
in 'clear' to, till, on, upon, into, or among (when distance has to be travelled); against, (feel) toward, (throw) at, (start) for;
quam in partem? in what direction? in collem up on a hill.
inter in the midst of, between, among (as compared with).
ob (obstructing the way) in face of; ob eam rem for this reason.
per through, along; per vim by force; per Alpis over the Alps.
praeter except, but, beyond; praeter castra past the camp.
propter because of; propter altitūdinem because of the height.
cis (citrā) this side of. trāns across. ultrā beyond. sub under.

58. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE

ā, ab, abs from the direction of, away from, from (the outside), by (a person); off; ā milibus passuum thousands of paces away.
ab before vowels or h; ā or ab before d, l, n, r, s; otherwise ā.
cum (in company) with; ūnā cum along with. sine without.
dē down from, from (interior or top); concerning, about; pauci dē nostrīs a few of our men; quā dē causā and for this reason.
ē, ex (before vowels or h) out of, off from, up from, out from, from (within the borders) or off (the top of), from among. § 66 c
in, in, on, upon, among (bodily if no distance is travelled).
prae (English pre- before) ahead of, in comparison with.
prō in front, behalf, or stead of, for, in proportion to; eōs prō amīcis habeō I take them for friends. sub under, below.
59. **Nouns with Prepositional Force**

causā or grātiā (placed after a Genitive) for the sake, for; frūmentī causā eunt they are going for grain; to get grain.

These illustrations of the underlying idea of the prepositions above will be better understood with use and experience.

60. Note the use of prepositions in phrases denoting places, persons, things, position, situation, or condition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to which (or to whom)</th>
<th>in which</th>
<th>from which (from whom)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(in whom)</td>
<td>(in whom)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad insulam</td>
<td>in insulam</td>
<td>in insulā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toward the island</td>
<td>to the island</td>
<td>on the island (off) from the island</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad Cyprum</td>
<td>Cyprum</td>
<td>Cyprī § 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toward or to Cyprus</td>
<td>in or on</td>
<td>off from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to Cyprus</td>
<td>Cyprus</td>
<td>Cyprus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad domum</td>
<td>in domum</td>
<td>in domō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toward the dwelling</td>
<td>to the house</td>
<td>in or at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domum (go) home</td>
<td>domī § 81</td>
<td>domō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad vicum</td>
<td>in vicum</td>
<td>in vicō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toward the village</td>
<td>to or into</td>
<td>in or at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad Athēnās</td>
<td>Athēnās</td>
<td>Athēnis § 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to a point near Athens</td>
<td>to Athens</td>
<td>at Athens</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
61. In case of proper names of towns, small islands, and peninsulas, domus (home) and rūs (the country), the following special rules must be observed.

a. The accusative with ad denotes direction in which.

b. The accusative denotes place to which, or destination.

c. The locative denotes place in which.

d. The ablative denotes place from which.

e. The ablative with ā or ab denotes direction from which.

f. In and ē or ex are never used with these nouns.

62. The phrases, with the boys, with the horses, and with the dog, are said to denote association or accompaniment, because the boy, the horses, and the dog may be regarded as companions or associates.

The phrases, with a sword, with books, and with water, are said to denote instrument or means of action.

a. (Persons or animals)  
   Association
   Cum puerīs pugnat. § 58  He fights with the boys.

b. (Inanimate things)  
   Instrument or Means
   Gladiō pugnat. § 56, 6  He fights with a sword.

Cum equō missus est.  Libris plēnum est. § 56, 6  He was sent with the horse. It is filled with books.
c. But persons and animals are often treated as things, and inanimate things are regarded as companions.

Ibi cum gladiō stetit. Equīs arant. § 56, 6
Here he stood with a sword. They plow with horses.
Cum librīs missus est. Nāvis puerīs plēna est.
He was sent with books. The boat is full of boys.
Cum litterīs vēnit. Quid puerō fiet? § 56, 6
He came with a letter. What will be done with the boy?

d. Active Agents

Ā Iūliō missus est. Sagittā est vulnerātus.
He was sent by Julius. He was wounded by an arrow.
Ā cane morsus est. Fulmine ictus est.
He was bitten by a dog. He was struck by lightning.

e. But persons and animals may be treated as things.

Per explōrātōrem cognitum est. Equīs ductus est.
Was learned through a scout. It was drawn by horses.

f. Castrīs sē tenet keeps himself in camp (means of shelter).
Barbarōs proelīō superant they defeat barbarians in battle.
Puerum pugnā superat defeats the boy in a fight or by fighting.

g. The Ablative is used to describe a person or thing.

Magnā est grātiā. § 56, 6 Puer oculīs caeruleīs.
He is a person of great favor. A boy with blue eyes.
Mōns magnā altitūdine a mountain of great height. § 56, 6

63. a. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

Sūos ā proelīō continet he keeps his (men) from battle.
Suis finibus eōs prohibent they keep them from their borders.
Mūrum barbarīs nūdant they clear the wall of barbarians.
b. The Ablative case is used to express separation from abstract things, the Ablative with a or ab from concrete things (but this varies with the verb used).

Hoc eōs cūrā liberat this relieves (frees) them of (f om) anxiety. Hostīs (pl.) ab oppidō prohibē keep the enemy from the town.

64. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

tot (indecl.) so-many totidem just as many, the same number
quot (indecl.) as-many, as si quot if several quot? how many?
quot equī sunt? how many horses are there? multi sunt many

tot . . . quot as-many . . . as, so-many . . . as
aliquot (indecl.) some number, several. See §§ 70, 91–2, 150
tam multi, tam multōrum, m. so many (men, persons, etc.)
quam multi, quam multōrum, m. as many (persons)1 as quota
quam multi? quam multōrum? m. how many persons?

quam multi equī sunt? how many horses are there?
multi, multōrum, m. many (men,1 etc.) multiply
permulti, permultōrum, m. very-many multitude
plürimi, plürimōrum, m. very-many (persons), most (men) plural
quam plürimōs sēcum dūcit takes as many as he can with him
plērique, plērōrumque, m. most (men), the majority
pauci, paucōrum, m. a few, some-few, few (men) paucity
perpauci, perpaucōrum, m. very few
nūlli, nūllōrum, m. no (men), none nullify, null
nōnnūlli, nōnnullōrum, m. not-a-few, some (persons) annul
boni, bonōrum, m. the good, good (men) bonny, bounty
mali, malōrum, m. the bad, bad (men) malefactor
nostri, nostrōrum, m. our (men), our (soldiers), ours1
sui, suōrum, m. his or her (own people), its (own), their (own)1
mei, meōrum, m. my (people, friends), my (family)1 109 c, 118 b

1 Not only persons or men but also boys, horses, etc.
65. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS (Masculine)

alius other, else; pl. others
alius one . . . alius another
alii some . . . alii others
alter the one . . alter the other
alteri the ones; alteri the others
nēmō (nē + homō) no man
quis (any) one, one, (some) one
-que each, every §§ 108 b, 111
quisque every one, each one
quis? what one? who? § 114
sōlus (he) alone, (I) alone, etc.
sōli (they) alone, (we) alone
tōtus whole, (he) all § 118 b
tōtus in studiis est he is all
taken-up with-studies
ullus any (one), any (body)
nullus not one, no one
ōnus one, the only one
ūnī the only ones §§ 40, 120
uter? which (one of the two)?
uterque either (one), both
neuter neither (one of the two)

Some praise one, others (praise) another.
( ) Alii alium laudant.

One flees in one direction, another (flees) in another (direction)
( ) Alius in aliam partem fugit

66. a. CONNECTING WORDS

Between Parts of Sentences
ac or atque and et . . . et
-que or et and both . . and
nec or neque and not, nor
vel, aut, or sīve (seu) or
nec neither . . . nec nor
vel either . . . vel or
sōlum (modo) only, just
nōn sōlum (modo) not only . . . sed etiam but also

Between Sentences
ita or sīc so, in such a manner
item in the same way, likewise
itaque or igitur therefore
tum or igitur then
tum dēmum then at last, finally
dēnique finally, in the end
autem (never stands first) however, but, besides
nam, enim, namque for (indeed)
b. If the subject is plural, the verb must be plural; if the subject is singular, the verb must be singular.

Castra sunt apud Arpīnum the camp is near Arpinum § 77 b
Uterque venit both are coming. Pauci eunt few are going
Aut Titus aut Galba venit either Titus or Galba is coming § 108 b

c. The preposition ē or ex (sometimes de) is used when one or more are chosen from the number. See also § 58.)

ūnus ē puerīs or ūna ex filiābus or ūnum ex oppidīs
ūnus puerōrum ūna filiārum ūnum oppidōrum
one of the boys one of the daughters one of the towns

67. Numeral adverbs and neuter singular nouns of time.

semel once; semel atque iterum again and again simple
bis twice; ter three times; quater four times p. 29 biscuit
biduum, biduī n. a period of two days, two days biweekly
biennium, (biennī) biennī n. (period of) two years biennial
triduum, triduī n. three days Cf. p. 31, l. 26 triple, triangle
triennium, (triennī) triennī n. three years triennial
quadriduum, quadriduī n. four days quadruple
quadriennium, (quadriennī) quadriennī n. four years
spatium, (spatī) spatī n. space, distance, period spacious
primum (Acc.) for the first time, first; primō (Abl.) at first
Measure of Extent and Difference

68. a. The Accusative case is used to denote Extent or Measure of Time, Space, Power, Action, etc. § 74, 17

b. The Ablative is used to denote Measure of Difference.

c. The Ablative is used to denote Time when, at which, in which, or during which. § 74, 18

The following expressions must be carefully studied.

a. How long? b. How much earlier or later? etc (§ 5 j). c. When or Within what time?

annum
a year, for a year
annō ante § 74, 19 a year before,
one year before,
earlyer by a year

biennium
(for) two years

sex annōs
(for) six years

nihil potest
is not able at all

duo milia passuum
(for) two miles

sex annōs Cf. p. 29
seven years before
six years later

annō ante § 74, 19
priōre annō or
superiōre annō

sex post annis
proximō annō during

sex post annis

aū milibus passuum

illō die on that day

in six years
the nearest year,
next year, last year

69. LIST OF COMMON ADVERBS

tam so, so very; eum nōn tam amō quam timeō I do not love him as much as I fear him.

quam as, than; quam diū as long as; quam? how? quantity

quam diū? how long? quam optimē potest as best he can

ante, anteā previously, before, ago antique, ancient

prius sooner; prius quam sooner than, before prior, priority

post, posteā afterward, later; postquam after postpone

nē (in commands or wishes) not; nē ēte don’t go none, nor

nōn (in positive denials) not; nōn it he is not going nonsense
Adverbs

quidem indeed, to be sure; nē id quidem not even this
aliter differently; aliter atque (ac) otherwise than
bene well, successfully; bene est it is well
melius better, more happily, rather well, too well
optimē best, very well; quam optimē as best (one can)
males ill, badly; Mārcō male vult wishes Mark ill
peius not so well, worse, too badly, less happily
pessimē worst; quam pessimē as badly as one can
CELERITER speedily, soon, in haste, rapidly
CELERIUS more quickly, rather quickly, too quickly
CELERRIMĒ very quickly; quam celerrimē as quickly as possible
diuū long, for a long time; diūtius longer, too long
facile easily; facilius more easily, rather easily
facillimē most easily; quam facillimē as easily as one can
lātē widely, extensively; longē lātēque far and wide
lātius more widely, rather widely, too widely
lātissimē very widely; quam lātissimē as widely as possible
longē far; by far; longius farther, too far
longissimē farthest; quam longissimē as far as possible
magis more, rather; magis arduus steeper, too steep
maximē most, very, especially; maximē arduus steepest
minus not so much, less, not; minus facile not so easily
minimē least, not at all; minimē saepe very seldom
saepe more than once, often; minus saepe less frequently
saepius over and over, again and again, oftener, too often
LATINĒ after the manner of the Latins, in Latin, in the Latin way
Graecē after the manner of the Greeks, in the Greek way, in Greek
70. The following *neuter singul"ars* are mostly adjectives used as nouns denoting *amount* and *value*. Cf. §§ 91–2.

tantum, tanti n. so much, so much value, so great an amount; quid tant"i est, quant"i lumen? what is of so much (value) as light? tantum boni so much (of) good (Gen., cf. § 72)
quantum, quanti n. as much, as much value, as great an amount, as; tantum legit, quantum lego he reads as much as I read legit quantum potest he reads as much as he can

magnum, magni n. a great amount, great value magnify maximum, maximii n. very great (amount or value) maxim

magnō opere or magnopere with great effect, greatly

tantō opere or tantopere with so great earnestness, so greatly
quantō opere? or quantopere? with how great effect? how greatly?

quantō opere Mārci interest? how much is it-the-interest of —?

parvum, parvi n. little, a small (amount), little (value)

parum (Nom. and Acc.) n. too little, little, not enough
minimum, minimi n. very little, very small amount, least value

multum, multi n. much, great deal, amount or value multiply

permultum, permulti n. very much, very great deal or value
plurimum, plurimi n. very much, most, largest value plural

paulum, pauli n. a little; paulum morae a little (of) delay

perpaulum, -i or paululum, -i n. a very little, just a bit § 56, 4
plērumque (cf. § 76), Nom. most; Acc. (for the) most (part)
nihil (or nihilum), nihilō n. nothing, no value; nihilō minus no

less, less by nothing, none-the less; nihil commōtus nothing daunted; nihil (Acc.) to no extent, not at all §§ 5 d, 74–17

satis (Nom., Acc.) n. enough, sufficient; satis bene well enough
plūs, plūris n. more, greater amount; plūs boni more (of) good § 150
minus, minōris n. less, smaller value; minus boni less (of) good
opus, operis n. work, effort, effect; need (w. Abl.) § 71 c, 78 b

bonum, boni n. benefit, good; malum, mali n. an evil, bad
71. a. **NEUTER INDEFINITE PRONOUNS**

aliud other, another, else; quid aliud? what else  §§ 108–113
alterum the other (of two); alterum the one . . . alterum the other
núllum no, not-one, none; núllum ex oppidis not one of the towns;
    núllum oppidum not-a town, no town  § 118 b
quid anything sī quid cōnsili est if there is any (of) plan
quidque everything; optimum quidque everything (that is) best
omnia, omnium n. pl. (like paria § 83 b) all (things) or everything
quid? what? Acc. to what extent? quid potest? how able is he?
quod potest, mē dēfendit defends me (to) what (extent) he can
utrum? whether? which one (of the two)? utrum whether . . . an or
utraque both things; in utraque parātus est is ready for either
néutrum neither (one of the two), neither (thing)

b. When indefinite quis, quid means any one, anything.
Quod quis nōvit dicere licet what one knows, it is right to tell.
Si quis quid audit, dīcat if one hears anything, he may say so.

c. **Opus in the meaning need** takes the Ablative.
Mihi opus est libris for me there is (I have) need of books. § 56, 6

72. Words denoting indefinite quantity are followed by
the **Genitive of the Whole Amount**.

Quid bonī el est? what (of) good is there to him?
Nōn satis est causae there is not enough (of) reason.

73. a. **The Genitive is used to denote indefinite value.**
Parvī aestimātur it is rated of little (value).
Nihilī est he is of no worth (good for nothing).  §§ 118 c
Equum parvī emit he buys the horse for-some-small (amount).

b. **The Ablative is used to denote definite value or price.**
Eum parvō (pretīō) ēmit he bought it at-a-certain small price.
c. The Genitive denotes the person or thing concerned.

Rei publicae magnopere inter-est it is greatly the interest of the commonwealth, concerns the state greatly. § 81 b

d. Inter-esse meaning have-part-in takes the Dative.

Consiliō puerōrum interest he takes-part-in the boys’ plan.

e. The Dative often denotes the person or thing concerned.

Huic ratiōni locus est there is room for this method. § 56, 3

Mihi est praesidiō is (for) a protection to me § 159 g

Castra Rōmāna.
74. No matter what the ending is, these rules never fail.

1. If a noun is the subject of a finite verb, it is nominative.

Catō vocat. Cato calls Flūmen celere est the river is swift

2. If a noun is the subject of an infinitive, it is accusative.

Catōnem vocāre audiō I hear Cato call

Flūmen celere esse sció I know the river is swift

3. The predicate of a subject nominative is nominative.

The predicate of a subject accusative is accusative.

Is Catō est it is Cato § 42, 2

Eum Catōnem esse sció I know it is Cato

A predicate noun denotes the same person or thing as the subject. The direct object is a different person or thing, unless the subject is acting upon itself. § 116 c

4. If a noun is used as the direct object, it is accusative.

Catōnem vidit he saw Cato Sē ipse culpát he blames himself

Flūmen videt he sees the river Mē accusat he accuses me

5. A predicate attached to the direct object is accusative.

Eum Catōnem dicunt they call him Cato

Eum amicum putant they think him friendly

6. If a noun is used as an indirect object, it is dative.

Catōnī librum dedit gave Cato a book

Sōl terrae lūmen dat the sun gives the earth light.

7. A noun used to call the attention of a person or address a person or thing is vocative.

Age, Catō! come, Cato! act, Cato!

8. Nouns in exclamations not addressed to any one are accusative.

Ō fortūnātam rem pūblicam! oh lucky state!

Mē miserum! poor me!
9. Any noun or pronoun used as the object of ad, ante, apud, circum, inter, ob, per, post, propter, trāns, etc., is accusative.

§ 57

Per montis over the mountains
Trāns flūmen across the river
Propter vulnus on account of a wound
Apud eum at his house, in his eyes or mind

10. Proper names of towns, small islands, and domum, home, or rūs, to the country, denoting place to which, are accusative.

§ 61

Athēnās prefectus started for Athens Domum it goes home Bibracte ire vult will go to Bibracte Rūs āgo to the country

11. Any noun or pronoun used as the object of ā, ab, abs, cum, dē, ē, ex, prō, sine, etc., is ablative.

§ 58

Abs tē by thee Mēcum with me Prō mē in my interest

12. Nouns or pronouns denoting means or instrument are ablative.

Equō it rides on a horse Gladiō pugnat fights with a sword

13. Proper names of towns, etc., denoting place from which, are ablative.

Rōmā prefectus est started from Rome §§ 62–3

14. Proper names of towns, denoting place in which, are locative.

Rōmae est is at Rome Gādibus fuit was in Gades §§ 76–9
Domī meae in my home Domī suae in his own home § 83 a

15. Nouns without prepositions denoting cause are ablative.

Puerōs diligentiā laudat praises the boys for their diligence Quā rē mē accusat? on account of what does he accuse me?
16. A noun denoting in what respect one excels is ablative.
Reliquōs virtūte praeceōdunt surpass the rest in valor
17. A noun denoting length of time or extent of space, action, being, state, power, etc., is accusative of measure.
Annūm āfuit was away a year
Multum abest is away a great deal
Maximam partem frūmentō vīvunt live a very great deal on grain.
18. Nouns denoting time in which or at which are ablative.
Annō within a year Illō īpsō diē on that very day § 68
Hieme in winter Nocte at night, during the night
19. Nouns denoting how much one exceeds or precedes another or differs from another are ablative.
Annō ante a year earlier
Ā mīlibus passuum v. 5 miles away
Quō plūs, ēō melius the more, the better
Multō melius much better
20. A noun followed by causā for-the-sake, for is genitive.
Frūmentī causā morātur is delaying for (the sake of) grain
21. A noun or pronoun inserted by the side of another to explain it more fully stands in the same case by apposition.
Hoc lēgātō Cicerōnī nūntiat reports this to lieutenant Cicero
The ablative or a phrase is used in apposition with a locative.
Athēnēs urbe Graeciae in Athens a city of Greece § 77
Rhōdi in īnsulā magnā on Rhodes a large island § 76
22. Nouns connected by et, -que, nec, etc., are usually in the same case, verbs thus connected are of the same mode.
Mārcō et Galbae to Mark and Galba
Nec timet neque ēdit neither fears nor hates

75. Nouns Having -ī in the Genitive Singular

Singular

N. inimĭcus a foe (as subj. of a finite verb, pred. nom., etc.)
G. inimĭci a foe’s; of a foe ¹; an enemy’s; of an enemy, etc.
D. inimĭcō a foe (indir. obj.); to a foe; for a foe, etc.
Ac. inimĭcum a foe (subj. of Inf.; dir. obj.); ad inimĭcum to a foe,
V. inimĭcē foe! O foe! thou foe! [for a foe, against a foe ²
Ab. inimĭcō than a foe; ab inimĭcō, by a foe, from an enemy;
   cum inimĭcō with a foe; dé inimĭcō about a foe

Plural

N. inimĭci foes (as subj. of a finite verb, pred. nom., etc.)
G. inimĭcorum foes’; of foes; enemies’; of enemies, etc.
D. inimĭcis foes (indir. obj.); to foes; for foes, etc.
Ac. inimĭcos foes (dir. obj.; subj. of Inf.); ad inimĭcos, to foes,
V. inimĭci foes! O foes! ye foes! [toward foes, etc.
Ab. inimĭcis than foes; ab inimĭcis from enemies, by foes; cum
   inimĭcis with foes; sine inimĭcis without foes

76. When the base ends in -r-, the endings, -us and -e, are lost in many words. When the base ends in -i-, contracted forms occur in the singular; -ī and -ie become -i.

Singular

1. N. Rhodus ³ filius son vesper magister
2. G. Rhodī filī (filiī) vesperī magistrī
3. D. Rhodō filiō vesperō magistrō
4. Ac. Rhodum filiūm vesperum magistrum
5. V. Rhode filī vesper magister
6. Ab. Rhodō filiō vesperō magistrō

7. L. Rhodī in Rhodes vesperī at evening

¹ Both case forms and roundabout phrases have to be used in English.
² See § 57. ³ Fem.; names of islands are feminine; §§ 54, 55 a, e, f.
## Plural

1. **N.** Philippī filīi [plerīque ¹ most magistrī
2. **G.** Philippōrum filiōrum plērōrumque magistrōrum
3. **D.** Philippīs filīīs plērisque magistrīs
4. **Ac.** Philippōs filiōs plērōsque magistrōs
5. **V.** Philippī filīī magistrī
6. **Ab.** Philippīs filīīs plērisque magistrīs

7. **L.** Philippīs at Philippī

### 77. a. First Declension

*Feminine (Masculine)²*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>N.</strong> Alexandrēa³</td>
<td>prōvincia cōnsilium plan Arpīnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G.</strong> Alexandrēae</td>
<td>prōvinciae cōnsiliī, cōnsili Arpīnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D.</strong> Alexandrēae</td>
<td>prōvinciae cōnsiliō Arpīnō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ac.</strong> Alexandrēam</td>
<td>prōvinciam cōnsilium Arpīnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>V.</strong> Alexandrēa</td>
<td>prōvincia cōnsilium Arpīnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ab.</strong> Alexandrēā</td>
<td>prōvinciā cōnsiliō Arpīnō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>L.</strong> Alexandrēae at Alexandria</td>
<td>Arpīnī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. Syrācūsae</th>
<th>prōvinciae cōnsilia plans Leuctra</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. Syrācūsārum</td>
<td>prōvinciārum cōnsiliōrum Leuctrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Syrācūsīs</td>
<td>prōvincīs cōnsilīs Leuctrīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. Syrācūsās</td>
<td>prōvinciās cōnsilia Leuctra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Syrācūsae</td>
<td>prōvinciae cōnsilia Leuctra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. Syrācūsīs</td>
<td>prōvincīs cōnsilīs Leuctrīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

L. **Syrācūsīs in Syracuse**

---

¹ See § 119 b for the meaning of the suffix -que.
² Feminine except when they denote male beings.
³ Greek noun; cf. §§ 28 b, 51.
Singular

N. boreās¹ m. * filia daughter oppidum town vulgus crowd
G. boreae filiae oppidī vulgī
d. boreae filiae oppidō vulgō
Ac. boream filiam oppidum vulgus
V. boreā¹ filia oppidum vulgus
Ab. boreā fiiliā oppidō vulgō

Plural

N. Athēnæ filiae oppida towns castra camp
G. Athēnārum filiārum oppidōrum castrōrum
D. Athēnis filiābus² oppidīs castrīs
Ac. Athēnās filiās oppida castra
V. Athēnae filiae oppida castra
Ab. Athēnīs filiābus oppidīs castrīs
L. Athēnīs at Athens § 74, 10.

78. The Third Declension — Consonant Stems

Singular

a. Masculine or Feminine  

N. (iūdec s) iūdex³ judge virgō maiden ōs mouth flūmen
G. (iūdic is) iūdicis virginis ēris flūminis
D. (iūdic i) iū dici virginī ēri flūmini
Ac. (iūdic em) iūdicem virginem ōs § 42 flūmen
V. (iūdec s) iūdex § 46 virgō § 52 ōs flūmen
Ab. (iūdic e) iūdice virgine ōre flūmine

¹ Greek nom. § 51. ²§ 55 a. ³-cs is always written -x.

Gladius Rōmānus.
### Third Declension

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>iūdicēs</th>
<th>virginēs</th>
<th>ōra</th>
<th>flūmina</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>iūdicum</td>
<td>virginum</td>
<td>ōrum</td>
<td>flūminum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. § 46</td>
<td>iūdicibus</td>
<td>virginibus</td>
<td>ōribus</td>
<td>flūminibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>iūdicēs</td>
<td>virginēs</td>
<td>ōra</td>
<td>flūmina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>iūdicēs</td>
<td>virginēs</td>
<td>ōra</td>
<td>flūmina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>iūdicibus</td>
<td>virginibus</td>
<td>ōribus</td>
<td>flūminibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. (cūstōd s)</td>
<td>cūstōs</td>
<td>(vulnes)</td>
<td>vulnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. (cūstōd is)</td>
<td>cūstōdis</td>
<td>(vulnes is)</td>
<td>vulneris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. (cūstōd i)</td>
<td>cūstōdi</td>
<td>(vulnes i)</td>
<td>vulnerī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. (cūstōd em)</td>
<td>cūstōdem</td>
<td>(vulnes)</td>
<td>vulnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. (cūstōd s)</td>
<td>cūstōs</td>
<td>(vulnes)</td>
<td>vulnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. (cūstōd e)</td>
<td>cūstōde</td>
<td>(vulnes e)</td>
<td>vulnerē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>cūstōdēs guards</th>
<th>vulnera wounds</th>
<th>rūra</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>cūstōdum</td>
<td>vulnerum</td>
<td>rūrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>cūstōdibus § 42</td>
<td>vulneribus § 42</td>
<td>rūribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>cūstōdēs</td>
<td>vulnera</td>
<td>rūra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>cūstōdēs</td>
<td>vulnera</td>
<td>rūra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>cūstōdibus</td>
<td>vulneribus</td>
<td>rūribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 -ds and -ts become -s.
2 Final -es becomes -us; -s- between vowels becomes -r-. Cf. was and were.
3 Cf. rustic and rural. See §§ 42; 74, 10.

---

Nāvis Antiqua.
79. Third Declension -i- Stems and Mixed Stems

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masculine or Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base</td>
<td>Stem $^1$</td>
<td>Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. nāvīs</td>
<td>ship</td>
<td>(partī s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. nāvīs</td>
<td></td>
<td>(partī s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. nāvī</td>
<td></td>
<td>(partī i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. nāvim, nāvem</td>
<td></td>
<td>(partī m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. nāvīs</td>
<td></td>
<td>(partī s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. nāvī, nāve</td>
<td></td>
<td>(partī e)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masculine or Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. nāvēs</td>
<td></td>
<td>(partī ēs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. nāvium</td>
<td></td>
<td>(partī um)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. nāvibus</td>
<td></td>
<td>(partī bus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. nāvis $^3$</td>
<td></td>
<td>(partī ēs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. nāvēs</td>
<td></td>
<td>(partī ēs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. nāvibus</td>
<td></td>
<td>(partī bus)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masculine or Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. Arar</td>
<td>(nūbē s) $^4$ nūbēs cloud</td>
<td>Bibracte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. Araris</td>
<td>(nūbi s)</td>
<td>nūbis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Ararī</td>
<td>(nūbi i)</td>
<td>nūbī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. Ararim</td>
<td>(nūbi m)</td>
<td>nūbem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Arar</td>
<td>(nūbē s)</td>
<td>nūbēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. Ararī</td>
<td>(nūbi e)</td>
<td>nūbe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^1$ Learn the base. Stems are given merely to show the formation.
$^2$ -i- of the stem remains as -e in a few nouns and most adjectives.
$^3$ Printed -ēs in many editions of Latin authors.
$^4$ The stem nūbē- is of the Fifth Declension; nūbi- of the Third.
### Third Declension

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gades</td>
<td>nūbēs</td>
<td>moenia</td>
<td>nūbis</td>
<td>nūbēs</td>
<td>nūbibus</td>
<td>nūbibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>moenia</td>
<td>walls</td>
<td>moenium</td>
<td>moenia</td>
<td>moenibus</td>
<td>moenibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vectīgālia</td>
<td>vectīgālium</td>
<td>vectīgālibus</td>
<td>vectīgālia</td>
<td>vectīgālibus</td>
<td>vectīgālibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**80. Between vowels u becomes v:**

### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>N. (vīs)</th>
<th>vis force</th>
<th>sūs pig</th>
<th>(bou s)</th>
<th>bōs</th>
<th>cow</th>
<th>Iuppiter³</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>suis</td>
<td>(bou is)</td>
<td>bovis</td>
<td>bovi</td>
<td>bovis</td>
<td>Iovis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>suī</td>
<td>(bou i)</td>
<td>bovī</td>
<td>Iovi</td>
<td>Iovem</td>
<td>Iovem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. (vīm)</td>
<td>vim</td>
<td>suem</td>
<td>(bou em)</td>
<td>bovem</td>
<td>bovem</td>
<td>Iovem</td>
<td>Iovem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. (vīs)</td>
<td>vīs</td>
<td>sūs</td>
<td>(bou s)</td>
<td>bōs</td>
<td>Iuppiter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. (vi e)</td>
<td>vi</td>
<td>sue</td>
<td>(bou e)</td>
<td>bove</td>
<td>Iove</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>N. (vīs ēs)</th>
<th>vīrēs</th>
<th>suēs</th>
<th>(bou ēs)</th>
<th>bōvēs</th>
<th>kine, oxen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>vīrium</td>
<td>suum</td>
<td>(bou um)</td>
<td>boum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>vīribus</td>
<td>suibus¹</td>
<td>(bou bus)</td>
<td>būbus²</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>vīris -ēs</td>
<td>suēs</td>
<td>(bou ēs)</td>
<td>bōvēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>vīrēs</td>
<td>suēs</td>
<td>(bou ēs)</td>
<td>bōvēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>vīribus</td>
<td>suibus</td>
<td>(bou bus)</td>
<td>būbus²</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Also sūbus.  ² Also bōbus.  ³ Originally Iou + pater Father Jove.

---

Arcus.
General Survey of Forms

81. a. Fourth Declension

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas. or Fem. Nouns</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
<th>Feminine (except diēs)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>Base</td>
<td>Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. N. (domu s)</td>
<td>domus (^1)</td>
<td>cornū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. G. (domu is)</td>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>cornūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. D. (domu i)</td>
<td>domuī -ū</td>
<td>cornū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Ac. (domu m)</td>
<td>domum</td>
<td>cornū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. V. (domu s)</td>
<td>domus</td>
<td>cornū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Ab. (domu e)</td>
<td>domū (^4)</td>
<td>cornū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. N. (domu ēs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. G. (domu um)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. D. (domu bus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Ac. (domu ēs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. V. (domu ēs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Ab. (domu bus)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

82. The Third Declension need give no trouble. Learn the Nominative, Genitive, and Gender of every noun.

a. If you wish to find the Vocative Singular of any Third Declension noun, it is like the Nominative Singular.

b. The Accusative Singular of any Neuter Third Declension noun is like the Nominative (given in the vocabulary).

c. The remaining forms of the Singular and all the Plural forms are perfectly regular. To write any one of them cor-

---

\(^{1}\) Domus (f.) is a model for masculine and feminine nouns of this declension.

\(^{2}\) The ending is -ēf (when not preceded by -i-) in specēs, spei f. hope; fidēs, fidēi, f. faith and plēbēs, plēbelī f. common people. 

\(^{3}\) -ibus is found in tribus, tribūs tribe and a few others. 

\(^{4}\) See also § 60.
rectly simply get the base (by dropping -is, -um, or -ium from the genitive and annex the ending.

d. The preposition in governs either the ablative or the accusative. All nouns in the following phrases are accusative for not one of them has an ablative ending.

Puer in caput volvitur the boy tumbles on his head.  
Hoc in aliud tempus confert he puts this off till another time.  
Consilia in melius referunt she changes her plans for the better.  
In reliquum tempus for the rest (of) the time; from now on.  
In castra¹ revertuntur they are returning to the camp.  
Frumentum in oppida comportant they gather grain into the towns.

e. The only Ablative endings (§ 55 a, b) are:

-ā, -is, -ābus, -ē, -ēbus, -e, -ī, -ibus, -ō, -ōbus, -ū, -ūbus

Any noun (except nihil) not ending in -a, -e, -am, -em, -im, -um or in -ās, -ēs, -īs, -ōs, -ūs, if accusative, is instantly known to be neuter and singular and third declension, as it can have no ending.  § 55 b, e, f.

EXAMPLES

Flumen altum esse scitis you know the river to be deep.  
Nihil patiuntur vinī Inferri they allow no wine to be brought in.  
Iter facit makes a journey.  Flumen transītis you cross the river.  
Propter anni tempus because of the time of year.  
Ad mare² toward the sea.  Propter vulnus because of a wound.

Thus flumen, iter, tempus, vulnus, mare are known to be neuter singular and third declension because they are accusative.

¹ See also page 18, note 1. ²Mare is Acc. Neut.  Ad takes the Acc.  Cf. § 79 b.  Accusatives in -e or with no ending are neuter, singular, and third declension.
83. Adjectives have forms for each gender, and agree with the nouns they modify, in gender, number, and case.

a. First and Second Declension
   meus, mea, meum my, mine
   pär, pär, pär; Gen. paris equal

### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>meus ¹</td>
<td>mea</td>
<td>meum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>mei</td>
<td>meae</td>
<td>mei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>með</td>
<td>meae</td>
<td>með</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>meum</td>
<td>meam</td>
<td>meum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>mi³</td>
<td>mea</td>
<td>meum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>með</td>
<td>mea</td>
<td>með</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. (meî)</td>
<td>meae ⁴</td>
<td>(meî)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>meî</td>
<td>meae</td>
<td>mea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>meôrum</td>
<td>meārum</td>
<td>meôrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>meîs</td>
<td>meîs</td>
<td>meîs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>meôs</td>
<td>meâs</td>
<td>mea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>meî</td>
<td>meae</td>
<td>mea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>meîs</td>
<td>meîs</td>
<td>meîs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Cf. § 76. ² Note that three forms in the neuter have no case ending. ³ A contract form (for mee). ⁴ Loc. domî meae at my home. ⁵ Printed -ēs in many editions.
Adjectives of All Declensions

84. Present Participles and a few other Third Declension adjectives are declined like potēns able, powerful. §§ 97, 183 c.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>M.</strong></td>
<td><strong>F.</strong></td>
<td><strong>N.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>potēns¹</td>
<td>potēns</td>
<td>potēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>potentis</td>
<td>potentis</td>
<td>potentis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>potenti</td>
<td>potenti</td>
<td>potenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>potentem</td>
<td>potentem</td>
<td>potēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>potēns</td>
<td>potēns</td>
<td>potēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>potentī (-e)²</td>
<td>potentī (-e)</td>
<td>potentī (-e)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>potentēs</td>
<td>potentēs</td>
<td>potentia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>potentium</td>
<td>potentium</td>
<td>potentium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>potentibus</td>
<td>potentibus</td>
<td>potentibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>potentēs³</td>
<td>potentēs³</td>
<td>potentia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>potentēs</td>
<td>potentēs</td>
<td>potentia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>potentibus</td>
<td>potentibus</td>
<td>potentibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ See § 55 b, note 1. ² -e in all participial uses; -i in adjective uses. ³ Written -ēs in many editions of the classics.

Agricola ōbus arat.
85. audāx, audāx, audāx; Gen. audācis, bold, venturesome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>audāx&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt; § 46</td>
<td>audāx</td>
<td>audāx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>audācis</td>
<td>audācis</td>
<td>audācis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>audāci</td>
<td>audāci</td>
<td>audāci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>audācem</td>
<td>audācem</td>
<td>audāx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>audāx</td>
<td>audāx</td>
<td>audāx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>audāci (-e)</td>
<td>audāci (-e)</td>
<td>audāci (-e)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>audācēs</td>
<td>audācēs</td>
<td>audācia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>audācium</td>
<td>audācium</td>
<td>audācium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>audācibus</td>
<td>audācibus</td>
<td>audācibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>audācis</td>
<td>audācis</td>
<td>audācia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>audācēs</td>
<td>audācēs</td>
<td>audācia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>audācibus</td>
<td>audācibus</td>
<td>audācibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

86. The majority of adjectives of the Third Declension are i-stems; vetus, vetus, vetus, Gen. veteris old, and a few others are not i-stems.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>vetus&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt; § 42, 1</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>veteris</td>
<td>veteris</td>
<td>veteris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>veterī</td>
<td>veterī</td>
<td>veterī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>veterem</td>
<td>veterem</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>vetere</td>
<td>vetere</td>
<td>vetere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> Note that cs is always written x.  <sup>2</sup> -s becomes -r- between vowels.

Pilum Rōmānum.
Adjectives of the Third Declension

### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>vetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>veterum</td>
<td>veterum</td>
<td>veterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>vetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>vetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 87. Octōber, Octōbris, Octōbre of October.

#### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>S.</th>
<th>P.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>Octōber</td>
<td>Octōbris</td>
<td>Octōbre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>Octōbris</td>
<td>Octōbris</td>
<td>Octōbris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>Octōbrī</td>
<td>Octōbrī</td>
<td>Octōbrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>Octōbrem</td>
<td>Octōbrem</td>
<td>Octōbre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>Octōber</td>
<td>Octōbris</td>
<td>Octōbre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>Octōbrī</td>
<td>Octōbrī</td>
<td>Octōbrī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>S.</th>
<th>P.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>Octōbrēs</td>
<td>Octōbrēs</td>
<td>Octōbria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>Octōbrīum</td>
<td>Octōbrīum</td>
<td>Octōbrīum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>Octōbris</td>
<td>Octōbris</td>
<td>Octōbrībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>Octōbrīs</td>
<td>Octōbrīs</td>
<td>Octōbria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>Octōbrēs</td>
<td>Octōbrēs</td>
<td>Octōbria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>Octōbris</td>
<td>Octōbris</td>
<td>Octōbrībus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
General Survey of Forms

88. Positive Degree

brevis, brevis, breve, short, brief

SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. brevis</td>
<td>brevis</td>
<td>breve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. brevis</td>
<td>brevis</td>
<td>brevis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. brevī</td>
<td>brevī</td>
<td>brevī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. brevem</td>
<td>brevem</td>
<td>breve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. brevis</td>
<td>brevis</td>
<td>breve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. brevī</td>
<td>brevī</td>
<td>brevī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL

| N. brevēs | brevēs | brevia   |
| G. brevium | brevium | brevium  |
| D. brevibus | brevibus | brevibus |
| Ac. brevīs | brevīs  | brevia   |
| V. brevēs | brevēs  | brevia   |
| Ab. brevibus | brevibus | brevibus |

Observe that the comparatives are not i-stems.

89. Comparative Degree

brevior, brevior, brevius shorter, rather short, too short

SINGULAR

| N. brevior | brevior | brevius |
| G. breviōris | breviōris | breviōris |
| D. breviōri | breviōri | breviōri |
| Ac. breviōrem | breviōrem | brevius |
| V. brevior | brevior | brevius |
| Ab. breviōre | breviōre | breviōre |

1 All adjectives thus far have been of the positive degree.
2 The comparative of brevis, brevis, breve, is a model for all comparatives except plus.
Comparison of Adjectives

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>breviōrēs</td>
<td>breviōrēs</td>
<td>breviōra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>breviōrum</td>
<td>breviōrum</td>
<td>breviōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>breviōribus</td>
<td>breviōribus</td>
<td>breviōribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>breviōrēs</td>
<td>breviōrēs</td>
<td>breviōra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>breviōrēs</td>
<td>breviōrēs</td>
<td>breviōra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>breviōribus</td>
<td>breviōribus</td>
<td>breviōribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

90.

Superlative Degree

brevissimus, brevissima, brevissimum shortest, very short
quam brevissimus as short as possible

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>brevissimus</td>
<td>brevissima</td>
<td>brevissimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>brevissimi</td>
<td>brevissimae</td>
<td>brevissimi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>brevissimō</td>
<td>brevissimae</td>
<td>brevissimō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>brevissimum</td>
<td>brevissimam</td>
<td>brevissimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>brevissime</td>
<td>brevissima</td>
<td>brevissimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>brevissimō</td>
<td>brevissimā</td>
<td>brevissimō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>brevissimi</td>
<td>brevissimae</td>
<td>brevissima</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>brevissimōrum</td>
<td>brevissimārum</td>
<td>brevissimōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>brevissimīs</td>
<td>brevissimīs</td>
<td>brevissimīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>brevissimōs</td>
<td>brevissimās</td>
<td>brevissimās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>brevissimī</td>
<td>brevissimae</td>
<td>brevissima</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>brevissimīs</td>
<td>brevissimīs</td>
<td>brevissimīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All superlatives, perfect and future participles, and gerundives as well as many adjectives of the positive degree are declined thus. Compare §§ 75–7, 83 a.
91. tālis, tālis, tāle such, of such a sort; tālis such — quālis as quālis, quālis, quāle as, such as, and of this sort, of what sort?

quālis ascēnsus est? what kind of climb is it? facilis easy quālis equus! what a horse! tālis, quālis Tītī such as Titus'
amicus, amīca, amicum friendly 3 amīcitia —ae f. friendship
amīcior, amīcior, amīcius more friendly, rather kind, too kind
praesidium quam amīcissimum as friendly a guard as possible
fortis, fortis, forte brave, strong fortiter bravely Cf. § 69
fortissimus, fortissima, fortissimum very brave, bravest
audāx, audāx, audāx; Gen. audācis bold, daring audācter boldly
audācior, audācior, audācius bolder, rather bold, too bold
idōneus, idōneus, idōneum fit, suitable, adapted 3 or ad 4
magis idōneus, magis idōnea, magis idōneum more suitable
potēns, potēns, potēns; Gen. potentis (cf. § 84) able, powerful
potentior —ior —ius more powerful potentissimus —a —um ablest
prūdēns, prūdēns, prūdēns wise, far-sighted prūdenter wisely
nōbilis, nōbilis, nōbile famous, prominent, noble
nōtus —a —um known, well-known nōtior —ior —ius better known
nōtissimus —a —um very well known nōtitia —ae f. knowledge
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful pulchrē beautifully
pulchrior —ior —ius handsomer pulcherrimus —a —um very beautiful
liber, libera, liberum free liberīor —ior —ius freer Cf. § 69
liberrimus —a —um freest liberē freely liberrimē very freely
bonus —a —um good, excellent melior —ior —ius better Cf. § 69
bonitās —tātis f. goodness optimus —a —um best, most excellent
malus —a —um bad, evil, ill peior —ior —ius worse, poorer
pessimus —a —um worst maleficium —ī n. mischief, wrong doing
similis —is —e like 2 or 3 similiter in a similar way
similior —ior —ius more like similimus —a —um very like
mātūrus —a —um early mātūrē early mātūrius earlier Cf. § 69
mātūrāre hasten, make haste Inf. o. mātūritās —tātis ripeness
mātūrrimus —a —um earliest, very early mātūrrimē very early
92. tantus -a -um so great; tantus as large — quantus as quantus, quanta, quantum as, as great as, how great? how large? tantus fuit he was as great — quantus Cicerō as Cicero lātus -a -um wide lātē widely lātitūdō, lātitūdinis f. width lātior -ior -ius wider, too wide lātius more widely, too widely lātissimus -a -um very wide, widest lātissimē most widely § 69 angustus -a -um narrow angustiae -ārum narrow, defile, straits longus -a -um long longē far longitūdō, longitūdinis f. length longior -ior -ius longer, more distant longissimus -a -um longest brevis -is -e short brevītē briefly brevītas -tātis f. shortness altus -a -um high, deep altē highly altitūdō -ūdinis f. height altior -ior -ius higher, deeper altius more highly, more deeply humilis -is -e low, humble humilitās, humilitātis f. lowness humilior -ior -ius lower humillimus -a -um lowest facilis -is -e easy facultās -tātis f. opportunity, privilege (ease) facilior -ior -ius easier facile easily facilius more easily facillimus -a -um easiest facillimē most easily, very easily difficilis -is -e hard, difficult difficilēr with difficulty ingēns, ingēns, ingēns ; Gen. ingentis huge, enormous, great magnus -a -um large, great maior, maior, maius larger maximus -a -um largest magis more maximē especially, most parvus -a -um small, little minor, minor, minus smaller minimus -a -um smallest minus less, not minimē not at all inferī (those) below inferior -ior -ius lower Cf. § 64 infimus -a -um orimus -a -um lowest, bottom-of superī (those) above superior -ior -ius upper, higher, former; superiōra loca the higher places or heights § 68 c suprēmus -a -um highest, last; summus -a -um highest, greatest, very prominent, top-of summa -ae f. total, management prae w. abl. before prior, prior, prius former, previous Cf. § 69 priōre nocte night before last; prius — (quam) sooner, before prīmus -a -um foremost; prima vēnit she was the first to come
93. Nouns are put in Apposition with—that is, by the side of—other nouns to emphasize or explain them more fully. Appositives are aside from the direct assertion. They stand in the same case as the words explained.

Amicō Mārcō (dic) (tell) our friend Mark. Cf. § 5 a, b, c.

The Latin words for my, our, his, their, etc., are often omitted.

94. The ever-present case forms allow Latin to express much in few words. In order to render Latin appositives accurately in English, it is often necessary to supply who, which, that, as he, since it, because she, while we, when he, if they, even if I, though it, etc., together with some form of the verb be. The words supplied vary with the idea conveyed.

a. Mārcō amīcō (dic) (tell) Mark—a friend;
(tell) Mark who-is-a friend;
(tell) Mark as-he-is-a friend;
(tell) Mark since-he-is-a friend;
(tell) Mark because-he-is-a friend;
(tell) Mark while-he-is-friendly;
(tell) Mark if-he-is friendly;

b. Titō inimīcō (dic) (tell) Titus even-if-he-is unfriendly

(is) Absēns mē hostem reddidit (he) made me an enemy (to them)
though-he-never-saw-me
(eius) Absentis crudēlitātem horrent they shudder-at his cruelty,
although-he-is-absent; dread his cruelty when-he-is-absent
(eī) Absentī auxilium mittit sends him aid while-he-is-away
(eum) Absentem accusārunt they accused him while-he-was-absent; accused him when-he-was-absent

Eō invitō, īre nōn audent they do not dare go because-he-is-unwilling; they do not dare go while he-is-unwilling
95. Words denoting time or circumstances may be
a. A part of the principal assertion (any case)
1. (Attached to the subject) Mē rogat cōnsul
   (he) invites me (while or because he is) consult
2. (Attached to a modifier) Mihi cōnsul f désignātō accidit
   it befell me (when I was) consul elected
3. (Attached to the object) Titum inimicum rogō
   I invite Titus (even if he is) unfriendly
   Titō inimicō, rogō
   I am invited (although or even if) Titus (is my) enemy

96. a. The Ablative of time or circumstances may be
   A single word denoting a simple fact
   nocte during the night; vesperrī (Loc.) at evening or
   A whole phrase defining a time or complex circumstance
   Quod facere imperiō nostrō nōn possunt
   and they cannot do this (when) the control (is) ours
   Mārcō Messālā et Mārcō Pīsone cōnsulibus accidit
   it happened (when) Messala and Piso (were) consuls
   b. The Ablative of Manner (often with cum or sine)
   Īure rightly iniūriā wrongly cum cūrā carefully
   c. The Ablative of Accordance (sometimes with ex)
   Suō mōre or (ex) cōnsuētūdine suā according to his custom
97. Present Participle (Active and Deponent)

Formation: Present Stem + ns + -ns + -ns Sign -n-ntis -ntis -ntis -nt-

Adjectives and Verbs at once — often used as Nouns.
Not used as predicate adjectives with verb force. § 84

M. F. N. § 28 a, b § 94
Irr. dāns, dāns, dāns; Gen. dantis giving, (who is) giving, (as he was) giving, (while) giving, (when) giving, (upon) giving; dantēs (those who are) giving, (they when they are) giving
-ā- cōnāns, cōnāns, cōnāns; Gen. cōnantis (who is) trying amāns, amāns, amāns; Gen. amantis loving, (who is) fond amantior, amantior, amantius fonder, more devoted § 89 amantissimus, amantissima, amantissimum fondest
praestāns -āns -āns; -antis standing ahead, excelling § 84 portāns, carrying, bringing, expectāns awaiting, looking-for
-ē- tenēns, tenēns, tenēns; Gen. tenentis (while) holding continēns holding together, timēns fearing (timidly)
vidēns seeing, verēns fearing (for good reasons)
-e- agēns, agēns, agēns; Gen. agentis doing, (while) driving cēdēns giving away, legēns reading, petēns asking
discēdēns departing, loquēns speaking, sequēns following
-i- capiēns, capiēns, capiēns taking, (while) taking § 170 -i-
fugiēns fleeing, eōrdiēns going out, rapiēns snatching
patiēns -ēns -ēns suffering, impatiēns not patient § 220, 7
patientior -ior -ius more patient, patienter patiently § 69
patientissimus most patient, patientia -ae f. endurance
-ī- veniēns, veniēns, veniēns; Gen. venientis (while) coming
mūniēns fortifying, oriēns raising-self, rising
-se absēns absent, praesēns present, potēns able, powerful § 84
iēns, iēns, iēns; Gen. euntis going, (as he was) going § 213, 2
98. **Perfect Participles (Passive Voice)**

Formation: *Participial Stem + us -a -um*. Sign -t- or -s-.

Adjectives and Verbs at once — often used as Nouns. § 90

*Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th><strong>Subject Acted Upon</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Irr. datus, data, datum <em>(having been) given, (being) given</em></td>
<td>§ 94</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ā- imperātus -a -um <em>(having been) commanded or demanded</em></td>
<td>3 p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parātus, parāta, parātum <em>(having been) prepared, made ready</em></td>
<td>§ 89</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parātior, parātior, parātius <em>better prepared, readier</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parātissimus, parātissima, parātissimum <em>best prepared</em></td>
<td>§ 90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ē- contentus -a -um <em>contented</em></td>
<td>retentus -a -um <em>kept back</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>territus <em>terrified</em></td>
<td>perterritus <em>thoroughly frightened</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōtus <em>moved</em></td>
<td>visus <em>seen</em></td>
<td>commōtus, permōtus <em>roused</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ē- āctus -a -um <em>driven, done, set in motion, discussed, spent</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coāctus -a -um <em>driven together, gathered, compelled, forced</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-i- captus <em>taken</em></td>
<td>acceptus <em>received</em></td>
<td>receptus <em>recovered</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factus <em>done</em></td>
<td>cōnfectus <em>finished up</em></td>
<td>perfectus <em>completed</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-i- audītus -a -um <em>heard</em></td>
<td>exaudītus -a -um <em>overheard</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūnitus -a -um <em>fortified</em></td>
<td>mūnitiō -tiōnis f. <em>fortification</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impedītus <em>(when) hindered</em></td>
<td>impedīmentum -i n. <em>hindrance</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expeditītus <em>unimpeded; legiō expedita legion without baggage</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expeditīor -iōr -ius <em>more unimpeded, less impeded, easier</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itum est, ventum est <em>(going was done, they came or went)</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initiōs <em>(being) entered upon</em></td>
<td>praeteritus <em>gone by, past, bygone</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

99. **Active** | **Perf. Inf.** | **Passive**

(iuss + issē) *(See § 163 b)*  

iussus  

esse *(§ 168, n. 3)*

**Cross-Reference:**

(to be *having ordered*)  

(to be *having been ordered*)

(to) *have ordered*  

(to) *have been ordered*
100. **Perfect Participles** (Deponent)

Adjectives and Verbs at once — often used as Nouns. § 90
*Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force.* §§ 180–2.

**Subject Acting**

-ā- cōnātus -a -um having exerted self or tried or attempted, (after)
  having tried cōnāta (n. pl.) things attempted p. 16, obs. c.
mīrātus -a -um having wondered, because he wondered § 94
morātus -a -um having detained self, (after) having delayed

-ē- ausus -a -um having ventured or having dared
veritus -a -um having feared, because he feared (with reason)

-e- locūtus -a -um having spoken, (after or when he had) spoken
secūtus having kept self near, (after) having followed
consecūtus (who had) followed up insecūtus having chased
ūsus -a -um having used 6.ūsus -ūs m. practice, experience

-i- gressus -a -um having walked ēgressus having gone out
ingressus having gone in prōgressus having gone forth
mortuus having died, being dead mors, mortis f. death
passus having suffered, (after) having endured, allowed, let

-i- ortus -a -um having raised self, risen, arisen, started
expertus -a -um having experienced or tried

101.  :

a. **Active**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf. Ind.</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>locūta</td>
<td>est</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Deponent verbs have no perfect stem, no perfect active.)


*We hear-about her* having been speaking

*We hear that-she* has been speaking

*or that-she* has spoken or spoke
102. Future Participles (Active and Deponent)

Participial Stem + ārus -āra -ārum. Sign -ār-.

Adjectives and Verbs at once — also used as Nouns. § 90

Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force.

Irr. datūrus, datūra, datūrum about to give, going to give, (as he was) going to give, (when he was) going to give § 94

ā- cōnātūrus, cōnātūra, cōnātūrum intending to try or attempt
portātūrus -ā -um going to carry, intending to take or bring
parātūrus going to get ready temperātūrus going to refrain

ē- habitūrus going to regard prohibitūrus going to stop
persuāsūrus going to persuade obtentūrus going to hold

ē- āctūrus going to drive, do, set in motion, discuss, spend
redditūrus going to give back concessūrus going to grant
neglēctūrus going to overlook secūtūrus going to follow

ī- captūrus going to take factūrus going to do, make
ēgressūrus going to go out cōnflectūrus going to finish

ī- auditūrus going to hear ventūrus going to come
itūrus going to go oritūrus going to rise

-se futūrus going to be or stay āfutūrus going to be away

103. Future Participles represent an action as going to occur after the time of the main verb.

a. Hoc ūnum petō Vēni nihil aliud petitūrus

I ask this one (thing) I came intending to ask nothing else

b. Ventūrus est (§§ 74, 3) Itūra esse dicitur (§§ 74–3)

he is going to come she is said to be going to go

c. Coāctūri erant Itūram esse dicitur (§§ 74–3)

they were going to compel it is said that she will go

d. Sēsē coāctūrōs (esse) putāvēre Sē datūrum esse dicit

thought that they would compel says that he will give
104. Future Participles (Passive and Deponent) — Gerundive

Formation: Present Stem + ndus -nda -ndum. Sign -nd-. Adjectives and Verbs at once — also used as Nouns. § 90
Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force. § 28 b.

Subject Acted Upon

Compare the English words:

errands (things) to be wandered or gone after
dividend to be divided minuend to be lessened
memorandum (matter that) has to be called to mind
memoranda (matters that) ought to be called to mind
reverend to be regarded with awe or revered or feared

Irr. dandus, danda, dandum to be given, (deserving) to be given
(that ought) to be given, (that have) to be given, (that must) be given, (that are) to be (or should be) given

-exspectandus -a -um to be awaited, to be waited for; ex-
spectandum est waiting ought to be done; one must wait
transporthandus -a -um to be carried, brought, or taken over

-habendus to be had or held retinendus to be kept back
verendus to be feared prövidendus to be looked out for

-concéndus to be granted ferendus to be endured
dividendus to be divided cönferendus to be compared
agendus to be done, driven tremendus to be trembled at

-capiendus to be taken recipiendus to be taken back
faciendus to be done progrediendus to be gone forth

-audiendus to be heard münientus to be fortified
veniendum to be come partiendus to be separated
eundum est travelling is to be done, one must go

105. The Dative is used to assert ownership. § 5 e.

Mihi studium est there is a pursuit for me; I have an occupation;
Cf. colloquial English "Where is the cover to the box?"
106. Gerundives are used to express duty or necessity.

a. Liber legendus est  
   the book is to be read
   the book must be read

b. Liber mihi est  
   (there is a book for me)
   (a book belongs to me)
   I have a book
   I have to read a book
   a book ought to be read by me

(c. Legitur  
   it is read,
   reading is done
   Legendum est  
   it must be read,
   reading is to be done

d. Mihi legendum est  
   I have reading that is to be done
   I have reading to do
   I have to read I ought to read

Mihi legendum (esse) putō I think I have to read
Nōn exspectandum sibi statuit decided he ought not to wait

c. Obsidēs dandī sunt there are hostages to be given
   Obsidēs dandōs cūrō I see to giving the hostages

107. a. Subjective Genitive  
   Helvētiōrum iniūriās
   (I know the Helvetians injuries)

b. Objective Genitive  
   populī Rōmānī nōvī
   (of the Roman people)

Helvētiī  
iniūriās  
populō Rōmānō īnferunt

The Helvetians inflict injuries on the Roman people

c. Also with verbs of remembering and forgetting and nouns and adjectives denoting desire, endurance, etc.

contumēliae obliviscitur becomes forgetful of the outrage § 223 b
amāns patriae fond of country
impatiēns morae tired of delay
patientia sitis endurance of thirst
studium bellandī desire to war
108. a. uter utra utrum; G. utrius, D. utri which (of two)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>uter</td>
<td>utra</td>
<td>utrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>utrius</td>
<td>utrius</td>
<td>utrius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>utri</td>
<td>utrim</td>
<td>utri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>utrum</td>
<td>utram</td>
<td>utrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>———</td>
<td>———</td>
<td>———</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>utro</td>
<td>utra</td>
<td>utro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L.</td>
<td>———</td>
<td>———</td>
<td>utrobi § 119 e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>———</th>
<th>———</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>utri</td>
<td>utrae</td>
<td>utra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>utriorum</td>
<td>utriarum</td>
<td>utriorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>utris</td>
<td>utris</td>
<td>utris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>utros</td>
<td>utras</td>
<td>utra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>———</td>
<td>———</td>
<td>———</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>utris</td>
<td>utris</td>
<td>utris</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. uter- -one (of two) -que each, every-; uterque either, both

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>uterque</td>
<td>utraque</td>
<td>utrumque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>utriusque</td>
<td>utriusque</td>
<td>utriusque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>utrique</td>
<td>utrique</td>
<td>utrique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>utrumque</td>
<td>utramque</td>
<td>utrumque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>———</td>
<td>———</td>
<td>———</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>utroque</td>
<td>utrâque</td>
<td>utroque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L.</td>
<td>———</td>
<td>———</td>
<td>utrobiq</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Which One of Two?

109. a. SINGULAR

N. alter altera alterum
G. alterius alterius alterius
D. alterī alterī alterī
Ae. alterum alteram alterum
V. — — —
Ab. alterō alterā alterō

PLURAL

N. alterī alterae altera
G. alterōrum, etc. alterārum, etc. alterōrum, etc.

alter, altera, alterum the other (of the two) the one . . . the other
uter, utra, utrum which (one of the two) utrum whether . . . an or
uterque, utraque, utrumque either (of the two), each (of two) both
neuter, neutra, neutrum neither (of two) Cf. §§ 65, 71

b. Genitives used to denote possession, etc.

Caesaris Caesar’s, of Caesar patris father’s patrum fathers’
huius (this person’s etc.) his, her, its hōrum their
istīus (of that man by you) his, her, its istōrum their
illīus (yonder man’s) his, her, its illōrum their
cuius and-his, and-her, and-its, whose quōrum and-their, whose
eius (this or that man’s) his, her, its eōrum their
eiusdem his also, her also, its also eōrundem their also

c. Adjectives possessive in meaning (agreeing with nouns).

Caesariānus, Caesariāna, Caesariānum Caesar’s, of Caesar
paterculus -a -um father’s maternus -a -um mother’s
Rōmānus, Rōmāna, Rōmānum Rome’s, of Rome, Roman
suus, sua, suum his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)
aliēnus, aliēna, aliēnum another’s, of another, of others
meus -a -um my (of me) noster, nostra, nostrum our (of us)
tuus -a -um thy (of thee) vester, vestra, vestrum your (of you)
### 110. **Indefinite, Interrogative, and Relative Pronouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. qui, quis (§§ 113–114)</td>
<td>quae (qua § 113)</td>
<td>quod, quid (§ 113)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cui</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quod, quid (§ 113)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. —</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quō (qui §§ 113–115)</td>
<td>quà (qui)</td>
<td>quō (qui § 114)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. —</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>ubi (cubi § 113)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. qui</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae (qua § 113)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. quōrum</td>
<td>quàrum</td>
<td>quōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quōs</td>
<td>quās</td>
<td>quae (qua § 113)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. —</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 111. **Indefinite, Interrogative, and Relative Pronouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. quisque</td>
<td>quaeque</td>
<td>quodque, quidque¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cuiusque</td>
<td>cuiusque</td>
<td>cuiusque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cuique</td>
<td>cuique</td>
<td>cuique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quemque</td>
<td>quamque</td>
<td>quodque, quidque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. —</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quōque</td>
<td>quàque</td>
<td>quàque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. —</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>ubique</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. quiōque</td>
<td>quaeque</td>
<td>quaeque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. quōrumque</td>
<td>quàrumque</td>
<td>quōrumque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. quibusque</td>
<td>quibusque</td>
<td>quibusque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quōsque</td>
<td>quāsque</td>
<td>quaeque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. —</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quibusque</td>
<td>quibusque</td>
<td>quibusque</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ The form quidque is used as a pronoun; quodque, as an adjective.
Demonstrative Pronouns

112. a. is *this* or that (anywhere), such, *he*, etc. § 115

**Singular**

N. *is* *he*, *it*, *this*, *that* *ea* *this*, *she*, *it* *id* *this*, *that*, *it*
G. *eius* his, *its*, *of it* *eius* her, *of her*, *its* *eius* its, *of that*
D. *ei* (to) him, *it*, *that* *ei* (to) her, *it*, *that* *ei* it, (to) *that*
Ac. *eum* him, *it*, *this* *eam* her, *it*, *this* *id* it, *this*, *that*
V. ——
Ab. *ei* *him*, *by it*, *this* *eai* *her*, *by it*, *that* *eai* by it, *that*
L. —— *ibi* in it, there § 28

**Plural**

N. *ei*, *it*¹ they, *those* *eae* they, *these* *ea* they, *these* (§ 115)
G. *eorum* their, *of these* *eaurum* their, etc. *eorum* their, *of those*
D. *eis* (to) them, *those* *eis* (to) them, etc. *eis* (to) them, *those*
Ac. *eis* them, *those* *ea* them, *those things* *ea* them, *those things*
V. ——
Ab. *eis* (by) them, etc. *eis* (by) them, etc. *eis* with them, etc.

b. *idem* (is + *dem*) *this* too, *that also*, *he also*, *same*

**Singular**

N. *idem* he *also*, *same* *eadem* she *too*, *same* *idem* it *also*
G. *eiusdem* his *also* *eiusdem* her *also*, *its* *eiusdem* its *also*
D. *eidem* him *also*, *it* *eidem* her *also*, *it* *eidem* it *also*
Ac. *eundem* him *also*, *it* *eandem* her *also*, *it* *idem* it *also*
V. ——
Ab. *eodem* him *also*, *it* *eadem* her *also*, *it* *eodem* by it *also*
L. —— *ibidem* in *it also*

**Plural**

N. *eodem*² they *also* *eadem* they *also* *eadem* they *also*
G. *eaurundem* their *eaurundem* their *eaurundem* their
D. *eisdem*³ them *also* *eisdem* them *also* *eisdem* them *also*

---
¹ Also I and D. and Ab. Pl. *iis*.
² Also *idem*, *idem*.
³ Also *iisdem*.
113. **Indefinite**

 Qui is indefinite after qui who, quod what, ubi when, ut when, as, that; nē that . . . not, si if, nisi unless, etc.

 qui, qua, quod (adj.) any (some); si qua rēs (Nom.) if any thing
 quis (indef. pron.) one, anyone; quid anything, (Acc.) any, at all
 quod auxilium some sort of help; quid auxill some (of) help
 quō to any place cubi in any place cunde from any side

114. **Interrogatives**

 quid audet? to what extent does he dare? how bold is he?
 qui puer? what sort of boy? quis puer? (§ 94) who when-a-boy?
 quae puella? what sort of girl? quid cōnsilī? what (of) plan?
 quā rē? (or qui? Ab.) on account of what? why? quīn why not?

Militēs Gallicī armātī.
Pronouns and Adjectives

115. a. Relatives
qui, quae, quod (adj.) which, and-this, that-this, since-this; pl. and-these; quae rēs and-this thing, and-this fact quae castra and-this camp; qui locus and-this place qui pron. (one) who, and-he, that, that-he, as, since-he, though-he is qui he who, such that-he; eī qui they who, those who quae pron. who, and-she, that, that-she, as, since-she, though-she ea quae she who, such that-she; eae quae they who, those who quod pron. which, and-it, what, that, that-it, as, since-it, though-it id quod that which; ea quae those (things) which quod (Ac.) to what extent; quod potest as-far-as he can quīn pron. who ... not; that ... not; but, which ... not
b. quod that, because quod sī but if quod nisi but unless quō (adv.) whither, to which (place), and-to it, and-to them § 119 c, d ubi in which, at which, where, and-in it; w. Ind. when § 119 c, f unde (adv.) whence, from which, and-from it, and-from them cum (quom or um-) w. Ind. when, as tum cum at the time when w. Sub. when, as, just-as (of time), while, since, although ut, utē w. Ind. as, when; w. Sub. (in order) that, (so) that; how? ita utē just as (of manner) quī (Ab.) how, why quīn why not

c. cum prīnum, ubi prīnum, ut prīnum when first, as soon as quī cum and when he quod ubi audit and when he hears it quī sī and if he; quō plūs, eō melius the more the better (§ 74, 19) quā rē or quam ob rem why, and on account of this, and-therefore

Carrus bōbus ductus.
116. a. **Personal Pronouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Person</th>
<th>Second Person</th>
<th>Third Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. ego I § 28</td>
<td>tū thou</td>
<td>§§ 112, 115, 118 b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. mei of me ¹</td>
<td>tui of thee (of you) ¹</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. mihi me, to me</td>
<td>tibi thee, to thee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. mē me</td>
<td>tē thee (you)</td>
<td>wanting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. ——</td>
<td>tū thou (you)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. mē me</td>
<td>tē thee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mēcum with me</td>
<td>tēcum with thee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē mē about me</td>
<td>abs tē by thee, from thee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. nōs we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. nostrum, nostrī of us vestrum, ² vestrī ¹ of you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. nōbis us, to us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. nōs us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. ——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. nōbis us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōbiscum with us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in nōbis among us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. **Reflexive Pronouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Singular</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. mei ¹ of myself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. mihi myself, me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. mē myself, me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. ——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. mē myself, me</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Never means my or your; § 107 b. ² §§ 66 c, 72. ³ Also of herself or of itself.
### Personal and Reflexive Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Person</th>
<th>Second Person</th>
<th>Third Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. —— § 74, 3</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. nostrī of ourselves</td>
<td>vestī of yourselves</td>
<td>sui of themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. nōbis ourselves, us</td>
<td>vōbis yourselves</td>
<td>sibi themselves, them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. nōs ourselfes, us</td>
<td>vōs yourselves, you</td>
<td>sē, sēsē themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. ——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. nōbis ourselves, us</td>
<td>vōbis yourselves, you</td>
<td>sē, sēsē themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. alius § 65</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliud § 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. alī</td>
<td>alīf</td>
<td>alīf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. alium</td>
<td>aliam</td>
<td>aliud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. ——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. aliō</td>
<td>aliā</td>
<td>aliō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. ——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>alibi elsewhere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

| N. aliī     | aliae      | alia       |
| G. aliōrum  | aliārum    | aliōrum    |
| D. aliīs    | aliīs      | aliīs      |
| Ac. aliōs   | aliās      | alia       |
| V. ——       | ——         | ——         |
| Ab. aliīs   | aliīs      | aliīs      |

1 The genitive of alius has almost fallen into disuse on account of the prominence of the possessive adjective allēnus -a -um another's, others'; alterius is sometimes used for the older alius (found in alius modi).

---

Tuba.
### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>hic this, he, it</td>
<td>haec this, she, it</td>
<td>hoc this, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>huius of this, his</td>
<td>huius of this, her</td>
<td>huius of this, its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>huic (to) him, it</td>
<td>huic (to) her, it</td>
<td>huic (to) this, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>hunc this, him, it</td>
<td>hanc this, her, it</td>
<td>hoc this, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>hoc him, by it</td>
<td>hāc her, by this</td>
<td>hoc by this or it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>hic in this, here</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>hi these, they</td>
<td>hae these, they</td>
<td>haec these, they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>hōrum their</td>
<td>hārum of these, their</td>
<td>hōrum their, of them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>his these, them</td>
<td>his these, them</td>
<td>his these, them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>hōs these, them</td>
<td>hās these, them</td>
<td>haec these, them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>his them, by these</td>
<td>his them, by these</td>
<td>his them, by these</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

118. a. The Intensive Adjective, ipse self, very, adds emphasis but does not reflect action upon the subject. Cf. § 116 c.

### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>ipse¹</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>ipsīus</td>
<td>ipsīus</td>
<td>ipsīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural is like the plural of alius, § 117 a.

¹ Note the -e (for -us).
b. Irregular Adjectives. (Model unus, § 120. Cf. § 108.)

únus -a -um one, only (one)          üllus -a -um any, any (one)
sólus -a -um alone                   nüllus -a -um not-any, no, none
tótus -a -um whole, total, all (of   nönnüllus -a -um some; pl. sev-
single things; cf. omnis all (of     eral, not-a-few §§ 64–65
a quantity), every, all (many)       ipse -a -um (§ 116 c) self, very
alius -a -ud 1 else, one, another;   alii some . . . alii others § 65

1. hic,² haec, hoc this (by me or of mine); he, she, it, latter
2. iste,¹ ista, istud¹ that (by you, you mentioned); he, she, it
3. ille, illa, illud that (of his or yonder); he, she, it, former

c. Nēmō (for nē + homō) and nihil (for nihilum)

N. nēmō no-one  nihil, nil  nihil reliqui no remainder § 72
G. (nüllius)    nihilī  nihilī est is of no value § 73
D. nēmini      ——     Ac. nihil ³ commötus nothing
Ac. nēminem    nihil, nil  daunted, not alarmed at all
V. ——          ——     nönnihil ³ commötus somewhat
Ab. (nüllö § 65) nihilō  alarmed, alarmed to-some-extent
      nihilō minus less by-nothing

¹ Note the -e (for -us) and -ud (for -um).  ² For hi-ce, haec-ce, hod-ce.
³ The accusative is used to denote extent of time, space, action, etc., § 74, 17.

Alii castellum cústödiunt alii quiēte útuntur.
119. a. The best way to master compound pronouns and adverbs is to make a careful study of the elements from which they are built up.

The original meaning of quis was evidently one (someone or anyone) but when it was spoken in the manner of a question it meant which-one? The original meaning of qui was probably one, but when it was used to introduce a descriptive clause it took on the meaning who, just as the English once (meaning one time) often assumes the character of a relative adverb and means when-once, as in:

"Trees grow rapidly, once they have become rooted."

Closely allied with qui and-he, who, quis one and quis? which one? what one? who? are the adverbs below:

quō whither, to  ubi (1 quobî) cubi,  unde (1 quonde) cunde,
    which place, to  in which place,  from which place,
    whom, and to it  where, among whom  whence, from whom

cum(quom or um-) quandō when, at a  üs- where, in a
    when, at a time  time; when?  place, at a point

quam in a degree,  ut, uthi in a way,  quâ (via or parte) by
    as, how? than  how? as, that  a way, on a side

c. Pronouns (Adjectives) 1

d. Place to which or persons to whom

hic he, it  haec she, it  hoc it  húc to this place, to it,
    this (by me or that I mention)  to them, hither § 61 b

iste he, it  ista she, it  istud it  istō, istūc to that place
    that (by you), that (you mention)  (where you are), to it

ille he, it  illa she, it  illud it  illō, illūc to that place
    that (of his, of theirs), that yonder (yonder or by them), to it

1 Not used; qu- dropped, cf. ubi, umquam. 2 Continued on p. 182.
119. b. SIMPLE ELEMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alic-, aliqu-</td>
<td>some, any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dam a certain</td>
<td>qui one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dem also, same</td>
<td>quom at a time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(identical)</td>
<td>is he, that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-libet 2 please</td>
<td>qui who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-piam some</td>
<td>quis one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-quam (with a negative) any-</td>
<td>quā in a way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-que each, § 65</td>
<td>um at a time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every, universally</td>
<td>quis one § 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-vis 2 you wish</td>
<td>nam for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 186</td>
<td>quam pauci how few</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(doubling) -ever</td>
<td>quis who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-cumque -soever</td>
<td>qui who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-versus -ward</td>
<td>ad to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-rsus (-rsus) -ward re-back</td>
<td>namque for, at any rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quamvis pauci how few you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quisquis whoever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>qui cumque whosoever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>adversus to-ward Cf. 217 c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rursus backwards, again</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Another form of cum at a time, when.  2 Verb.  3 Continued on p. 183.
119. c. Adjective Pronouns

is he, it, this, that; ea she; id it;
(pl.) these, those, they
idem he also, the same

qui who, that, as, and-he, and-it


quis one, anyone quid anything
quispiam someone quippiam -thing
quisquam any-one quicquam anything

aliquis someone aliquid something
quisquis who- quicquid what-
quicumque ever quodcumque ever

alius other, another, else

uter? whether? which (one of the two)?

neuter neither (one of the two)

uterque each (one of the two)

quisque every, each quidque everything
(eone)

quidam a, a certain (one), certain

quinam? (for) who? who-in-the-world?
who pray? pray tell who?

quilibet who-it-pleases, who you please,
quivis anyone you please

d. Place to which or persons to whom

eō to this place, to it,
thither, on them
eōdem to this place
also, to it also

quō to which place,
and to this place

quō? to what place?
in which direction?

quō to any place

quōpiam to some place

quōquam to any place,
in any direction

aliquo to some place

quōquo to what-
quōcumque ever place

aliō to another place

utro to which place?
in which direction?

neutro to neither place,
in neither direction

utroque to both places,
in both directions

quoque-versum in every
direction Cf. 61 b

quōnam? to what
place in the world?

quōlibet to what place

quōvis you please
Compound Pronouns and Adverbs (Continued) 183

e. Place in which or persons among whom
f. Place from which or persons from whom
g. Way by which or side on which

ibi in this place, inde from this place, ea by this way,
in it, here from it, hence on this side, here
ibidem in it also, indidem from the same eadem by the same
in the same place place, from it also route, there also

ubi in which place, unde from which place, qua and on this
and in it, where and from it, whence side, where
where? in whom? whence? where from? on which side?
cubi in any place cunde from any place qua in any way
úsiam any-where néquiam } in no
úsquam any-where néquāquam } way, by no means

umquam ever
alicubi any-where alicunde from any side aliquā in any way
ubiuubi } wher- undeunde quaqua
ubicumque } ever undecumque quācumque

alibi elsewhere alicunde from other sides aliās elsewhere

utrobi? in which utrinde? from which utrā? on which
place (of two)? side (of two)? side (of two)?
neutrubi in neither place (of two) neutrā on neither

side, neither way

utrobi-que in both utrimque from either utrāque on either
places, in both side or direction side, both ways
ubique everywhere undique from every quaque on every
úsque all the way side, on all sides side, every way

quondam one time

ubinam? where in the world?

ubilibet } where you undelibet } from where quālibet by what
ubivīs } like undevis } you please way you please
120. a.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>ānus one</td>
<td>āna only (ones)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>ūnius of one</td>
<td>ūnārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>ūni one</td>
<td>ūnīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>ūnum one</td>
<td>ūnās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>ūnō one</td>
<td>ūnīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>duo two</td>
<td>duae two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>duōrum of two</td>
<td>duārum of two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>duōbus two</td>
<td>duābus two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>duōs (duo) two</td>
<td>duās two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>duōbus two</td>
<td>duābus two</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>trēs three</td>
<td>trēs three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>trium of three</td>
<td>trium of three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>tribus three</td>
<td>tribus three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>trīs three</td>
<td>trīs three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>tribus three</td>
<td>tribus three</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. The next cardinal numeral declined is ducenti -ae -a two hundred. The hundreds are declined like the plural of ūnus. Mille thousand is indeclinable.

e. Milia thousands is a neuter noun declined like tria three and is followed by the Genitive Case. (See § 72.)

Mille libri 1000 books  
Duo milia librōrum 2000 books
quot? how many?   quotus? what one?   quotēni? how many each?
ūnus ānā ānum   prīmus first   singulī one each
duo duae duo   alter second   bīnī two each
très tres tria   tertius third   ternī three each p. 28  
quattuor iv.   quartus fourth   etc.
quīnque v.   quintus fifth   f. (Cf. p. 29 and § 78 a)
sex vi.   sextus sixth   simplex simple
tēstāmus   octāmus   duplex double, twofold
octō   nōnus   triplex triple,

novem ix.   decimus   etc.
decem x.   undecimus   quotiens? how many times? p. 29 and § 67
īndecim xi.   duodecimus   semel once
duodecim   tertius decimus   bis twice

tredecim   quartus decimus   ter thrice, 3-times
quattuordecim   quintus decimus   quater 4-times
quīndecim   sextus decimus   etc.
sēdecim   septimus decimus   g. Elements
septendecim   duodevīgintī   -decim -teen -us -tus -th
duodēvīgintī   undevīgintī   vi- twain, twen-
vīgintī   vīcēnsimus   -gintī or -gintā -ty
vīgintī ānūs   vīcēnsimus prīmus   -dē- from -īēns -times
duodētrīgintā   duodētrīgintā   -cent- or -gent- hundred
undētrīgintā   undētrīgintā   -plex -plicis -ple -fold
trigintā   tricēnsimus   compare audāx § 85
quadragintā   quadrāgēnsimus   prīnum first (thing)
quinquagintā   quinquagēnsimus   deinde then, next
sexāgintā   sexagēnsimus   tertium third (thing)
septuāgintā   septuagēnsimus   prīnum for the 1st time
octōgintā   octogēnsimus   iterum again, 2nd time
cēntēnsimus   nōnagēnsimus   tertium for the 3rd time
centum   cēntēnsimus   quārtum for the 4th time
121. The plain Infinitive is the simplest form of the verb and cannot be satisfactorily defined \(^1\) except by telling where it occurs. Infinitives are found as objects:

\[\begin{align*}
\text{a. after may} & \quad \text{It may be} & \quad \text{Esse potest} \\
& \quad \text{He might wish} & \quad \text{Velle posset} \\
\text{after can} & \quad \text{She can read} & \quad \text{Legere potest} \\
\text{after will} & \quad \text{He would not go} & \quad \text{Îre nôlêbat} \ § \ 186 \\
\text{after do, etc.} & \quad \text{Don’t speak so} & \quad \text{Nôli ita loqui}
\end{align*}\]

\[\begin{align*}
\text{b. after to} & \quad \text{He ought to read it} & \quad \text{Id legere débet} \\
& \quad \text{Ready to read} & \quad \text{Ad legendum parátus} \\
& \quad \text{Is compelled to give} & \quad \text{Dare côgitur} \ § \ 155 \\
& \quad \text{I know it to be Mark} & \quad \text{Eum Mârcum esse sciô}
\end{align*}\]

\[\begin{align*}
c. \quad \text{and as subject of a verb or predicate noun.} \\
\text{subj.} & \quad \text{Call is speak} & \quad \text{Vocâre loqui est} \\
\text{pred.} & \quad \text{Call is speak} & \quad \text{Vocâre loqui est}
\end{align*}\]

122. Infinitives with subject Accusative are used in object clauses:

\[\begin{align*}
\text{after let} & \quad \text{He lets them go} & \quad \text{Eôs îre patitur} \\
& \quad \text{(allows them to go)} & \quad \S \ 142 \\
\text{after bid} & \quad \text{He bids us try} & \quad \text{Nôs cônârî iubet} \\
& \quad \text{(orders us to try)} & \quad \text{Cf. } \S \ 153 \\
\text{after see} & \quad \text{They saw me go} & \quad \text{Mê îre vidârunt} \\
& \quad \text{(observed that I went)} \\
\text{after hear} & \quad \text{I heard her speak} & \quad \text{Eam loqui audîvî} \\
& \quad \text{(heard that she spoke)} & \quad \S \ 142
\end{align*}\]

\(^1\) We find about half the infinitives in ordinary English are introduced by the preposition to. \(^1\) English infinitives not introduced by to are nearly always translated by Latin infinitives, whereas a large part of those introduced by to are not translated by infinitives in Latin (see \§§ \ 148–9).
123. Infinitives in -ing (Gerunds) may be used as subject, as a predicate noun, or as object of a verb or preposition.

a. subj. Seeing is believing

b. pred. Calling is speaking

c. obj. I began calling him

d. w. prep. Finds upon inquiring

He prevents me from going

I am prevented from going

124.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Active (subject acting)</th>
<th>Passive (subject acted upon) (Deponent § 182)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>-re (-se or -le)</td>
<td>-ri, -i</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Indicative or

Subjunctive

1st Pers. sing. -ō, -m -ī 1 -or, -r (I)
2nd Pers. sing. -s -istī -ris, -re (thou)
3rd Pers. sing. -t -it -tur (he, she, it)
1st Pers. plur. -mus -imus -mur (we)
2nd Pers. plur. -tis -istis -mini (you)
3rd Pers. plur. -nt -ērunt or -ntur (they)

Imperative Pres.

2nd Pers. sing. —— -re (thou)
2nd Pers. plur. -te -mini (ye, you)

125. The ending of an Infinitive shows merely whether its subject is acting or acted upon (in deponent verbs acting upon itself or in some way concerning itself).

The ending of a Finite Verb shows (a) whether the subject it refers to is I or we, thou or you, or some other person or

1 Used in the Perfect Indicative Active only. See § 168, note.
126. The **Present Stem** of a Latin verb is found by dropping -re, -ri or -i from the present infinitive. Cf. § 163.

In -e- verbs restore -e- where it disappears before -i.

In -i- verbs restore -i- where it becomes -e- before r or has disappeared before -i.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>3i</th>
<th>3i</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>e-</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pres. vocāre iubēre legere —— capere —— audire
Inf. vocāri iubēri legī útī capī patī audiri
Pres. vocā- iubē- lege- üte- capi- pati- audī-
Stem call order pick use take let hear

127. **Present Infinitives.** Nouns and Verbs at Once

-ā- vocāre (to) call, (be) calling, (do) calling § 190 e vocation
  vocāri (to) be called, (being) called, calling (be) done revoke
  cōnāri (to) exert-self, try, (be) trying, make effort conative

-e- iubēre (to) order, bid, (be) ordering, give orders jussive
  iubēri (to) be ordered, (being) ordered, order (be) given
  licēre (to) be allowed, be lawful, be right license

-le- legere (to) pick, read, (be) reading, (do) reading legible
  legī (to) be read, (being) read, reading (be) done eligible
  loqui (to) speak, talk, (be) talking, (do) talking eloquent

-i- capere (to) take, contain, (be) taking, (do) taking capacity
  capi (to) be taken, captured, (being) taken captive
  pati (to) suffer, allow, let, (be) letting patient, passive

-i- audīre (to) hear, heed, (be) hearing § 207 e obedient
  audiri (to) be heard, (being) heard, heed (be) given audible
  largīri (to) give in self interest, give bribe largess
128. Infinitives of Irregular Verbs: § 184

-ā- dare (to) put, give, send, (be) giving, (do) giving  dative
dari (to) be put, given, (being) given, giving (be) done  render
-i- ire (to) go, travel, (be) going, (do) traveling  transient
iri be gone, traveling be done
-se esse (to) be, exist, belong (last, remain)  essential
posse (to) be able, be powerful; can, may  possible, power
-le velle (to) wish, will, be willing § 186  will, voluntary
nōlle (to) wish not, will not, be unwilling  willy-nilly
mālē (to) wish rather, prefer, will rather  magistrate

129. As nouns, infinitives are declined in the singular and called Gerunds. The accusative in -um is used only with the preposition ad or in apposition with another noun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>3 i</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ā-</td>
<td>-ē-</td>
<td>-ē-</td>
<td>-i-</td>
<td>-ē-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
N. cōnārī vidēre agere fugere audire
G. cōnandī videndī agendī fugiendī audiendī
d. cōnandō videndō agendō fugiendō audiendō
Ac. cōnandum¹ videndum agendum fugiendum audiendum
V. — — — — —
Ab. cōnandō videndō agendō fugiendō audiendō

130. As nouns, infinitives stand as the direct object of verbs meaning may, can, ought, will, try, dare, begin, etc. (§ 121)

Legere (cōnātur)  Legere (potest)  Legi (potest)
(he tries) to read,  (she can) read,  (it can) be read,
(tries) to do reading  (may) be reading  reading (may) be done

¹ When used as the subject of another infinitive (see § 142) the accusative has the same form as the nominative.
Uses of Infinitives

131. As nouns, infinitives stand as subject of verbs meaning be, be allowed, etc., and as predicate nouns.

Velle posse (est)  
Vocāri (licet) § 121 c

to be willing (is) to be able,  
being called (is permitted),

will (is) be able,

(it is permitted) to be called,

to will (is) to be able,

(one may) be called,

willing (is) being able  
calling (may) be done

132. As nouns, infinitives stand in various case relations.

Pāti (cogor) § 155 a  
īre (vetor) § 123 d  
īre (prohibeō)
(I am forced) to let  
(am forbidden) to go  
(am kept) from going

133. As verbs, infinitives take objects, predicates, etc.

Puerōs vocāre (placet)  
Amīcus esse (incipit) § 5 a

calling the boys (is decided on)  
(is decided) to call the boys

(he begins) to be friendly  
(is beginning) to be a friend

134. a. The subject of an infinitive is Accusative.  (p. 4)

Puerōs vocāre (audiō)  
Darī (vīdī)

(I hear) boys call or calling  
(I saw) it (being) given

b. The Historical Infinitive

Where its meaning is unmistakable, the Infinitive is occasionally put for the Indicative, referring to the past.

ille nihil respondēre = ille nihil respondēbat (respondit) or ille nihil respondet (historical present) he did not reply at all.

135. Uses of the Gerund

Fugiendī quae causa est?  what is the cause of (his) fleeing?

Videndī causā eunt they go for the sake of seeing; they go to see

Diēs oppugnandō est dictus a day is set (named) for attacking

Ad cōnandum parātus est he is prepared to try; ready for trying

Hoc reperit in quaerendō he finds out this upon inquiring
136. Present Indicative. Used to represent a thing as an actual occurrence or fact, whether it is true or untrue.

-ā- vocat (he, she, or it) calls, is calling, does call invocation
divorcat (they) call, summon, are calling, do call advocate
divocātur (he) is (being) called, calling is done invoke
divocantur (they) are (being) called, summoned § 187 provoke
divōnātur (he) exerts-himself, tries, is trying, etc. conative
divōnantur (they) exert-themselves, try, are trying § 191

-ē- iubet (he) orders, bids, is ordering, does order jussive

dinuēt (they) order, bid, are ordering, give orders

dinuētus (he) is (being) ordered or bidden, order is given § 192

dinuētus (they) are ordered, are being ordered

dilit is lawful, permission is given, one may leisure

-e- legit (he) reads, picks, is reading, does reading legend
dilegunt (they) read, choose, are reading, do read elect
diligitur (it) is read, picked, reading is done § 197 lesson
diligitur (they) are read, chosen, are being read § 218 lecture
diloquīt (he) speaks, is speaking, does speak colloquy
diloquentur (they) speak, are speaking, do speak colloquial

-i- capi (he) takes, is taking, does take or contain capable
capiunt (they) take, capture, are taking, do take catch
capiitur (it) is taken, capture is made § 202 receive
capiuntur (they) are taken, are being caught receipt

diāt (he) suffers, lets, is letting, does let perpetual
diātuntur (they) suffer, allow, are letting § 206 compassion

-l- audit (he) hears, heeds, is hearing, does hear obedient

diaudiunt (they) hear, heed, are hearing, do hear auditor

diaudītus (it) is heard, attention is paid § 207 auditorium

diaudiuntur (they) are heard, are being heard inaudible

d largitur (he) gives lavishly, gives bribe largess

d largiuntur (they) give-in-self-interest, give bribes large
137. a. Irregular Indicative Forms. §§ 183-6

-ā-:
- dat (he) puts, sends, gives, is giving, does give
dant (they) put, send, give, are giving, do give
datur (it) is put, given, gift is made, giving is done
dantur (they) are put, given, are being given

-ī-:
it (he) goes, travels, is going, does go § 212
eunt (they) go, come, travel, are going, do go
itur traveling is done, they’re going, one goes

-se est (he, she, it) is, (there) is, (it) belongs § 183
sunt (they) are, (there) are, (they) belong
potest (he) is able, can, may, is powerful
possunt (they) are able, can, may, are powerful

-le vult (he) wishes, is determined, will, is willing
volunt (they) wish, will, are determined, willing
nōn vult (he) does not wish, will not, is unwilling
nōlunt (they) do not wish, will not, are unwilling
māvult (he) wishes rather, will rather, prefers
mālunt (they) wish rather, will sooner, prefer

b. Rule for changing the Present Indicative to the Present Subjunctive.

In the -ā- verbs, change the -ā- to -ē- § 170
In -le and -se verbs, the sign is -ī- § 140
In all others, insert the sign -ā- § 136-9

Servus sum Scholasticī. Tenē mē nē fugiam domō.
c. The Indicative must be changed to the Subjunctive in many situations. See §§ 139, 140–3.

Direct Statement (or Discourse) Indirect Statement. § 143
Eae parvae videntur, quod Sciō eās parvās viderī, quod tantum spatiun absunt tantum spatiun absint
... seem small, because they are so great a distance away
Is agrum Sēquanum, qui Legō eum agrum Sēquanum, qui erat optimus, occupāvit esset optimus, occupāvisse
(I read that)—he seized the Sequanian land which was the best
Ubi tū fuisti? § 183 c Scimus ubi fueris
where were you? we know where you were

d. The Truth The Opposite of the Truth
Is nōn vocāverat § 187 Sī mē vocāvisset,
Ego nōn audīveram § 207 ego audīvissem § 156
If he had called me, I should have heard (him)

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

138. a. The Subjunctive Mode is a form of the verb used to represent an action not as actually occurring but as wished for, as uncertain or unlikely, but possible.

We may say either:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IND.</th>
<th>SUB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) I insist that the boy starts early; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) I insist that the boy start early</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

according to which we mean. The first gives the impression that I know the boy starts early, and therefore insist that it is true. The second shows that the boy does not start early now, but that I intend that he shall hereafter.
b. We use the Subjunctive when we suppose true what we know to be false or unlikely, simply in order to discuss what might happen under such circumstances, as:

(3) I wish I were rich. I would travel.
   (Giving the impression that I am not and will not.)
(4) If I had a million, I would travel.
   (I have not and therefore will not.)
(5) He would lift it, if he could.
   (He probably will not; likely cannot.)
(6) If he were behind that screen, he would hear what I say.
   (Likely is not and will not.)

The Present Subjunctive, start (2) points to the future. The Past Subjunctives, were, would, had, and could (3, 4, 5, 6), refer to the same time as the Present Indicatives, am, will, have, can, and is.

c. It is a mistake to imagine that the words that and if are used more with the Subjunctive than with the Indicative.

(7) If he is behind that screen, he hears what I say.
(8) If he was behind that screen, he heard what I said.
(9) If he has been behind it, he has heard what I said.
(10) If he gets behind that screen, he will hear what I say.

Is, hears, was, heard, has, gets, and will are all Indicative to show that I do not wish to imply that I care anything about his presence behind the screen. Gets and say (Pres. Ind.) in (10) refer to the future.

d. The Subjunctive lurks (usually unnoticed) in many corners of books, lectures, speeches, legal documents, and newspapers and is sometimes heard in the spontaneous utterances of many who make no pretense of fine distinctions.
**Indicative Forms**

Thy kingdom comes.
Thy will is done.
He pays his debts.
It is known that, . . .
He went home at eight.
He could not read it.
He would not answer.
I had often seen it there.
He was here yesterday.
We sit down. We go home.

**Subjunctive Forms**

"Thy kingdom come."
"Thy will be done."
They insist that he pay it now.
Be it known that, . . .
It is time he went home.
It is time he could.
He would, if he could.
Had I only seen it in time, etc.
(I) Would that he were here now!
"Sit we down."
"Go we home."

**e. Substitutes and Periphrases**

In many expressions the Subjunctive is unnecessary and we substitute the Indicative; or we get at the same meaning in a roundabout way by using *may, can, shall, will*, etc., with the Infinitive. §§ 121–3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modern Periphrases</th>
<th>Earlier Subjunctives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I hope he starts early.</td>
<td>I desire that he start early.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I hope he may start early.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I hope he can start early.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I hope he will start early.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I hope he is to start early.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let it be known, etc.</td>
<td>Be it known, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let his will be done.</td>
<td>His will be done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let us sit down. Let us go.</td>
<td>Sit we down. Go we.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**f.** The Latin Subjunctive is more used than ours.

1. It is often translated by the English Indicative.
2. The Latin Subjunctive must often be rendered in a roundabout way by using *may, can, is to, shall, and must*, followed by infinitives.
Comparison of Subjunctive Forms

139. Present Subjunctive. Used to represent something (not as actually occurring but) as looked forward to, desired, conceived of as possible, or supposed. §§ 137 c, 188, 198, 203

-à- vocet (he, she, or it) call, be calling, do call 
  vocent (they) call, summon, be calling, do call 
  vocētur (he) be called, calling be done § 156 b 
  vocentur (they) be called, (shall) be summoned
  cōnētur (he) exert-himself, try, be trying, etc.
  cōnentur (they) exert-themselves, try, be trying § 191

-ē- iubeat (he) order, bid, be ordering, do order 
  iubeant (they) order, bid, be ordering, give orders 
  iubeātur (he) be ordered or hidden, order be given § 193 
  iubeantur (they) be ordered, (should) be ordered
  liceat it be lawful, permission be given, one may

-e- legat (he) read, pick, be reading, do reading 
  legant (they) read, choose, be reading, do read 
  legātur (it) be read, picked, reading be done § 218 
  legantur (they) be read, chosen, (may) be read
  loquātur (he) speak, be speaking, do speak 
  loquantur (they) speak, be speaking, do speak grandiloquent

-i- capiat (he) take, be taking, do take, or contain 
  capiant (they) take, capture, be taking, do take 
  capiātur (it) be taken, capture be made 
  capiantur (they) be taken, captured, caught 
  patiātur (he) suffer, let, be letting, do let
  patiantur (they) suffer, allow, be letting

-i- audiat (he) hear, heed, be hearing, do hear 
  audiant (they) hear, heed, be hearing, do hear 
  audiātur (it) be heard, attention be paid 
  audiantur (they) be heard, would be heard § 208 
  largiātur (he) give lavishly, give bribe, bribe largesses
140. The Present Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs. § 185

-a- det (he) put, send, give, be giving, do give
dent (they) put, send, give, be giving, do give
dētur (it) be put, given, gift be made, giving be done
dentur (they) be put, given, should be given

-l- eat (he) go, travel, be going, do go § 213
cant (they) go, come, travel, be going, do go
cātur traveling be done, they be going, one go

-se sit (he, she, it) be, (there) be, (it) belong
sint (they) be, (there) be, (they) belong
possit (he) be able, (can), be powerful, may
possint (they) be able, (can), be powerful, may

-le velit (he) wish, be determined, will, be willing
velint (they) wish, will, be determined, willing
nōlit (he) do not wish, will not, be unwilling
nōlint (they) do not wish, will not, be unwilling
mālit (he) wish rather, will rather, prefer
mālint (they) wish rather, would sooner, prefer

Villa Rōmāna ad mare.
141. In independent clauses the Latin Subjunctive has to be rendered in a roundabout way in English — usually by the subjunctive or imperative or by will, shall, may, can, do, let, etc., followed by the infinitive. §§ 121–3

a. 

Negative nē

Exhortation Exspectēmus (wait we !), let us wait § 188
(1st person) Nē exspectēmus (wait we not!), let us not wait
Prohibition Nē exspectēs wait thou not! don’t wait! (less used
(2d person) than nōlī exspectāre or nē exspectā! don’t wait!)
Command Exspectet (wait he !), he shall wait, let him wait!
(3d person) Nē exspectet (wait he not!), let him not wait!
Concession Exspectet, mē vidēre nōn potest should-he-wait or
granted-that-he-wait, he cannot see me
Wish, Hope Ō sī exspectet! Utinam exspectet! oh that he
may wait! (I) would that he may wait!
Utinam nē exspectet! oh that he may not wait!

b. 

Negative nōn

Deliberation Mārcus exspectet? Mark wait? shall Mark wait?
Possibility Cūr nōn exspectet? why will (would) he not wait?
Cf. § 156 b Exspectem, sī rogētur I would wait, if it should be
asked; I could or might wait if a request be made
Nōn exspectem, nisi rogētur I’ll not wait, unless
it be asked or unless a request be made

142. When a former thought (statement, question, command) is mentioned in the course of a new statement or question, (a) its form is changed; See p. 4, notes
(b) its asserting, asking, or commanding power is lost, and
(c) it becomes the subject or object of a verb, or is used as a predicate noun or an appositive. §§ 152–5
In a Direct Statement or Declaration the main verb is changed to the Infinitive with the Subject Accusative.

Direct: Pueri eunt  
Liber fertur § 212
   a. the boys go, are going the book is (being) brought

Indirect: Puerōs ire¹ patitur  
Librum ferri¹ patitur
   he lets the boys go allows the book to be brought

Puerōs ire¹ videt  
Librum ferri¹ videt
   he sees the boys go he sees the book (be)¹ brought
   sees the boys (be) going the book (being)¹ brought
   notices (that) the boys go (that) the book is brought

Nūntiātur puerōs ire  
Librum ferri oportet
   that the boys go is re- that the book be brought is
   ported; word is brought necessary; it is necessary
   that the boys are going that the book be brought

Direct: Quis it? who is going?  
Quid furtur? what is brought?

Indirect: Quem² ire dicit?  
Quid ferri videt?
   whom does he declare to what does he see brought?
   be going? is going? what does he see is brought?

143. In Indirect Questions and Commands the main verb, if Indicative or Imperative, is changed to the Subjunctive.

Direct. Quis it? who is going?  Íte, pueri go, boys!

Indirect. Quaerit quis³ eat asks who is going § 138 d, e

Indirect Commands may stand in any person

Dicit eāmus⁴ says we may⁵ go or we must⁶ go § 141
Dicit eātis says you shall⁷ go or you may go § 213
Dicit eant says they shall go or let them go

¹ Ire and ferri no longer assert; the only assertions are patitur and videt.
² The interrogative, quem, still asks. ³ Quis no longer asks. ⁴ eāmus, eātis, and eant mention a former command without commanding (§ 142 b).
⁵ Some commands merely give permission, ⁶ others urge, ⁷ others order.
144. An interrogative word may be used in a sentence to ask for any element that is represented as unknown.

145. The whole sentence may be turned into a question by using the Latin *Question Marks* -ne? ec-? and Num?

**Galba Titō amicus est** Galba is friendly to Titus

**Galbam aliquid movet** it moves or influences Galba somewhat

(a) Questions seeking information.

The question marks -ne or ec- are attached to the first word in Latin, contain the word not or no.

**Galbane Titō amicus est?** is Galba a friend to Titus?

**Ecquid Galbam movet?** does it affect Galba at all?

(b) Questions asked for effect — making it appear that the speaker expects the answer “yes.”

The Latin sentence begins with Nōn or Nihil, etc., and -ne is attached to the first word.

**Nōnne Galba Titō amicus est?** is Galba not friendly to Titus?

Galba is friendly to Titus (isn’t he)?

**Nihilne Galbam movet?** doesn’t it affect Galba at-all?

(c) Questions asked for effect — making it appear that the speaker expects the answer “no.”

With the sign Num? but does not contain -ne? nor ec-? nor the words nōn nor nihil.

A virtual exclamation, or may contain the word not and a positive parenthesis.

**Num Galba Titō amicus est?** Galba is a friend to Titus!

Galba isn’t friendly to Titus (is he)?

**Num quid Galbam movet?** does it affect Galba at all?

it doesn’t affect Galba at all (does it)?
146. In English many noun clauses are introduced by *that*. There are three ways of expressing such clauses in Latin:

1. *that* (not expressed) Infinitive with subject Accusative;
2. *that* = ut (uti), quō or (timēre) nē with the Subjunctive; *that* — not = nē, quō minus or quīn, (timēre) ut or (verērī) nē nōn with the Subjunctive.
3. *that* = quod with the Indicative.

The nature and meaning of the governing word must be taken into consideration in order to determine whether such a clause is represented

(a) as an actual occurrence or fact;

*Dominum abesse* dicit *he says (that) the master is away*

or as something sure to be executed, if commanded or willed;

*Dominum vocāri iubet* *he orders that the master be called,* or

*Dominum vocāri vult* *he wishes the master to be called* (§ 127)

or as an Indirect Question or Command;

*Quid cōnsiliī sit ostendit* *he shows what the plan is.***

*Dicit puerōs vocent* *he says they shall call the boys.* § 143

(b) as something (not yet occurring) looked forward to;

*Postulant ut vocētur* they request *that he be called*

or as something likely to result from the nature of the case;

*Cōnsuētūdō est, ut eōs iuvet* *his custom is that he aid them.*

*Nōn dubitō quīn eat* I don’t doubt but *he is going,* *I have no hesitation about why he shall not go.***

(c) a cause mentioned by way of explanation, etc.

*Causa mittendi est, quod eōs vocāri vult* *the cause of sending (him) is, that he wishes them (to be) called.*
147. a. An *ut*-clause often stands for the direct object.
Id eis persuādet Eīs persuādet *ut* exeant
(that them persuades-he) (them persuades-he that out-go-they)
*he persuades*them (*that*) *so* persuades them *that* they shall leave

b. The indicative is used with *ut*, *utī* as or when.
Puerī, *ut* audiō, ire nōlunt the boys, as *I hear*, will not go.

c. Use the Subjunctive with *ut*, *utī* *that* and *quī* *that*-he.
Hortor, *ut* rogēt Mittuntur, *quī* id ā Titō postulent
*I urge* *that he ask* (men) are sent, *that*-they (may) ask it
of Titus
(persons) are dispatched to ask it of Titus.

d. With the indicative *dum* means while.
*Dum* haec geruntur, eō pervēnit,

*while these (things) were* going on, *he arrived there.*

With the Subjunctive *dum* may be translated till.
Exspectāvit *dum* militēs ex provinciā conveniērent
*he waited till soldiers came* together from the province or
*till soldiers could* (§ 141) assemble from the province.

e. The following verbs frequently take clauses introduced by *ut* as direct object instead of a noun or pronoun. § 153
imperāre 1. *demand* 3p 4t; 3p and *ut* with the Subjunctive
suādēre 2. *advise, recommend* persuādēre 3p 4t; 3p, *ut* w. Sub.
hortāri 1. *urge* 4 or *ut* w. Sub. cohortāri *encourage, urge on*
petere 3. *seek, ask, go after* ab 6p, 4t or *ut* with the Subjunctive
postulāre 1. *request, demand* 4t ā, ab p; ā, ab, p, *ut* w. Sub. § 230
impetrāre 1. *get by asking, obtain, ask and get* 4t, ā, ab p
rogāre 1. *ask* and *flāgitāre ask insistently* 4p 4t; (ut w. Sub.)
quaerere 3. *inquire, 4t, ē, ex* or ā, ab p *exquirere seek out*
f. Primary or Principal Sequence of Tenses.

Pres. Hoc facit he is doing this
Perf. Hoc fecit he has done this ut nōs terrēat that he may
Fut. Hoc faciet he will do it frighten us; to frighten us.
Futp. Hoc fecerit will have done it

Hostium tanta est ut ad arma capienda
celeritās the enemy’s tempus dēsit that there is
quickness is so great, no time to take up arms

Ita celeriter prō-
currunt they run non dētur that time to hurl
forward so quickly, javelins is not given

Agger.

g. Secondary or Historical Succession of Tenses.

Imp. Id faciebat was doing it Cf. § 148
Perf. Id fecit did do or did it ut nōs terreret that he might
Plup. Id fecerat had done it frighten us; to frighten us.

Hostium tanta fuit ut ad galeās induendās temp-
celeritās so great was pus dēfuerit that there was no
the enemy’s quickness, time to put on helmets § 181 b

Ita celeriter prōcu-
currēre they came non dārētur that time to seize
on so quickly, weapons was not given
148. Purpose Clauses

(in order) that, (in order) to = ut, uti, quod, quod plus, qui, etc., with the Subjunctive. §§ 139-40

(in order) that...not, (in order) not to = nee, quod minus with the Subjunctive.

a. Hoc faciunt, ut servos terrent they do this (in order) that they may terrify the servants or (in order) to terrify the servants

b. Hoc facit, quod inimicos prohibeat he does this (in order) that (by it) he may keep enemies away or (in order) to keep, etc.

c. Hoc facit, ne inimici servos terrent he does this that enemies may not frighten the slaves

d. Hoc facit, quod minus servos terrent—that (on-account-of-it) they may not frighten the slaves so much or that they may frighten the servants less or may not frighten, etc.

e. Hoc facit, quod plus pabuli habeat he does it (in-order-) that (by-this-means) he may have more fodder or to have more

f. Hoc facit, quod facilium hostis prohibeat... (in-order-) that (-by-this-means) he may keep the enemy away more easily or (in-order-by-this-means-) to keep the enemy away more easily

g. Marcum mittit, qui hostis prohibeat sends Mark (in-order) that—he may stop the enemy or sends Mark to stop the enemy

h. Nihil habet, quod pabulum vehat he has nothing on-which he may carry fodder or has nothing to carry fodder on § 115 a

i. Non habent, quod fugiant they have no (place) to-which they may flee or they have no (place) to flee to § 119 d

j. Non habet, ubi pabulum ponat he has not where he may put fodder § 119 e

k. Non habet, unde pabulum comparet he has no (source) from which he may get fodder or to get fodder from § 119 f
Clauses of Purpose and Result

Result Clauses

149. Result Clauses are usually foreshadowed by some word meaning so or such; as the Latin sic, ita so, in such a manner, tam so, tantum so much, etc.

so . . . that = sic . . . ut, ita . . utì or tam . . quī with so that not = ut nōn; (such) that not = quī nōn not so . . that not, not so . . but = nōn tam . . quī the Sub-

a. Tam multī sunt, ut servōs terrent there are so many that they
frighten the slaves or so many as to frighten the slaves
b. Tam pauci sunt, utī inimicōs nōn terrent they are so few that they do not terrify their enemies; so few as not to terrify, etc.
c. Ita dicit, quō servōs terreat he is speaking in-such-a-manner that- (by-it) he is terrifying the slaves; so as to terrify, etc.
d. Nēmō tam audāx est, quī id facere cōnētur no one is so bold that-he would try to do it or so bold as to try to do it § 139

e. Nēmō tam fortis est, quīn interdum terreātur no one is so brave but that he is terrified at times; so brave as not to, etc.
f. Tantulum est, quod carrō vehātur there is so little that-it, etc.
g. Nōn tantum est, quīn carrō vehātur there is not so much but-it can be carried on a cart. § 115 a

150. SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>plūs § 72 minor</td>
<td>minor</td>
<td>minus § 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>plūris § 73</td>
<td>minōris</td>
<td>minōris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>minōri</td>
<td>minōri</td>
<td>minōri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>plūs § 68 a</td>
<td>minōrem</td>
<td>minōrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>minor</td>
<td>minor</td>
<td>minus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>plūre</td>
<td>minōre</td>
<td>minōre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. plúrēs</td>
<td>plúrēs</td>
<td>plúra</td>
<td>minórēs</td>
<td>minórēs</td>
<td>minóra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. plúrium</td>
<td>plúrium</td>
<td>plúrium</td>
<td>minórum</td>
<td>minórum</td>
<td>minórum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. plúribus</td>
<td>plúribus</td>
<td>plúribus</td>
<td>minóribus</td>
<td>minóribus</td>
<td>minóribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. plúris</td>
<td>plúris</td>
<td>plúra</td>
<td>minórēs</td>
<td>minórēs</td>
<td>minóra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. plúrēs</td>
<td>plúrēs</td>
<td>plúra</td>
<td>minórēs</td>
<td>minórēs</td>
<td>minóra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. plúribus</td>
<td>plúribus</td>
<td>plúribus</td>
<td>minóribus</td>
<td>minóribus</td>
<td>minóribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

plús more, more (value) too much minus less, less (value) too little,
plúrēs more (persons), several not so much, not (§ 148 d)
plúribus praesentibus when too minórēs younger (persons),
many were present § 96 a, quid minors, descendants
plúra? why more (things)? maiórēs older (men), elders

Descriptive and Characteristic Clauses

151. a. A Descriptive Clause seeks to describe or identify a
person or thing that is already in mind. (Verb Indicative.)

Hic est, quí Márcum laudat this is (the one) who praises Mark
Multi sunt, quí id volúnt there are many, who wish that
(Flúmen) quod in Rhodanum influit that flows into the Rhone

b. A Characteristic Relative Clause seeks persons or things
to fit a particular description that it contains.
(Verb Subjunctive.)

Nón is est, quí Titum laudet he is not one, that praises Titus
Multi sunt, quí id velínt there are many who (would) wish this
Quis est, quí eum laudet? who is there that would praise him?
who is there (such) that he praises him? § 115 a
Némō est, quín eum laudet there is no-one but will praise him
there is no-one who would not praise him
152. a. Noun Clauses are used as Subject or Predicate.

Eōs vocārī oportet that they be called is necessary, etc. § 131
Fit ut veniat that he come happens; it happens that he comes
Concēditur uti eant that they go is granted; permission is given...

b. Noun Clauses are used as Predicate Nouns.

Suspiciō est id dōlō fieri the suspicion is that it is done slyly
Condiciō est ut nunc eat the condition is that he go now
Causa est quod insidiās verētur the reason is that he fears ambush

153. Noun Clauses are used as Direct Object.

Eōs ingredi prohibet he keeps them from entering §§ 123, 132
Eōs nōn dēterret, quīn ingrediāntur he does not prevent them from
entering; does not stop them so that they may not enter
Id eīs facile persuādet he persuades them this easily § 74, 4, 6
Eīs persuādet Mārcum abesse he persuades them (that) Mark
is away

Cf. § 146 a, e

Eīs persuādet utī ēxēant he persuades them that they should leave
Nōn dubitō eōs vocārī I (believe) don’t doubt their being called
Nōn dubitō quīn vocentūr I don’t doubt but they are called
Timeō nē veniat (I doubt his not coming) I fear that he will come
Timeō ut veniat (I doubt his coming) I fear that he will not come
Nōn timeō nē nōn veniat I don’t fear that he will not come
154. Noun Clauses are used in Apposition with certain words; as, id it, this; illud that (this) or the following; hoc or eō (Abl.) on account of this, for the reason.

ea ratiōne, ea dē causā for this reason, etc. § 74, 15

hoc . . . . . . . quod . . .
eō . . . . . . . quod . . . for the reason, that . . . ,
proptereā . . . quod . . . on account of this, that . . . ,
ea dē causā . . quod . . .
eō cōnsiliō . . ut . . . with the intention that; cf. § 96 a

Id nūntiātur, eōs morāri it is reported that they are delaying
Id contendunt, nē ēnūntiētur they seek this, that it be not told
Venit eō cōnsiliō, ut mē videat comes with the idea of seeing me
Id eō magis faciunt, quod abest they are doing this all-the more
because he is away

Hoc facilius eīs persuādet, quod continentur he persuades them
the more easily because they are hemmed in

Eō proptereā minus ētī potest, quod abīt he cannot use it so well
for the reason that he is going away § 182 b

Id eā dē causā facit, quod abīre vult he is doing this for the rea-
son that he wishes to go away

Satis est causae, quā rē domum revertātur there is enough (of)
reason (§ 72) why he should go back home

Lupa.
Nihil est causae quin eat there is no reason why he should not go
Multa hortantur, qua re eat many (things) on account of which
fact he should go are pressing-upon him; there are many reasons
why he should go § 115 c
Recusat nē morētur he gives back reason that he may not delay
Recusat quō minus morētur (he gives reason on-account-of-
which he should delay not-so-much); he refuses to delay
(§§ 68 a, 150) [-cūsā- = causa]
Non recusat quō minus eat (he makes no refusal whereby he shall
go any less); he does not refuse to go § 219, 1
Non recusat quin eat he gives no reason why he should not go;
he does not refuse to go

155. a. Object Clauses are retained with passive verbs.
Mē nōmen rogat he asks me my name (Direct Object retained
Ego nōmen rogor I am asked my name with the passive.)
Certior fit eōs ire (he is made aware that they are going) he is
informed that they are going § 230

b. Noun Clauses are used in various case relations.
Ā maleficiō non temperant they do not refrain from mischief
Pueri sibi nōn temperant, quin iniuriās īnferant the boys do not
put restraint upon themselves on-account-of-which they will
not inflict injuries; do not refrain from inflicting § 115 b
Servōs dēterrent nē frumentum cōnferant they dissuade slaves so
that they will not bring grain; keep slaves from bringing grain
Non dēterrentur, quin frumentum ērunt they are not dissuaded
from bringing grain
Retinentur, quō minus nōbīs iniuriās īnferant they are kept from
inflicting injuries upon us § 74, 4, 6
Non retinentur, quin nōbīs iniuriās īnferant they are not kept
from inflicting injuries upon us § 230
156. a. Simple Conditions
Nothing implied. See § 138 c. 
Indicative (or Imperative).
Si eum rogō,
Quem sī rogō, venit
Mē rogante,
if I ask him, he comes.
Si cōnsentiētis itūra sum
if you (will) agree, I shall go;
sīn recūsābitis, ire nōlō
but-if you refuse, I will not.
Etsī vōs vidit, tamen nōn dīxit
even-if he did see you, say so
Nisi rogātus erit, nōn ibō
unless he’s asked I’ll not go.
b. Contingent Conditions
Fulfillment regarded possible.
Present or Perfect Subjunctive.
Si rogētur, veniat or
sī rogātus sit vēnerit
if he should he would be asked, come § 141 b

c. Contrary to Fact or Unreal Conditions. See § 138 b.
Imp. or Plup. Subjunctive.
Si rogārētur, venīret § 137 d
were he asked, he would come.
Nisi rogātus esset, nōn vēnisset
had he not he wouldn’t been asked, have come.

157. a. Both Third and Fourth Declension nouns are formed on the participial stems of verbs. See § 163 c.
Supines are Fourth Declension noun forms. (Cf. § 129.)
Vocātūs audiō Cōnātūs tuōs compressī Cōnātū dēsistit
I hear calls I foiled thy attempts desists from-trying

b. The Accusative Singular of Supines is used (chiefly after mittere, venīre, and īre) to denote Purpose. §§ 195 d, 196 d
Venit auxilium rogātum (Cf. Domum it Rōmam vēnīt
comes to-ask aid § 61 b goes home came to-Rome)

c. The Ablative often denotes in what respect, etc. § 190 d
Facile est rogātū (§ 74–16). (Cf. Virtūte praestāns
is easy (in the asking) to-ask excelling in-bravery)
d. In petendō or In pāce petendā versātur or in petitiōne in petitiōne pācis versātur § 107 b, c in or upon seeking is busied or active in seeking peace

e. Facile factū easy to do Miserābile visū pitiable to see Eius rogātū at his request Cōnāri dēsistunt cease to-try (Erat) dīficilī trānsitū flūmen a river of difficult passage

158. A Gerundive and its noun are treated as a single noun and declined together.

a. Pōns (faciendus) est there is a-bridge (-to-be-built)
b. Ratiō pontis (faciendi) the plan of (-building-) the-bridge
c. Dīēs pontī faciendō dictus day set for the-bridge-to-be-built a day set for building-the-bridge
d. Ad (pontem) faciendum tempus deest time to-build (-the-bridge) is lacking; there-is-no-time for building-a-bridge
e. Pontem (faciendum) cūrat he sees to (the-building-of-) a-bridge
f. Dē ponte (facciendō) dēspērat despairs of (-building-) a-bridge

159. Purpose is expressed in many ways.

a. Lēgātōs mittit pācem petītum § 157 b
b. Lēgātōs ad pācem petendam mittit § 158 d He sends envoys
c. Lēgātōs pācis petendae causā mittit cf. § 129 to seek a settlement
d. Lēgātōs, quī pācem petant, mittit § 148 g

e. Lēgātōs, utī pācem petant, mittit § 148 a
f. Lēgātōs dē pāce (petendā) mittit § 58

g. Equitēs eīs auxiliō misit sent cavalry for aid to them § 73 e

THE VERB

160. Every one who learns Latin thoroughly, sooner or later comes to summarize the essential facts about verbs in the way most convenient for himself and reduce them to the smallest possible compass, somewhat as follows:
Essential Facts

161. A Latin verb is built up of three kinds of elements:
1. *Stems* (containing the root of the word). § 163
2. *Mode and Tense Signs.* §§ 164–7
3. *Endings* (showing the person and number of the subject). § 168

The Principal Parts of verbs are necessary in order
(a) to know to which class the verb belongs, § 169
(b) to be able to get the stems, and thus
(c) build up any other form we wish to use.

A great deal of confusion is avoided by learning the list of *-io* verbs given below, since they are the only verbs whose present stem cannot be obtained from the present infinitive active by dropping -re. § 126

162. Stems in -i- or -io- verbs (Third Conjugation).

capiō, capere;¹ -cipiō, -cipere *take, catch* captive, recipient
cupiō, cupere *wish, desire* cupidity, Cupid
faciō, facere; -ficīō, -ficere *make, do, cause* facility, proficient
fodiō, fodere *dig (p.p. fossus dug)* foss, fossil
fugiō fugere *flee* fugitive, refuge
iaciō, iacere; -iciō, -icere *throw, hurl* abject, reject
-liciō, -licere *lure, entice* elicit
pariō, parere *bring forth, bear* parent, apparition
quatiō, quatere; -cutiō, -cutere *shake* quash, concussion
rapiō, rapere; -ripiō, -ripere *snatch, seize* rapid, rapine
sapiō, sapere; -sipiō, -sipere *know (by taste)* sapid, insipid
gradior,² gradī; -gredior, -gredi *walk, go* grade, ingredient
morior, mori *die, perish* mortal, immortal
patior, pati; -petiō, -peti *suffer, let, allow* patient, perpetual

¹ -i- becomes -e- before r. ² -i- disappears before -I.
163. The Three Essential Parts

a. To find the Present Stem, drop -re, -ri, or -i from the Present Infinitive. § 126
b. To find the Perfect Stem, drop -i from the Perf. Ind. Act. 1st person, sing.
c. To find the Supine Stem, drop -us, -a, -um from the Perf. Part. or -um from Ac. Supine. § 157 b

vocō, vocāre vocāvī vocātus -a -um
1 vocā- vocāv- § 99 vocāt-
§ 169 call § 136 having called having been called
§ 169 be calling have called being called § 99

1 cōnā- try § 127 —— cōnātus -a -um
1 cōnari § 127 —— cōnāt- having tried

2 videō vidēre vidi saw visus -a -um § 98
2 vidē- see vid- have seen vis- having been seen

2 vereor verēri —— veritus -a -um § 101
2 verē- fear —— 5 verit- having feared

agō agere ēgī did Cf. § 101actus -a -um
3 age- do ēg- have done act-(having been) done

3 útor úti § 182 būsus -a -um § 98
3 ute- use 5ūs- having used

3 capiō capere § 192 captus -a -um
3 i capi- take cēp- have taken capt-(having been) taken

3 patior pati § 182 bpassus -a -um
3 i pati- let § 182 b pass- having let

4 audiō audire audīvī audītus -a -um
4 audi- audīv- audi-
4 hear have heard having been heard

potior potiri —— potitus -a -um § 211
4 poti- get —— 5 potit- having gotten

1 Also called the Participial Stem. 2 Restore -e-
3 Restore -i- from -e-. 4 Restore -i-; see § 162, note.
5 Deponents (§ 182) have no Perf. stem.
## Mode and Tense Signs

### 164. Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I AND II</th>
<th>III AND IV</th>
<th>LEADING VERBS IN ENGLISH PERIPHERASES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>am —, are —, is —, do —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>-bā-</td>
<td>was —, were —, did —, -ed, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Fut.     | -bi-       | { -ā- (1st sing.) | shall —, will —  
|          |            | { -ē- (others)  |
| Perf.    | — ¹        | (am having —) have —, did —, -ed     |
| Plup.    | -erā-      | (was having —) had —                  |
| Futp.    | -eri-      | (shall be having —) shall have —      |

### 165. Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I CONJ.</th>
<th>ALL OTHERS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>-ē-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>-rē- ²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>-erī- ⁵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>-issē- ⁶</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 166. Imperative

| Pres.    | —          |
| Fut.     | -tō-       |

### 167. a. Participles (Adjectives)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>§ 97</td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ns,</td>
<td>-ns,</td>
<td>-ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ntis,</td>
<td>-ntis,</td>
<td>-ntis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>§ 98</td>
<td>-tus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-ta,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-tum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-d, -ed, -t ⁴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>or -sus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-sa,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-n, -ne, -en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>-ūrus</td>
<td>-ūra,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ūrum</td>
<td>-ndus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-nda,</td>
<td>-ndum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>going to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Perfect stem. ² -sē- and -lā in -sē and -lā verbs. ³ Sometimes. ⁴ As in heard, burnt, seen, done, written. ⁵ si-. ⁶ essē-.
### 168. Endings — Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Acting</th>
<th>Subject Acted upon, or Acting on or for self</th>
<th>Meaning of the Endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present,</td>
<td>-ơ</td>
<td>-or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>-ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect, and Future.¹</td>
<td>-t</td>
<td>-tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-mus</td>
<td>-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-tis</td>
<td>-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-nt</td>
<td>-ntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive (all tenses)</td>
<td>-m</td>
<td>-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>-re, -ris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Future.²</td>
<td>-t</td>
<td>-tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-mus</td>
<td>-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-tis</td>
<td>-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-nt</td>
<td>-ntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect Indicative only.</td>
<td>-ē³</td>
<td>(sum)⁴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-istī</td>
<td>(es)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-it</td>
<td>(est)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-imus</td>
<td>(sumus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-istis</td>
<td>(estis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ērunt, -ēre</td>
<td>(sunt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Imperative.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>-re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-te, etc.</td>
<td>-mini, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 169. Stem Vowels

In the First Conjugation the present stem ends in -ā-. In the Second Conjugation the present stem ends in -ē-. In the Third Conjugation the present stem ends in -e- or -i-. In the Fourth Conjugation the present stem ends in -ī-.

¹ First and Second Conjugations. ² Third and Fourth Conjugations. ³ A modified form of sum, es, est, sumus, estis, sunt. ⁴ Separate words. §§ 99, 101
170. In combining the stems, mode and tense signs, and endings, the vowel changes must be carefully learned.

The signs -bi and -eri- (§ 164)

-bi- and -eri- become -b- and -er- before another vowel;
-bi- becomes -be- before -re and -ris;
-bi- becomes -bu- before -nt and -ntur.

The stem vowels -ā- and -ē-; -ā- and -ē- in tense signs
-ā- becomes -a- before nd, nt, and final -m, -t, or -r.
-ā- disappears before another vowel.
-ē- becomes -e- before nd, nt, or another vowel. § 28 b
-ē- becomes -e- before final -m, -t, or -r.

The stem vowels -e-, -i-, and -i-
-e- disappears before another vowel;¹
-e- remains unchanged before r and nd;
-e- becomes -i- before m, s, or t;
-e- becomes -u- before -nt and -ntur (sometimes before -nd-);
-e- becomes -ē- before -bā-;
-e- becomes -ē- before -ns and -ē- before -ntis, etc. § 28 a
-i- disappears before -i in the Present Infinitive;
-i- becomes -e- before -r- and when final;¹
-i- becomes -iu- before -nt and -ntur; -iē- before -bā-;
-i- becomes -ie- (sometimes -iu- before -nd-);
-i- becomes -iē- before -ns and -ie- before -ntis, etc.
-i- becomes -i- before another vowel (cf. also § 183 a, c);
-i- (not -eri- § 165) becomes -iu- before -nt and -ntur;
-i- becomes -iē- before -bā-; -eri- > -eri-m, -t, -nt.
-i- becomes -ie- (sometimes -iu-) before -nd-;
-i- becomes -iē- before -ns and -ie- before -ntis, etc.

¹ In ferre the stem vowel -e- is lost before r, s, t, or a vowel. Final -e is also lost in the imperative forms, dic, duc, fac, fer. §§ 212–4; B. § 116, 3.
The Formation of the Verb

171.  

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive, Deponent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>Pres. Stem + ὑ, etc. § 168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp.</strong></td>
<td>Pres. Stem + ἄ + ἐ¹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### First and Second Conjugations

| Fut. | Pres. Stem + bi + ὑ | Pres. Stem + bi + or |

#### Third and Fourth Conjugations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres. Stem + ἄ + ἐ² + ἰ, etc.</th>
<th>Pres. Stem + ἄ + ῆ² + ῆ² + ῆ or ῆis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>Perf. Stem + ἰ, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plup.</strong></td>
<td>Perf. Stem + erē + ἐ³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Futp.</strong></td>
<td>Perf. Stem + eri + ὑ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

172.  

### Subjunctive

#### First Conjugation § 137 b

| Pres. | Pres. Stem + ἐ + ἐ², etc. | Pres. Stem + ἐ + ῆ², etc. |

#### All Other Conjugations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres. Stem + ἄ + ἐ³</th>
<th>Pres. Stem + ἄ + ῆ²</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp.</strong></td>
<td>Pres. Stem + ἐ³ + ἐ³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>Perf. Stem + erē + ἐ³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plup.</strong></td>
<td>Perf. Stem + issē + ἐ³</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

173.  

### Imperative

| Pres. Stem | Pres. Stem + re |
| Pres. Stem + te | Pres. Stem + mini |
| Pres. Stem + ῆ² | Pres. Stem + ῆ² § 183 c |
| Pres. Stem + ῆ² | Pres. Stem + ῆ² § 191 b |
| Pres. Stem + tōte | —— |
| Pres. Stem + ntō | Pres. Stem + ntō |

---

¹ § 168.  
² -ἑ- throughout except the first person singular.  
³ -σέ- in esse and its compounds; -ἰε- in velle, nôle, mälle.
174. **Participles (Adjectives)** § 97–104

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active, Deponent</th>
<th>Passive, Deponent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stem +ns -ns -ns</td>
<td>Stem +ntis -ntis -ntis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Part.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stem +us -a -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stem +i ae i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part. +ūrus-ūra -ūrum</td>
<td>Stem +ndus -nda -ndum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stem +ūrf -ūrae -ūrf</td>
<td>Stem +ndī -ndae -ndī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

175. **Gerund (Noun)** Pres. Stem + ndī, etc. § 129

176. **Supine (Noun)** Part. or Sup. Stem + us, -ūs, etc. § 81 a

177. **Infinitives (Nouns)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive, Deponent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>Pres. Stem + re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pres. Stem + rī (I, II, IV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pres. Stem + i (III Conj.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>Perf. Stem + isse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Active, Deponent</strong></td>
<td>P. P. and esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>Fut. Part. and esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. Supine and ēre</td>
<td>P. P. and fore § 183 e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ac. Supine and ērī § 215 g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

178. **Contractions**

-v-, -ve-, -vē-, and -vi- are often omitted; § 217 c.

179. The Active Voice represents the **subject as acting**.

Act. Puer librum domum fert the boy is-taking the book home.

180. a. The Passive Voice represents the **subject as acted upon**. The passive developed from the Middle Voice (which represents the **subject as acting upon itself**) as follows:

b. The reflexive pronoun sē self was annexed to active verbs, as fert is-carrying, making *fertise is-carrying-him-
*self*, which became (*fertere, then *ferter, then* furtur; -s- between vowels becoming -r-; cf. *was* and *were,* *us* and *our* (formerly *ure,* then *oure*).

c. Furtur had to mean not only *he-carries-himself* or *ruses,* but also *he-is carried* (by something or somebody), e.g. *Mid.* Puer in domum furtur *the boy takes-himself to the house.*
Pass. Liber a puerō furtur *a book is-being-brought by the boy.*

181. a. But *sē* reappears elsewhere in the sentence, as in Puer sē domum cōnfert *the boy is-betaking-himself to his home.*
Sē parātum arbitrātur (for-himself) *he considers himself ready.*

b. Middle forms still replace *sē* in some verbs.

Domōs revertuntur
*In flūmine lavātur*
*(turn-themselves-back home), they return to their homes.*
*(he washes-self in the river), he bathes in the river.*

Galeam induitur
Gladium cingitur
*he puts a helmet on-self,*
*he puts his helmet on.*
*he girds a sword on-himself,*
*he girds his sword on.*

182. a. Deponent verbs have lost the active forms.

Inimicōs verētur
Librīs ūtitur
*he dreads the enemies down-in-his-heart or he fears his ene-
mies.*
*he avails-himself of books,*
*he enjoys-himself with books,*
*he makes-use of or uses books.*

Graditūr
Gladiō potitūr
*he is-moving-himself gradually,*
*is-taking-steps, comes, goes.*
*he takes possession of a sword,*
*he makes-himself-able with a sword,*
*he gets hold of or gets a sword.*

b. The verbs, ūtī *help-self* and potīrī *make-self-able,* and a few others take the Ablative Case. See Int. 5, i; also § 56, 6.
183. sum, esse, fui, — possum, posse, potui, —

am | be | was | been | am | able | be | able | was | able

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ind.</th>
<th>a.</th>
<th>Sub.</th>
<th>Ind.</th>
<th>b.</th>
<th>Sub.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>sim I be, may be</td>
<td>possum</td>
<td>I can</td>
<td>possim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>art</td>
<td>sis thou be</td>
<td>potes</td>
<td>thou</td>
<td>canst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>sit he</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>§ 137 c</td>
<td>potest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>símus</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>possimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estis</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>sitis</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>potestis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>sint</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>§ 28 b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect (continuing in the past)**

| eram | was | essem | were ¹ | poteram | could | or | possem | might, |
| erás | wast | essēs | were | poterās | was | possēs | could | or |
| erat | was | esset | were | poterat | able | posset | were ² |
| erāmus | were | essēmus | were | poterāmus | possēmus | able |
| erātis | were | essētis | were | poterātis | possētis |
| erant ³ | were | essent ³ | were | poterant ⁴ | possent ⁴ |

**Future**

erō I shall be cf. § 170 -bi-

| eris | thou | wilt | be | poteris | will | be | able |
| erit | he | will | be | poterit | will | be | able | § 156 a |
| erimus | we | will | be | poterimus | shall | be | able |
| eritis | you | will | be | poteritis | will | be | able |
| erunt | they | will | be | poterunt | will | be | able |

¹ Sometimes might be, should be, or would be; ² might be able, should be able, would be able. ³ Note that -s- of the stem es- becomes -r- between vowels; cf. the English is and are, was and were. ⁴ Note that the element pot- able becomes pos- before -s-; ts becomes ss or s in Latin.

* Forms underlined are the Principal Parts (§ 161). Note that, both in meaning and use, they correspond to the Principal Parts of English verbs, but that the meaning of the Latin forms is broader. See §§ 98–9: 101, 121–3; 127–135.
### The -se Verbs

**c. Perfect** (finished in the past)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuī I was</td>
<td>fuerim were</td>
<td>potui I could</td>
<td>potuerim could</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuistī was</td>
<td>fuerīs were</td>
<td>potuistī couldst</td>
<td>potuerīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuit was</td>
<td>fuerīt were § 28 b</td>
<td>potuit could</td>
<td>potuerit § 156 b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuimus were</td>
<td>fuerīmus were</td>
<td>potuimus could</td>
<td>potuerīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuistis were</td>
<td>fuerītis were</td>
<td>potuistis could</td>
<td>potuerītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuērunt or</td>
<td>fuerint were</td>
<td>potuērunt or</td>
<td>potuerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuēre were</td>
<td></td>
<td>potuēre could</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect** § 156 c

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fueram had</td>
<td>fuissem had been</td>
<td>potueram had</td>
<td>potuissem had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerās been</td>
<td>fuisseōs</td>
<td>potuerās been</td>
<td>potuisseōs been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerat</td>
<td>fuisset</td>
<td>potuerat able</td>
<td>potuisset able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerāmus</td>
<td>fuisseōmus</td>
<td>potuerāmus</td>
<td>potuisseōmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerātis</td>
<td>fuisseōtis</td>
<td>potuerātis</td>
<td>potuisseōtis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerant</td>
<td>fuisseōnt</td>
<td>potuerant</td>
<td>potuisseōnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuerō I shall have been</td>
<td>potuerō I shall have been able</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueris</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit § 156 a</td>
<td>potuerit § 156 a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueritis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerint</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>es be (thou)</td>
<td>estō 4 estôte 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>este be (ye)</td>
<td>estō 5 suntō 5 § 173</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participles** (Adjectives)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>potēns -ns -ns (being) able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>futūrus -a -um</td>
<td>§§ 84, 102, -se</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1 or have been; 2 or have been able.
4 Thou shalt be, ye shall be.
5 In Eng. entity.
6 He shall be, they shall be.
General Survey of Forms

e.  

INFINITIVE (Noun)

Pres. esse (to) be, being posse (to) be able, being able
Perf. fuisse (to) have been potuisse (to) have been able
Fut. futūrus esse or — fore

184. dō, dare, dedī, datus, §§ 98, 121 b, 128
give gave given

INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Act.</th>
<th>Pass.</th>
<th>Participle (Adjectives)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dat</td>
<td>datur</td>
<td>dans § 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dabat</td>
<td>dabātur</td>
<td>datūrus § 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dabit</td>
<td>dabitur</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dedit</td>
<td>datus est</td>
<td>dare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dederat</td>
<td>datus erat</td>
<td>dane § 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dederit</td>
<td>datus erit</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GERUND (Noun)  GERUNDIVE (Adj.)

Supine (Noun)

Subjunctive

Ac. datum | datum ībat was
Ab. datū § 157 b, c | going to give

Infinitive (Noun)

Pres. dare (to) give | dare (to) be put
Perf. dedisse | datus esse
Fut. datūrus esse | datus fore or
datum īre | datum īri

Imperative

dā, date, etc., cf. § 189

Cf. §§ 103 d, 215 g

---

1 to be going to be (the only Fut. Inf. having a single word form), cf. § 130 b.
2 The only short vowel in Latin before -bā- or -bi-; the only short a in Latin verbs before -mus -tis or before -tur -mur -mini occur in the forms of dare and its compound circumdare.
3 Only the forms dās givest and dā give (thou) have -ā- in the stem.
The -se Verbs

185. a. désum, deesse; absum, abesse, etc. (see § 183).

am lacking 3 am away ab 6 § 221 b
fail § 56, 3 am absent or wanting

Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ind.</th>
<th>a.</th>
<th>Sub.</th>
<th>Ind.</th>
<th>b.</th>
<th>Sub.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>désum fail⁴</td>
<td>désim fail</td>
<td>absum am away</td>
<td>absim be away</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dees failest</td>
<td>dēsis fail</td>
<td>abes art away</td>
<td>absis be away</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deest fails</td>
<td>dēsit fail</td>
<td>abest is away</td>
<td>absit be away</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēsumus fail</td>
<td>dēsimus fail</td>
<td>absumus are away</td>
<td>absimus §147a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deestis fail</td>
<td>dēsītis fail</td>
<td>abestis are away</td>
<td>absītis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēsunt fail</td>
<td>dēsīnt fail</td>
<td>ab sunt are away</td>
<td>absint</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

p. 10, l. 18

Imperfect (continuing in the past)

deérām failed | deessem failed ² | aberam was | abessem were ³ |
deerās | deessēs | aberās away | abessēs away |
deerat § 156 a | deesset § 156 c | aberat § 147 b | abesset § 147 a |
deerāmus | deessēmus | aberāmus | abessēmus |
deerātīs | deessētis | aberātis | abessētis |
deerant | deessent | aberant § 221 | abessent |

Future

deerō shall fail | aberō shall be away |
deeris wilt fail | aberis will be away |
deerit will fail | § 156 a | aberit will be away | § 156 a |
deerimus shall fail | aberimus shall be away |
deeritis will fail | aberitis will be away |
deerunt will fail | aberunt will be away |

¹ Note that to form the compounds of esse it is necessary merely to prefix
the prepositions à, ab, dē, in, inter, etc., to its various forms. dé- becomes
de- and prō- becomes prōd-, before e-.
² might fail, should be lacking,
would be lacking (to), etc.
³ might be away, should be wanting, would be
absent, were to be away, etc. § 138 a, f
### General Survey of Forms

#### c. Perfect (finished in the past)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Participle</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dēfui failed</td>
<td>dēfuerim failed</td>
<td>āfuī was away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēfuistī</td>
<td>dēfueris § 147 g</td>
<td>āfuistī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēfuit</td>
<td>dēfuerit § 156 b</td>
<td>āfuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēfuimus</td>
<td>dēfuerīmus §149</td>
<td>āfuimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēfuistis</td>
<td>dēfuerītis</td>
<td>āfuistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēfuērunt or dēfuerint § 28 b</td>
<td>āfuērunt or</td>
<td>āfuerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēfuēre</td>
<td></td>
<td>āfuēre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### d. Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Participle</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dēfueram</td>
<td>dēfuīssem had</td>
<td>āfueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēfuerās</td>
<td>dēfuīsseis failed</td>
<td>āfuerās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēfuerat</td>
<td>dēfuisset § 156 c</td>
<td>āfuerat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēfuerāmus</td>
<td>dēfuīsseīmus</td>
<td>āfuerāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēfuerātis</td>
<td>dēfuīsseētis</td>
<td>āfuerātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēfuerant</td>
<td>dēfuīssent</td>
<td>āfuerant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Participle</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dēfuerēd shall have failed</td>
<td>āfuerēd shall have been away</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēfueris, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td>āfueris, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Participle</th>
<th>Future Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>dees be (thou) lacking</td>
<td>abes be (thou) away</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>deeste fail (ye), etc.</td>
<td>abeste be (ye) away, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Participles (Adjective)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Future Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td></td>
<td>absēns § 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>dēfutūrus -a -um</td>
<td>āfutūrus § 102, -se</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive (Noun)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Future Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>deesse (to) be lacking</td>
<td>abesse (to) be away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>dēfuisse</td>
<td>āfuisse § 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>dēfutūrus esse, dēfore</td>
<td>āfutūrus esse, ābfore</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1: have failed, did fail. 2: have been away. 3: § 183 e
186. volō, velle, volui, — will, (to) wish, be willing § 130
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — will not, not wish, be unwilling
mālō, mālle, mālui, — will rather, prefer

### Indicative

*Pres.* volō *I will*  
vis thou wilt  
vult he will  
volumus we will  
vultis you will  
volunt you will

*nōlō* *I will not*  
nōn vis wilt not  
nōn vult will not  
nōlumus etc.  
nōn vultis  
nōlunt cf. § 170, -e-  

*mālō* *I will rather*  
māvis preferest  
māvult prefers  
mālumus etc.  
māvultis  
mālunt § 137

*Imp.* volēbam *I would*  
nōlēbam wouldn't  
mālēbam preferred

*Fut.* volam *shall wish*  
nōlam § 164  
mālam

*Perf.* volui¹ *I would*  
nōlui would not  
mālui preferred

*Plup.* volueram  
nōlueram¹  
mālueram

*Futp.* voluerō  
nōluerō  
māluerō¹

### Subjunctive

*Pres.* velim be willing  
nōlim §§ 140–1  
mālim prefer

*Imp.* vellem wished  
nōllem § 156 b, c  
māllem preferred

*Perf.* voluerim¹  
nōluerim  
māluerim

*Plup.* voluissem  
nōluissem¹  
māluissem

### Infinitive (Noun)

*Pres.* velle *to will*  
nōlle wish not  
mālle *to prefer*

*Perf.* voluisse  
nōluisse § 121 a  
māluisse

*Part.* volēns willing; nōlēns unwilling.  
*Inv.* nōlī,² nōlite don't

¹ All verbs are perfectly regular in the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect tenses. The forms of esse and its compounds may be used as a model for all verbs in these tenses.
² § 141 a.
187. Prin. Parts: vocō, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātus

Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.  vocō</td>
<td>I call, am calling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 vocās</td>
<td>vocāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocat § 136</td>
<td>vocātur § 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāmus</td>
<td>vocāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocātis</td>
<td>vocāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocant</td>
<td>vocantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.  vocābam</td>
<td>I was calling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 vocābās</td>
<td>vocābāre, vocābāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocābat</td>
<td>vocābātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocābāmus</td>
<td>vocābāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocābātis</td>
<td>vocābāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocābant</td>
<td>vocābantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.  vocābō</td>
<td>I shall call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 vocābis</td>
<td>vocābere, vocāberis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocābit</td>
<td>vocābitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocābimus</td>
<td>vocābimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocābitis</td>
<td>vocābimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocābunt</td>
<td>vocābuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.  vocāvī</td>
<td>I called, have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 vocāvisti</td>
<td>vocātus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāvit</td>
<td>vocātus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāvimus</td>
<td>vocātī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāvistis</td>
<td>vocātī estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāvērunt,(^2) vocāvēre</td>
<td>vocātī sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) Agrees with the subject in gender and number.

\(^2\) -runt is a modified form of sunt § 168, note 3.

Note that Indicative and Subjunctive forms have only twenty-two different endings. Learn the stem (§ 163) used in each tense, the signs of the tenses and the vowel changes in the same.
188. English: (to) call, called, called

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. vocem I call</td>
<td>vocer I be called</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 172 vocēs</td>
<td>vocēre, vocēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocet he call, etc. § 139</td>
<td>vocētur he be called</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocēmus § 141</td>
<td>vocēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocētis</td>
<td>vocēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocent</td>
<td>vocentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp. vocārem I called</strong></td>
<td><strong>vocārer I were called</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 172 vocārēs</td>
<td>vocārēre, vocārēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāret</td>
<td>vocāretur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocārēmus</td>
<td>vocārēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocārētis</td>
<td>vocārēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocārent</td>
<td>vocārentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Subjunctive uses only the second set of endings, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 e, f; and 183–6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§137 b, c), always change -bā- to -rē-, -erā- to -issē-, and erā- to essē-.

Always change -bi- to -rē-, -eri- to -issē-, eri- to essē-, if the writer’s standpoint is past (see § 147 g).

(1st Conj.) Change -bi- to -ē-, -eri- to -eri-, eri- to si-, if the writer’s standpoint is present (see § 147 f).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf. vocāverim I have called</th>
<th>vocātus</th>
<th>sim I have been</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 172 vocāveris</td>
<td>vocātus</td>
<td>sis called</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 178 vocāverit</td>
<td>vocātus</td>
<td>sit § 156 b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāverimus</td>
<td>vocātī</td>
<td>simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāverītis</td>
<td>vocātī</td>
<td>sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāverint</td>
<td>vocātī</td>
<td>sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE**

-ā- disappears before another vowel.
-ā- and -ē- become short before nt and before final -m, -t, or -r.
-bi- and -eri- become -b- and -er- before -o. -eri- (see § 170 l).
-bi- becomes -be- before -r and -bu- before -nt. § 170
### 187. Indicative (Continued)

#### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plup. vocāveram</th>
<th>vocāveras</th>
<th>vocāverat</th>
<th>vocāveramus</th>
<th>vocāverātis</th>
<th>vocāverant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I had called</td>
<td>vocātus</td>
<td>vocātus</td>
<td>vocātī</td>
<td>vocātī</td>
<td>vocātī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 eram</td>
<td>eras</td>
<td>erat</td>
<td>erāmus</td>
<td>erātis</td>
<td>erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Futp. vocāverō I shall have

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocāveris</th>
<th>vocāverit</th>
<th>vocāverimus</th>
<th>vocāveritis</th>
<th>vocāverint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>called</td>
<td>vocātus</td>
<td>vocātus</td>
<td>vocātī</td>
<td>vocātī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 erō</td>
<td>eris</td>
<td>erit</td>
<td>erimus</td>
<td>eritis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 190. a. Participles (Adjectives) § 174

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocāns</td>
<td>-ns</td>
<td>-ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocantis</td>
<td>calling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocātus, vocāta, vocātum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(having been) called</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocātūrus -ūra -ūrum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>going to call</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Dat. Supine (Noun) § 176

#### Sing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N. vocātus</th>
<th>vocātus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G. vocātūs</td>
<td>vocātuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. vocātūi</td>
<td>vocātibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. vocātum</td>
<td>vocātus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. vocātus</td>
<td>vocātus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. vocātū</td>
<td>vocātibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Eōrum vocandōrum facultās opportunity to call them</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ad eōs vocandōs parātus ready to call them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dē eis vocandis dēspērat despairs of calling them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The First Conjugation (Continued) 223

188. Subjunctive (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plup. vocāvissem</td>
<td>vocātus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 172 vocāvissēs</td>
<td>essēs called</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 178 vocāvissēt</td>
<td>vocātus esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāvissēmus</td>
<td>vocātī essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāvissētis</td>
<td>vocātī essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāvissent</td>
<td>vocātī essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

189. Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>vocāre be thou called</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. vocā</td>
<td>call thou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 173 vocāte</td>
<td>call ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. vocātō</td>
<td>thou shalt call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocātor</td>
<td>thou shalt be called</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

190. b. Gerund (Noun) § 129 c. Gerundive (Adjective) § 158

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. vocāre</td>
<td>to call; calling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. vocandī</td>
<td>of calling, to call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. vocandō</td>
<td>(for) calling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. vocandum,</td>
<td>vocandum to call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad vocandum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. vocandō</td>
<td>by calling, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spatium vocandī</td>
<td>est</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

191. Infinitive (Noun) § 177

| Pres. vocāre (to) call, be calling | vocāri (to) be called § 127 |
| Perf. vocāvisse (to) have called   | vocātus esse § 99 |
| Fut. vocātūrus esse be going       | vocātus fore be going to |
| §215 g vocātum ire to call         | vocātum īri be called |

The stem vowel -a- becomes short before -nd and -nt. § 28 b
191. a. cŏnor, cŏnāri, ——, cŏnātus exert self, attempt

Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Deponent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>cŏnor I exert myself, try</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>cŏnābar I tried, was trying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. § 171</td>
<td>cŏnābor I shall try</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. §§ 100–1</td>
<td>cŏnātus sum I (have) tried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>cŏnātus eram I had tried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Futp.</td>
<td>cŏnātus erō shall have tried</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive

| Pres.                | cŏner I try, may try, etc. |
| Imp. § 172           | cŏnārer I tried, should try |
| Perf. § 156 b, c     | cŏnātus sim I (have) tried |
| Plup.                | cŏnātus essem I had tried |

Imperative

| Pres. § 173          | cŏnāre exert thyself, try |
|                      | cŏnāmini exert yourselves |
| Fut.                 | cŏnātor thou shalt try |
|                      | cŏnātor he shall try |
|                      | cŏnantor they shall try |

c. Participles (Adjectives) § 174

| Pres. cŏnāns -āns -āns | —— |
| cŏnantis trying |
| Perf. —— | cŏnātus -a -um having tried |
| Fut. cŏnātūrus -ūra -ūrum | cŏnandus -nda -ndum |
| going to try | (deserving) to be tried |
The First Conjugation — Deponent 231

**d. GERUND (Noun) § 175**

N. cōnārī to try, trying

G. cōnandī to try, of trying

**Supine (Noun) § 157**

N. cōnātus cōnātus

G. cōnātūs cōnātuum

D. cōnātūi cōnātibus

Ac. cōnātum cōnātus

Ab. cōnātū cōnātibus

**e. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 104**

—

cōnandī -ndae -ndi of trying

**Cōnātūs tuōs compressī I put down your attempts**

**Cōnātum eunt are going to try**

**Cōnātū dēsistunt they leave off (from) trying**

**f. INFINITIVE (Noun) § 176**

Pres. cōnārī (to) try, trying

Perf. cōnātus esse (to) have tried

Fut. cōnātūrus esse (to) be going to try

(to) be going to try

Legiōnāriī Militēs.
192. Prin. Parts: videō, vidēre, vidi, visus

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres. videō I see, am seeing</strong></td>
<td>videor I am seen, seem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 vidēs</td>
<td>vidēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videt § 136</td>
<td>vidētur § 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidēmus</td>
<td>vidēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidētis</td>
<td>vidēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vident</td>
<td>videntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp. vidēbam I was seeing</strong></td>
<td>vidēbar I was seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 vidēbās</td>
<td>vidēbāre, vidēbāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidēbat</td>
<td>vidēbātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidēbāmus</td>
<td>vidēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidēbātis</td>
<td>vidēbāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidēbant</td>
<td>vidēbantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut. vidēbo I shall see</strong></td>
<td>vidēbor I shall be seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 vidēbis</td>
<td>vidēbere, vidēberis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidēbit</td>
<td>vidēbitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidēbimus</td>
<td>vidēbimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidēbitis</td>
<td>vidēbimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidēbunt</td>
<td>vidēbuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf. vídi I saw, have seen</strong></td>
<td>visus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 vidistī</td>
<td>visus es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vīdit</td>
<td>visus est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vīdimus</td>
<td>visī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vīdistīs²</td>
<td>visī estis²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vīdērunt, vīdēre</td>
<td>visī sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Agrees with the subject in gender and number.
Note that vidēre has exactly the same endings as vocāre and the same tense signs except in the Present Sub. See note, § 187.
### The Second Conjugation

#### 193. English: (to) see, saw, seen

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> videam <em>I see</em></td>
<td>videar <em>I be seen</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 172 videās <em>thou see</em></td>
<td>videāre, videāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videat <em>he see</em> § 139</td>
<td>videātur <em>he be seen</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videāmus § 141</td>
<td>videāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videātis</td>
<td>videāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videant</td>
<td>videantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp.</strong> vidērem <em>I saw, should</em></td>
<td>vidērer <em>I were seen, etc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 172 vidērēs <em>see, etc.</em></td>
<td>vidērēre, vidērēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidēret</td>
<td>vidērētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidērēmus</td>
<td>vidērēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidērētis</td>
<td>vidērēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidērent</td>
<td>vidērentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Subjunctive uses only the second set of endings, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 e, f; and 183–6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 b, c), always change -bā- to -rē-, -erā- to -issē-, and erā- to essē-.

Always change -bi- to -rē-, -eri- to issē-, eri- to essē-, if the writer's standpoint is past (see § 147 g).

(2d Conj.) Change -bi- to -ā-, -eri- to -eri-, and eri- to si-, if the writer's standpoint is present (see § 147 f).

**Perf.** viderim *I have seen*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>visus</th>
<th>sim <em>I have been</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 172 videris</td>
<td>visus</td>
<td>sis <em>seen</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viderit</td>
<td>visus</td>
<td>sit § 156 b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viderēmus</td>
<td>visī</td>
<td>simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viderētis</td>
<td>visī</td>
<td>sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viderint</td>
<td>visī</td>
<td>sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Vowel Changes in the Indicative and Subjunctive**

-ē- becomes short before another vowel.
-ā- and -ē- become short before nt and final -m, -t, or -r.
-bi- and -eri- become -b- and -er before o. -eri- (see § 170 i).
-bi- becomes -be- before -r and -bu- before -nt. § 170.
192. Indicative (Continued)

Active                  Passive                 
Plup. videram *I had seen*  visus  eram *I had been seen*  
§ 171 viderās         visus  erās  
    viderat          visus  erat  
    viderāmus       visī  erāmus  
    viderātis       visī  erātis  
    viderant       visī  erant  
Futp. viderŏ *I shall have*  visus  erō *I shall have been*  
§ 171 videris *seen*  visus  eris *seen*  
    viderit         visus  erit  
    viderimus      visī  erimus  
    videritis      visī  eritis  
    viderint       visī  erunt

195. a. Participles (Adjectives) § 174

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th></th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>vidēns     -ns   -ns</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>videntis    seeing</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>visus  visa  visum</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(having been) seen</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>visūrus     -ūra  -ūrum</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>videndus    -nda  -ndum</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(deserving) to be seen</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Supine (Noun) § 176

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>visus sight  visūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>visūs  visuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>visūf  visibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>visum  visūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>visus  visūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>visū  visibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
193. Subjunctive (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plup. vidissetem I had seen</td>
<td>visus essem I had been seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 172 vidisset</td>
<td>visus esses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>visus esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidissēmus</td>
<td>visi essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidissētis</td>
<td>visi essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidissent</td>
<td>visi essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

194. Imperative

| Pres. vidē see thou     | vidēre be thou seen    |
| § 173 vidēte see ye     | vidēmini be ye seen   |
| Fut. vidētō thou shalt see | vidētor thou shalt be seen |

195. b. Gerund (Noun) § 175 c. Gerundive (Adjective) § 158

**Singular**

| N. vidēre to see, seeing | —— | —— | —— |
| G. videndī of seeing, to see | videndī | -nda | -ndī |
| D. videndō for) seeing | videndō | -nda | -ndo |
| Ac. videndum, vidēre seeing | videndum | -ndam | -ndum |
| ad videndum to see | —— |
| Ab. videndō by seeing, etc. | videndō | -nda | -ndo |

Videndō spatiwm datur **Plural**

| time to see is given | videndōrum -nda | -ndo | -ndo |
| Hōra videndō dicta est | videndīs | -nds | -nds |
| the hour is set to see | videndōs | -nda | -nda, etc. |

**Infinitive (Noun)** §§ 177, 127

| Pres. vidēre (to) see, be seeing | vidēri (to) be seen or seem |
| Perf. vidisse (to) have seen | visus esse (to) have been seen |
| Fut. visūrus esse be going to | visus fore be going to |
| § 215 g visum fre see | visum Ⅲ be seen |

The stem vowel -ē- becomes short before -nd and -nt.
196. a. vereor, verēri, —, veritus reverence, dread

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Deponent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td><strong>vereor</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>I am afraid, fear</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>verēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>was afraid, feared</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>§ 171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>verēbor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>I shall fear</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>§ 100–1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>veritus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>I (have) feared</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>veritus erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>shall have feared</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

| Pres.      | verear          |
|            | *I fear, may fear, etc.* |
| Imp.       | § 171           |
|            | verērer         |
|            | *feared, might fear* |
| Perf.      | § 156 b, c      |
|            | veritus sim     |
|            | *I (have) feared* |
| Plup.      |                |
|            | veritus essem   |
|            | *I had feared*  |

**Imperative**

| Pres.      | verēre          |
|            | *fear (thou), revere* |
|            | verēminē         |
|            | *fear (ye), dread* |
| Fut.       | § 173           |
|            | verētōr          |
|            | *thou shalt fear* |
|            | verētōr          |
|            | *he shall fear*  |
|            | verentōr         |
|            | *they shall fear* |

**c. Participles (Adjectives)** § 174

| Pres.      | verēns          |
|            | -ēns            |
|            | verentis       |
|            | *fearing*       |
| Perf:      |                |
|            | veritus        |
|            | -a -um          |
|            | *having feared* |
| Fut.       | veritūrus       |
|            | -ūra -ūrum     |
|            | *going to fear* |
|            | verendus        |
|            | -nda -ndum      |
|            | *(deserving) to be feared* |
The Second Conjugation — Deponent

\[ d. \text{ GERUND (Noun) § 175} \quad e. \text{ GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 104} \]

\[ N. \text{ verēri to fear, fearing} \]
\[ G. \text{ verendi of fearing, to fear} \]
\[ \text{verendi} \quad -nda\tilde{e} \quad -ndī \]

Supine (Noun) § 157

\[ N. \quad \text{——} \]
\[ G. \quad \text{——} \]
\[ D. \quad \text{——} \]
\[ \text{Ac. [veritum]} \]
\[ \text{Ab. [verītū]} \]

f. \quad \text{INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177}

\[ \text{Pres. verēri (to) fear, be afraid} \]
\[ \text{Perf. veritus esse (to) have feared} \]
\[ \text{Fut. verītūrus esse} \]
\[ \text{(to) be going to fear} \]

Examples

\[ \text{Nē eius animum offendat verētur fears he will offend his mind} \]
\[ \text{Nē eum offenderet verēbātur feared that he might offend him} \]
\[ \text{Nōnne id verēbere? will you not fear that?} \]
\[ \text{Veritus est ut mē vidēret he feared that he wouldn’t see me} \]
\[ \text{Īnsidiās veritus (because he) feared an ambush} \]
\[ \text{Verendum mihi nōn erit I’ll not have to fear § 106 d} \]

Vīnea.
General Survey of Forms

197. Prin. Parts.: agō, agere, ēgī, āctus

Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Pres.</em> agō I drive, am driving</td>
<td>agor I am driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 agis</td>
<td>ageris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agit § 136</td>
<td>agitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agimus</td>
<td>agimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agitis</td>
<td>agiminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agunt</td>
<td>aguntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Imp.</em> agēbam I was driving</td>
<td>agēbar I was driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 agēbās</td>
<td>agēbāre, agēbāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agēbat</td>
<td>agēbātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agēbāmus</td>
<td>agēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agēbātis</td>
<td>agēbāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agēbant</td>
<td>agēbantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Fut.</em> agam I shall drive</td>
<td>agar I shall be driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 agēs</td>
<td>agēre, agēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aget</td>
<td>agētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agēmus</td>
<td>agēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agētis</td>
<td>agēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agent</td>
<td>agentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Perf.</em> ēgī I drove, I have driven</td>
<td>āctus¹ sum I have been driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 ēgistī</td>
<td>āctus¹ es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēgit²</td>
<td>āctus est²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēgimus</td>
<td>actī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēgistis</td>
<td>actī estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēgērunt, ēgēre</td>
<td>actī sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Agrees with the subject in gender and number. ²-it and -erit are modified forms of est and sit; ēgit = is having driven = has driven or drove, etc. Cf. §§ 99, 183, note 3.

Note that agere has exactly the same tense signs as vidēre and vocāre except in the Future Ind. Cf. § 192.
English: (to) drive, drove, driven, or (to) do, did, done

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. agam I drive</td>
<td>agar I be driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 172 agäs thou drive</td>
<td>agäre, agäris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agat he drive § 139</td>
<td>agätur he be driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agämus § 141</td>
<td>agämur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agätis</td>
<td>agämini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agant</td>
<td>agantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp. agerem I drove</td>
<td>agerer I were driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 172 agerēs</td>
<td>agerēre, agerēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ageret</td>
<td>agerētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agerēmus</td>
<td>agerēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agerētis</td>
<td>agerēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agerent</td>
<td>agerentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Subjunctive uses only the second set of endings, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 e, f; and 183–6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 b, c), always change -bā- to -rē-, -erā- to -issē-, and erā- to essē-.

Always change -ē- to -rē-, -erī- to -issē-, erī- to essē-, if the writer’s standpoint is past (see § 147 g).

(3d and 4th Conj.) Change -ē- to -ā-, -erī- to -erī-, and erī- to sī- if the writer’s standpoint is present (see § 147 f).

Perf. egerīs I have driven  actus sīs § 156 b

§ 172 egerīs  
egerit²   actus sit²
egerīmus  actī sīfīmus
egerītis  actī sītis
egerīnt   actī sint

Vowel Changes in the Indicative and Subjunctive

-e- disappears before another vowel.
-e- becomes -i- before m, s, or t; -u- before nt.
-e- becomes ē before b. -erī- (see § 170 l).
-ā- and -ē- become short before -nt or final -m, -t, or -r. § 170
General Survey of Forms

197. Indicative (Continued)

Active                                      Passive

Plup. ēgeram I had driven, had āctus eram I had been driven
§ 171 ēgerās been driving āctus erās
   ēgerat         āctus erat
   ēgerāmus      āctī erāmus
   ēgerātis      āctī erātis
   ēgerant       āctī erant

Futp. ēgerō I shall have driven āctus erō I shall have been
§ 171 ēgeris          āctus eris driven
   ēgerit          āctus erit
   ēgerimus       āctī erimus
   ēgeritis       āctī eritis
   ēgerint        āctī erunt

200. a. Participles (Adjectives) § 174

\[
\begin{array}{ccc|ccc}
M. & F. & N. & M. & F. & N. \\
Pres. agēns & -ns & -ns & & & \\
   agentis & driving, doing & & & & \\
Perf. & & & actus & acta & actum \\
\hline
   (having been) done, driven & & & & & \\
Fut. āctūrus & -ūra & -ūrum & agendus & -nda & -ndum \\
   going to drive or do & & & (deserving) to be driven & & \\
\end{array}
\]

d. Supine (Noun) § 176

Sing.                                            Plur.

N. āctus act  āctūs acts  Omnia erant agenda
G. āctūs     āctuum         everything had to be done
D. āctūi    āctibus         Tempus rei agendas
Ac. āctum   āctūs           time to do the thing
V. āctus     āctūs           Bovēs āctum it
Ab. āctū     āctibus         is going to drive the cows
The Third Conjugation (Continued)

198. Subjunctive (Continued)

Active                                      Passive
---                                          ---
Plup. ēgissem I had driven                  āctus essem I had been
§ 172 ēgissēs                                āctus essēs driven § 156 c
ēgisset                                    āctus esset
ēgissēmus                                  āctī essēmus
ēgissētis                                  āctī essētis
ēgissent                                   āctī essent

199. Imperative

Pres. age drive thou § 214                   agere be thou driven
§ 173 agite drive ye                       agimini be ye driven
Fut. agitō thou shalt drive                 agitor thou shalt be driven

200. b. Gerund (Noun) § 175                  c. Gerundive (Adjective) § 158

Singular                                      Singular
---                                          ---
N. agere to drive, driving                ---
G. agendī of driving, to drive           agendī -ndaе -ndī
D. agendō (for) driving                  agendō -ndaе -ndō
Ac. agendum, agere driving, etc., ad agendum to drive
   ---                                     ---
Ab. agendō by driving, etc.              agendō -ndā -ndō, etc.

Agere oportet
   to act is necessary
   Tempus agendī est
   it is time to act

Plural
   agendōrum -ndārum -ndōrum
   agendis -ndīs -ndīs
   agendōs -ndās -nda

E. Infinitive (Noun) § 177 e

Pres. agere (to) drive, be doing agē (to) be driven
Perf. ēgisse (to) have driven              āctus esse (to) have been
Fut. āctūrus esse | be going              āctus fore | be going to
§ 215g āctum ire | to drive              āctum īrī | be driven

-e- becomes long before -ns; disappears before another vowel.
201. a. útor, ūtí, —, ūsus help self (with), use, enjoy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Deponent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>útor I help myself, use 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>§ 182 b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>§ 171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>§ 100–1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Futp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

| Pres. | ūtar I use, may or shall use |
| Imp.  | § 171 | ūterer I used, would use |
| Perf. | § 156 b, c | ūsus sim I (have) used |
| Plup. |          | ūsus essem I had used |

b. **Imperative**

| Pres. | ūtēre help thyself, use |
| Fut.  | § 173 | ūtimini help yourselves, use |
|       | ūtitor thou shalt use |
|       | ūtitor he shall use |
|       | ūtuntor they shall use |

c. **Participles (Adjectives)** § 174

| Pres. | ūtēns, ūtēns, ūtēns |
|       | ūtentis using |
| Perf. |          | ūsus, ūsa, ūsum having used |
| Fut.  | ūsārus, ūsūra, ūsūrum | ūtendus, ūtenda, ūtendum |
|       | going to use or enjoy | (deserving) to be used |
The Third Conjugation — Deponents in -or 243

**d. GERUND (Noun)** § 175

\textit{Ab. ūtī to use, using}  
\textit{G. ūtendi of using, to use}    ūtendi, ūtendae, ūtendi

**SUPINE (Noun)** § 157

\textit{N. ūsus use ūsūs uses} Quī magnō nobis ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant  
\textit{G. ūsūs ūsuum} which were (for) great use to us for carrying on the war  
\textit{D. ūsuī ūsibus}  
\textit{Ac. ūsum ūsūs}  
\textit{Ab. ūsū ūsibus} Ex ūsū fuit was of advantage

**f. INFINITIVE (Noun)**

\textit{Pres. ūtī (to) use, using}  
\textit{Perf. ūsus esse (to) have used}  
\textit{Fut. ūsūrus esse} 
\textit{(to) be going to use}

Kalendārium Rei Rūsticae.
General Survey of Forms

202. Prin. Parts: capiō, capere, cēpi, captus

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> capiō I take, am taking</td>
<td>capior I am taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 capis</td>
<td>caperis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capitur § 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capimus</td>
<td>capimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>capimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>capiuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp.</strong> capiēbam I was taken,</td>
<td>capiēbar I was taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 capiēbās</td>
<td>capiēbāre, capiēbāri;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>capiēbātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
<td>capiēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
<td>capiēbāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbant</td>
<td>capiēbantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong> capiam I shall take</td>
<td>cpiar I shall be taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 capiēs</td>
<td>capiēre, capiēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiet</td>
<td>capiētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēmus</td>
<td>capiēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiētis</td>
<td>capiēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capient</td>
<td>capientur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong> cēpi I took, have taken</td>
<td>captus $^1$ sum I was taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 cēpistī</td>
<td>captus es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpit</td>
<td>captus est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpimus</td>
<td>capti sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpistis</td>
<td>capti est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpērant, $^2$ cēpēre</td>
<td>capti sunt $^2$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^1$ Agrees with the subject in gender and number.

$^2$ -runt = sunt; cēpērant = are having taken = have taken.

Indicative and Subjunctive forms have only twenty-two different endings. See §§ 187, 188, 192, 193.
**The Third Conjugation (-iō Verbs)**

**203. English**: *(to) take, took, taken*

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> capiam <em>I take</em></td>
<td>capiar <em>I be taken</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 172 capiās <em>thou take</em></td>
<td>capiāre, capiāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiāt <em>he take</em> § 139</td>
<td>capiātur <em>he be taken</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiāmus § 141</td>
<td>capiāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiātis</td>
<td>capiāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiānt</td>
<td>capiāntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Imp.** caperem *I took* | caperer *I were taken* |
| § 172 caperēs | caperēre, caperēris |
| caperēt | caperētur |
| caperēmus | caperēmur |
| caperētis | caperēmini |
| caperēnt | caperēntur |

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 e, f; and 183-6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 b, c), always change -bā- to -rē-, -ērā- to -issē-, and erā- to essē-.

Always change -ē- to -rē-, -eri- to -issē-, eri- to essē-, if the writer's standpoint is past (see § 147 g).

(3rd and 4th Conj.) Change -ē- to -ā-, -eri- to -eri-, and eri- to si-, if the writer's standpoint is present (see § 147 f).

| **Perf.** cēperim *I have taken* | captus *sim I have been* |
| § 172 cēperis | captus *sis taken* § 156 b |
| cēperit | captus *sit* |
| cēperīmus | captī *simus* |
| cēperītis | captī *sitīs* |
| cēperīnt | captī *sint* |

**Vowel Changes in the Indicative and Subjunctive**

The stem vowel -i- becomes -e- before r;
becomes -iu- before nt and -iē- before b.
-ā- and -ē- become short before nt and *final* -m, -t, or -r. § 170
202. Indicative (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plup. cēperam <em>I had taken</em></td>
<td>captus eram <em>I had been</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 cēperās</td>
<td>captus erās <em>taken</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperat</td>
<td>captus erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperāmus</td>
<td>captī erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperātis</td>
<td>captī erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperant</td>
<td>captī erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Futp.</strong> cēperō <em>I shall have</em></td>
<td>captus erō <em>I shall have</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 cēperis <em>taken</em></td>
<td>captus eris <em>taken</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperit</td>
<td>captus erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperimus</td>
<td>captī erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperitis</td>
<td>captī eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperint</td>
<td>captī erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

205. a. Participles (Adjectives) § 174

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. capiēns -ns -ns</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capientis <em>taking</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Perf. | Captus, capta, captum (having been) taken |
|       | going to take (deserving) to be taken    |

205. d. Supine (Noun) § 176

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>captus Arma capiendi facultās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>captūs <em>opportunity to take arms</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>captūs Suī recipiendi facultās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>captum <em>opportunity to take themselves back or withdraw</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>captūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>captibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Third Conjugation (\textit{-iē Verbs Continued}) \hspace{1cm} 247

203. \textbf{Subjunctive} \textit{(Continued)}

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\textit{Active} & \textit{Passive} \\
\hline
Plup. \textit{cēpissēm I had taken} & captus \textit{essem I had been} \\
§ 172 \textit{cēpissēs} & captus \textit{essēs \hspace{.2cm} taken § 156 c} \\
cēpissēt & captus \textit{essēt} \\
cēpissēmus & captī \textit{essēmus} \\
cēpissētis & captī \textit{essētis} \\
cēpissēnt & captī \textit{essent} \\
\end{tabular}

204. \textbf{Imperative}

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\textit{Pres. capere \hspace{.2cm} take thou} & \textit{capere \hspace{.2cm} be thou \hspace{.2cm} taken} \\
§ 173 \textit{capīte \hspace{.2cm} take ye} & \textit{capimīnī \hspace{.2cm} be \hspace{.2cm} ye \hspace{.2cm} taken} \\
\textit{Fut. capītō \hspace{.2cm} thou \hspace{.2cm} shalt \hspace{.2cm} take} & \textit{capītor \hspace{.2cm} thou \hspace{.2cm} shalt \hspace{.2cm} be \hspace{.2cm} taken} \\
\end{tabular}

205. \textit{b. Gerund} (Noun) § 157 \hspace{1cm} \textit{c. Gerundive} (Adjective) § 158

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\textit{Singular} & \textit{Plural} \\
N. \textit{capere \hspace{.5cm} to take; \hspace{.5cm} taking} & \textit{capendōrum \hspace{.5cm} -ndārum \hspace{.5cm} -ndōrum} \\
G. \textit{capiendī \hspace{.5cm} of taking} & \textit{capiendī} -ndae -ndī \\
D. \textit{capiendō \hspace{.5cm} (for) \hspace{.5cm} taking} & \textit{capiendō} -ndae -ndō \\
Ac. \textit{capiendum, capere \hspace{.5cm} taking} & \textit{capiendum} -ndam -ndum . \\
\hspace{1cm} \textit{ad} \hspace{.5cm} \textit{capiendum \hspace{.5cm} to \hspace{.5cm} take} & \hspace{1cm} \hspace{1cm} \hspace{1cm} \hspace{1cm} \hspace{1cm} \\
\hspace{1cm} \textit{Ab. capiendō \hspace{.5cm} by taking, \hspace{.5cm} etc.} & \textit{capiendō} -ndā -ndō \\
\textbf{Spatium} \hspace{.2cm} \textit{arma \hspace{.2cm} capiendī} & \hspace{1cm} \hspace{1cm} \hspace{1cm} \hspace{1cm} \\
\hspace{1cm} \textit{time \hspace{.2cm} to \hspace{.2cm} take \hspace{.2cm} arms} & \hspace{1cm} \hspace{1cm} \hspace{1cm} \hspace{1cm} \\
\textbf{Tempus} \hspace{.2cm} \textit{ad \hspace{.2cm} arma \hspace{.2cm} capienda} & \textit{capiendīs} -ndis -ndīs \\
\hspace{1cm} \textit{dēfuit \hspace{.2cm} time \hspace{.2cm} was \hspace{.2cm} lacking} & \textit{capiendōs} -ndās -nda \\
\end{tabular}

\textbf{e. Infinitive} (Noun) § 177

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\textit{Pres. capere \hspace{.5cm} (to) \hspace{.5cm} take, \hspace{.5cm} be \hspace{.5cm} taking} & \textit{capī \hspace{.5cm} (to) \hspace{.5cm} be \hspace{.5cm} taken} \hspace{1cm} § 127 -\textit{i-} \\
\textit{Perf. cēpissee \hspace{.5cm} (to) \hspace{.5cm} have \hspace{.5cm} taken} & \textit{captus esse \hspace{.5cm} (to) \hspace{.5cm} have \hspace{.5cm} been \hspace{.5cm} taken} \\
\textit{Fut. captūrus esse \hspace{.5cm} (be \hspace{.5cm} going} & \textit{captus fore \hspace{.5cm} (be \hspace{.5cm} going \hspace{.5cm} to} \\
§ 215 g captum \hspace{.5cm} ire \hspace{.5cm} \hspace{.5cm} to \hspace{.5cm} take} & \textit{captum fri \hspace{.5cm} be \hspace{.5cm} taken} \\
\end{tabular}

-\textit{i-} \hspace{.2cm} becomes \hspace{.2cm} -\textit{iē-} \hspace{.2cm} before \hspace{.2cm} ns \hspace{.2cm} and \hspace{.2cm} -\textit{ie} \hspace{.2cm} before \hspace{.2cm} nt \hspace{.2cm} in \hspace{.2cm} present \hspace{.2cm} participles; \\
-\textit{i-} \hspace{.2cm} becomes \hspace{.2cm} -\textit{ie} \hspace{.2cm} (sometimes \hspace{.2cm} -\textit{iu}) \hspace{.2cm} before \hspace{.2cm} nd.
206. a. gradior, gradi, ——, gressus move self, walk

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Deponent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>gradior I move myself, go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>§ 182 gradiēbar I was walking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>§ 171 gradiar I shall walk or go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>§ 100–1 gressus sum I (have) walked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td></td>
<td>gressus erō shall have walked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>gradiar I walk or shall walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>§ 172 graderer walked, should walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>§ 156 b, c gressus sim I (have) walked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>gressus essem had walked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>gradere move thyself, walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>§ 173 gradimini move yourselves, walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>graditor thou shalt walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>graditor he shall walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gradiuntor they shall walk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participles (Adjectives)** § 174

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>gradiēns, -ēns, -ēns ——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gradientis walking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gressus, -a, -um having walked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>gressūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>going to walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gradiendus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(deserving) to be walked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Third Conjugation -ior Verbs (Deponent) 249

d. Gerund (Noun) § 175
e. Gerundive (Adjective) § 104
N. gradi to walk, walking
G. gradiendi of walking gradiendi, -ae, -i of walking
Supine (Noun) § 157

N. gressus gressūs Gradientūs saepsit wrapped
G. gressūs gressuum them as they walked (along)
D. gressui gressibus Gressū patuit dea the goddess
Ac. gressum gressūs was evident in her gait
Ab. gressū gressibus Eā dīrige gressum direct your

(f.) Infinitive (Noun) § 176
Pres. gradi (to) walk, walking
Perf. gressus esse (to) have walked
Fut. gressūrus esse (to) be going to walk steps that way § 119 g

Suggestions for Word Study

The root of gradi appears in grade, gradient,1 gradation, graduate, undergraduate, ungraduated, graduation, etc.

Using the prefix con-, we have congressional, congressman.1

How many of the prefixes in §§ 219, 2–3; 220 are used with this root? Use a dictionary. Cf. also p. 26, line 19, note, and p. 40.

Make a list of words containing this root.

Make lists of words containing other common Latin roots.

Underscore the parts representing the various forms the original roots assume in Latin, thus:

progressive, convention, efficient, convenient

How does a knowledge of the vowel changes in Latin affect your ability to spell English words correctly?

1 Study the meaning of the English additions to the Latin roots in word-building. Write definitions showing their effect on the meaning of the original roots.
207. Prin. Parts: audiō, audīre, audīvi, audītus

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiō I hear</td>
<td>audior I am heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 audiōs</td>
<td>audīris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audītur § 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīmus</td>
<td>audīmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītis</td>
<td>audīminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīunt</td>
<td>audīuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbam I was hearing</td>
<td>audiēbar I was heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 audiēbās</td>
<td>audiēbāre, audiēbāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbat</td>
<td>audiēbātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbāmus</td>
<td>audiēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbātis</td>
<td>audiēbāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbant</td>
<td>audiēbantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiam I shall hear</td>
<td>audiar I shall be heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 audiēs</td>
<td>audiēre, audiēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiet</td>
<td>audiētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēmus</td>
<td>audiēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiētis</td>
<td>audiēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audient</td>
<td>audientur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvi I hear, have heard</td>
<td>audītus 1 sum I was heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 audīvistī</td>
<td>audītus es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 178 audīvit</td>
<td>audītus est 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvimus</td>
<td>audītī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvistī</td>
<td>audītī estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivērunt, audivēre</td>
<td>audītī sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Agrees with the subject in gender and number.
2 The e- of est is lost in sit; -erit = sit.

Indicative and Subjunctive forms have only twenty-two different endings. See §§ 187, 188, 192, 193, 197, 198, 202, 203.
The Fourth Conjugation

208. English: (to) hear, heard, heard

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiam I hear</td>
<td>audiar I be heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 172 audiās</td>
<td>audiāre, audiāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiat he hear § 139</td>
<td>audiātūr he be heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiāmus § 141</td>
<td>audiāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiātis</td>
<td>audiāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiant</td>
<td>audiantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audirem I heard</td>
<td>audirer I were heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 172 audirēs</td>
<td>audirēre, audirēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiret</td>
<td>audirētūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audirēmus</td>
<td>audirēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audirētis</td>
<td>audirēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audirent</td>
<td>audirentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Subjunctive uses only the second set of endings, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 e, f; and 183–6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 b, c), always change -bā- to -rē-, -ērā- to -issē-, and erā- to essē-.

Always change -ē- to -rē-, -erī- to -issē, erī- to essē-, if the writer's standpoint is past (see § 147 g).

(3d and 4th Conj.) Change -ē- to -ā-, -erī- to -erī-, and erī- to si- if the writer's standpoint is present (see § 147 f).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>audīverim I have heard</th>
<th>auditus sim I have been heard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 172</td>
<td>audīverīs</td>
<td>auditus sīs § 156 b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 178</td>
<td>audīverīt²</td>
<td>auditus sit²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audīverīmus</td>
<td>auditī sīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audīverītis</td>
<td>auditī sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>audīverint</td>
<td>auditī sīnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vowel Changes in the Indicative and Subjunctive

The stem vowel -ī- becomes short before another vowel;
becomes -iu- before nt, and -ē- before b.
-ā- and -ē- becomes short before nt and final -m, -t, or -r. § 170
### 207. Indicative (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plup. audiveram <em>I had heard</em></td>
<td>auditus eram <em>I had been</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 audiverás</td>
<td>auditus erás <em>heard</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 178 audiverat</td>
<td>auditus erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiverámus</td>
<td>audií erámus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiverátis</td>
<td>audií erátis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiverant</td>
<td>audií erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Futp. audiveró <em>I shall have</em></td>
<td>auditus eró <em>I shall have</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 audiveris <em>heard</em></td>
<td>auditus eris <em>been heard</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 178 audiverit</td>
<td>auditus erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiverimus</td>
<td>audií erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiveritis</td>
<td>audií eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiverint</td>
<td>audií erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 210. a. Participles (Adjectives) § 174

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. audiëns</td>
<td>-ns</td>
<td>-ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audientis</td>
<td>hearing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td></td>
<td>auditus, audita, auditum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. auditūrus</td>
<td>-ūra</td>
<td>-ūrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiendus</td>
<td>-nda</td>
<td>-ndum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>going to hear</td>
<td>(having been) heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Supine (Noun) § 176</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. auditus</td>
<td>auditūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. audītus</td>
<td>audituum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. audītūs</td>
<td>auditibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. auditum</td>
<td>auditūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. auditus</td>
<td>auditūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. auditū</td>
<td>auditibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Fourth Conjugation (Continued)  

208. **Subjunctive (Continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plup. audivissem I had heard</td>
<td>auditus essēm I had been heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 172 audivissēs</td>
<td>auditus essēs § 156 c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 178 audivisset</td>
<td>auditus esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivissēmus</td>
<td>auditī essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivissētis</td>
<td>auditī essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivissent</td>
<td>auditī essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

209. **Imperative**

| Pres. | auditē hear thou |
| § 173 | audīmini be ye heard |
| Fut. | auditō thou shalt hear |
| | auditor thou shalt be heard |

210. **Gerund (Noun)** § 175  **Gerundive (Adjective)** § 158

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. audīre to hear, hearing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. audiendī of hearing</td>
<td>audiendī -ndae -ndī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. audiendō (for) hearing</td>
<td>audiendō -ndae -ndō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. audiendum, audīre hearing, ad audiendum to hear</td>
<td>audiendum -ndam -ndum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. audiendō by hearing, etc.</td>
<td>audiendō -ndā -ndō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Multīorum auditū by</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the hearing of many</td>
<td>audiendōrum -ndārum -ndōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nihil praeter auditum</td>
<td>audiendīs -ndīs -ndīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing but hearsay</td>
<td>audiendōs -ndās -nda</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e. **Infinitive (Noun)** § 177

| Pres. audīre hear, be heeding | audīri (to) be heard § 127 -I- |
| Perf. audivisse (to) have heard | auditus esse (to) have been heard |
| Fut. auditūrus esse | be going to auditus fore | be going to |
| § 215 g auditum ire | hear | auditum iri | be heard |

-<i>- becomes -iē- before -ns and -ie- before -nt- in present participles;  
-<i>- becomes -ie- (sometimes -iu-) before -nd. § 170
211. a. potior, potīri, ——, potitus make self able, get

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Deponent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>potior I get (hold of) 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>§ 182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>§ 171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>§ 100–1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Futp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

| Pres. | potiar I get or may get |
| Imp.  | § 172 | potirer got, might get |
| Perf. | § 156 b, c | potitus sim I (have) got |
| Plup. | | potitus essem had gotten |

**b. Imperative**

| Pres. | potīre get thou |
| Fut.  | § 173 | potīmini get ye |
|       | | potitor thou shalt get |
|       | | potiuntor they shall get |

**c. Participles (Adjectives)** § 174

| Pres. | potiēns, -ēns, -ēns |
|       | potientis getting |
| Perf. | —— |
| Fut.  | potitūrus, -a, -um |
|       | potiendum, -a, -um |
|       | going to get |
|       | (desiring) to be got |
**The Fourth Conjugation — Deponent**

*d. GERUND (NOUN) § 175*

**N. potiri to get, getting**

**G. potiendi of getting**

**SUPINE (NOUN) § 157**

**N. —**

**G. —**

**D. —**

**Ac. potitum**

**Ab. potitū**

*e. GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 104*

potiendi, -ae -ī of getting

**f. INFINITIVE (Noun) § 176**

**Pres.** potiri (to) get, getting

**Perf.** potitus esse (to) have got

**Fut.** potitūrus esse

(to) be going to get

Many case forms of supines are wanting. In many verbs, only forms in -um or -ā are found.

Lūdus Litterārius — The Game of Letters (School).
### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>I bear</th>
<th>feror am borne</th>
<th>eō I go</th>
<th>fiō am made</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 fers</td>
<td>ferris</td>
<td>is</td>
<td></td>
<td>fis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fert § 170, 1</td>
<td>fertur</td>
<td>it § 137</td>
<td></td>
<td>fit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferimus</td>
<td>ferimur</td>
<td>imus</td>
<td></td>
<td>fimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertis</td>
<td>ferimini</td>
<td>itis</td>
<td></td>
<td>fitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferunt</td>
<td>feruntur</td>
<td>eunt</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imp.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>fiēbam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ferēbam</td>
<td>ferēbar</td>
<td>ībam</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 ferēbās</td>
<td>ferēbāre -ris</td>
<td>ībās</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiēbās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferēbat</td>
<td>ferēbātur</td>
<td>ībat</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiēbat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferēbāmus</td>
<td>ferēbāmus</td>
<td>ībāmus</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferēbātis</td>
<td>ferēbāmini</td>
<td>ībātis</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferēbant</td>
<td>ferēbantur</td>
<td>ībant</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Fut.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>fiām</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>feram</td>
<td>ferar</td>
<td>īōō</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 ferēs</td>
<td>ferēre -ris</td>
<td>ībis</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feret</td>
<td>ferētur</td>
<td>ībit</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiēt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferēmus</td>
<td>ferēmur</td>
<td>ībimus</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferētis</td>
<td>ferēmini</td>
<td>ībitis</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferent</td>
<td>ferentur</td>
<td>ībunt</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiēnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Perf.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tuli I bore</th>
<th>lātus sum</th>
<th>īvi I went</th>
<th>factus sum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 171 tulisti</td>
<td>lātus es</td>
<td>īvisti</td>
<td>factus es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 178 tulit</td>
<td>lātus est</td>
<td>īvit</td>
<td>factus est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulimus</td>
<td>lāti sumus</td>
<td>ivimus</td>
<td>factī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulistis</td>
<td>lāti estis</td>
<td>ivistis</td>
<td>factī estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulērunt or</td>
<td>lāti sunt</td>
<td>īvērunt 1 or factī sunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulēre</td>
<td></td>
<td>īvēre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 īvērunt or īvēre, iērunt or iēre; -v is usually dropped in forms of īre and its compounds.

Ind. and Sub. forms have only twenty-two different endings.
The Verbs ferre, ire, and fieri

213. Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>feram I bear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 172</td>
<td>ferās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferat</td>
<td>ferātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferāmus</td>
<td>ferāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferātis</td>
<td>ferāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferant</td>
<td>ferantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp.</strong></td>
<td>ferrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 172</td>
<td>ferrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferret</td>
<td>ferrētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferrēmus</td>
<td>ferrēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferrētis</td>
<td>ferrēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferrent</td>
<td>ferrentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Subjunctive uses only the second set of endings, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 e, f; and 183–6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 b, c), always change -bā- to -rē-, -erā- to -issē-, and erā- to essē-.

Always change -ē- or -bi- to -rē-, -eri- to -issē-, eri- to essē-, if the writer’s standpoint is past (see § 147 g).

(3d and 4th Conjug.) Change -ē- or -bi- to -ā-, -eri- to -eri- and -eri- to -ī-, if the writer’s standpoint is present (see § 147 f.).

| Perf. | tulerim | lātus sim | ĭverim | factus sim |
| § 172 | tuleris | lātus sīs | ĭverīs | factus sīs |
| § 178 | tulerit | lātus sit | ĭverit | factus sit |
| tulerimus | lātī sīmus | ĭverīmus | factī sīmus |
| tulerītis | lātī sītis | ĭverītis | factī sītis |
| tulerint | lātī sint | ĭverint | factī sint |

Peculiarities of Vowels in the Indicative and Subjunctive

1 See § 170 note. 2 -ī becomes -i- before another vowel (cf. § 170 -i-) but i- becomes e- at the beginning of a word or before a vowel (except e).

3 Note the -i- before another vowel in fiā. 4 See § 170 note.
212. INDICATIVE (Continued)

Plup. tuleram   látus eram  iveram  factus eram
§171 tulerás   látus erás  iverás  factus erás
§178 tulerat    látus erat  iverat  factus erat
tulerámus  lātī erāmus  iverāmus  factī erāmus
tulerátis  lātī erātis  iverātis  factī erātis
tulerant  lātī erant  iverant  factī erant

Futp. tulerō   látus erō  iverō  factus erō
§171 tuleris   látus eris  iveris  factus eris
§178 tulerit    látus erit  iverit  factus erit
tulerimus  lātī erimus  iverimus  factī erimus
tuleritis  lātī eritis  iveritis  factī eritis
tulerint  lātī erunt  iverint  factī erunt

215. a. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) §174

Pres. ferēns §97 ———  iēns §97 ——— ———
ferentis  euntis

Perf. ———     látus §98 ———  itum §98  factus

Fut. lātūrus  ferendus  itūrus  eundum §104 -ǐ-

b. GERUND (Noun) §175
c. GERUNDIVE (Adj.) §158

N. ferre     īre
ferendi  eundī  -eundī  -eundae  -eundi

215. d. SUPINE (Noun) §157

N. ——— -itus  Mihi eundum est I must go
G. ——— -itūs  Dē flūmine trānseundō spēs
D. ——— -itūf  hope of crossing the river
Ac. lātum ——— -itum  Difficilī trānsitū flūmen
Ab. lātū ——— -itū  a river of difficult passage
Irregular Verbs (Continued)

213. Subjunctive (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plup. tulissem</td>
<td>lätus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 172 tulissēs</td>
<td>lätus essēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 178 tulissest</td>
<td>lätus esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tulissēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tulissētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tulissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

214. Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres. fer bring</th>
<th>ferre</th>
<th>i go (thou)</th>
<th>fi become</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ferte</td>
<td>ferimini</td>
<td>ite</td>
<td>fite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. fertō</td>
<td>fertor</td>
<td>itō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 173 fertō</td>
<td>fertor</td>
<td>itō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertōte</td>
<td>———</td>
<td>itōte.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feruntō</td>
<td>feruntor</td>
<td>euntō ²</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

215. e. Infinitive (Noun) § 177

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. ferre bear</td>
<td>ferri</td>
<td>———</td>
<td>fieri be done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. tulisse</td>
<td>lätus esse</td>
<td>———</td>
<td>factus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. lätūrus esse</td>
<td>lätus fore</td>
<td>———</td>
<td>factus fore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latum ire</td>
<td>latum iri</td>
<td>factum iri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

f. Active

| Pres. ire go, be going | Iri traveling be done |
| Perf. iisse (to) have been going | itum esse " have been done |
| Fut. itūrus esse be going to go | itum iri be going to be traveled |

Occasionally used instead of the future.

(ii) Sē perditum eunt they are going to ruin themselves.

Videō sē perditum ire Videō eōs perditum iri

I see they are going to destroy I see that they are going to be destroyed

1 See § 170. ² See Note 2, § 213.
General Observations — Verbs

216. a. Forms¹ made on the Present Stem (§ 163 a).

-a- before final -m or -r may be the sign either of the Present Subjunctive or Future Indicative:

legam, loquar, fiam, ferar, patiar, audiam

-a- or -a- (when shortened before -t, -nt, or -ntur)

First Conjugation² — Stem Vowel — Present Indicative
vocás, cōnāris (cōnāre § 191 b); rogat, nūntiātur;
stāmus, vagāmur; amātis, laudāmini; dent,³ iuventur

Second Conjugation — Sign of the Present Subjunctive
iubeás, videāre, teneāris; liceat, polliceātur;
audeāmus, iubeāmur; habeātis, doceāmini; audeant

Third and Fourth Conjugations — Sign of the Present Subjunctive (and First Person sing. of the Future Indicative)
capiās, patiāre, congrediāris; legat, loquātur;
audiāmus, mittāmur; ūtāmini, agātis; fiant,⁴ ferantur

b. In forms made on the Present Stem (§ 163 a).

-e- before final -m or -r is always Present Subjunctive.
-ē- or -e- (when shortened before -t, -nt, or -ntur)

First Conjugation — Sign of the Present Subjunctive
vocēs, cōnēre (cōnēris); roget, nūntiētur;
stēmus, vagēmur; amētis, laudēmini; dent,³ iuventur

¹ Not containing the sign -bā-, -rē-, or -bi-. ² The Prin. Parts must be learned. ³ Dare resembles the first. ⁴ Fierī follows the third conjugation.
Second Conjugation — Stem Vowel — Present Indicative

iubēs, tenēris, (iubēre §§ 127, 194); licet, pollicētur;
audēmus, verēmur; habētis, vidēmini; tenent, con-
tinentur

Third and Fourth Conjugations — Sign of the Future Ind.

fiēs, interficiēre, sequēre; capiet, accipiētur;
audiēmus, potiēmur; sciētis, patiēmini; fient, ferentur

But in the third conjugation

-e-ris is Pres. Ind. loqueris, mitteris, caperis
-ē-ris is Fut. Ind. loquēris, mittēris, capiēris

c. Give Mode and Tense and translate.

audēre vocēre vidēre loquēre dētur tenētur ferētur
nūntiāre largiāre patiēre cōnāmur cōgāmur laudāmur
dīcātur mandātur nūntient mūnient dicent

Ballista.
217. a. In forms made on the Perfect Stem (§ 163 b).
Any verb having the ending -istī, -istis, or -ērunt is instantly known to be a perfect indicative active form and the perfect stem may be learned from it.

b. Read and translate the following paragraphs and write out the principal parts of the verbs from your observations.

Galli rebellionem facere volunt. Hoc cōnātū nōn dēsistunt. Concilium convocant. Ducēs inter sē cōnsulunt. Iam bellum gerere cōnstituunt, cum ūnus ē ducibus surgit; surrēctus ita loquitur:

“IAM dīū, frātréś, bellandī cupidī estis. Saepe concilium convocāvistis. Conciliō convocātō, mē cōnsuluistis. Persaepe apud vōs surrēxi neque vŏbis ita dicere dēstitī: Rōmānūs potentīs, Gallōs fortis esse īnfirmōs; hōs saepe contrā illōs coniūrāvisse; bella multa gesta esse; tum dēnum Gallōs semper victōs, arma eōrum Rōmānīs trādita esse. Hīs dē causīs, ut saepe iam dīxī, suādeō, nē bellum cum ēis, quī tanta tamque multa iam bella tam bonā gessērunt fortūnā atque adhūc semper vicērunt, gerātīs atque pācem servētis.”

c. Contracted Forms

-v- is often dropped in the combinations -īvī-, -īvi-, -īve-. audīvī, petīvimus, cupīvit, audīverat, cupīvisset become audī, petīmus, cupīt, audīerat, cupīisset, cupīsset

-ve-, -vē-, and -vi- (not before -t or -mus) are often dropped.

cōnsulunt ask advice of, consult 4 surgit rises
cōnstituunt are deciding gerere wage trādita delivered
servētis keep, observe īnfirmōs unsteady vincere win, defeat
d. Write out the full form of each of the following:

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iērun</td>
<td>vocāstis</td>
<td>iūrāsse</td>
<td>trānsīssent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ierant</td>
<td>mandārun</td>
<td>collocāsse</td>
<td>cōsuērint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isse</td>
<td>rogāstī</td>
<td>servāssent</td>
<td>cōsuērat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exīsset</td>
<td>cupīstī</td>
<td>putārō</td>
<td>pugnārant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petiisse</td>
<td>putāstī</td>
<td>rōgārun</td>
<td>cōsuēsse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petīsse</td>
<td>convocārim</td>
<td>nūntiārit</td>
<td>superārint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

218. a. The meaning of ancient root words is usually broader than that of modern ones. They set forth the actual facts in more primitive and simple fashion, whereas our words have become more mechanical means of conveying ideas and farther removed from the plain facts they represent. Scarcity of words formerly made it necessary to apply each one to a wide range of things.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Librōs</th>
<th>ē-ligit, (he) is selecting books.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>books</td>
<td>out-picks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Litterās</td>
<td>legit, (he) is reading a message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>letters</td>
<td>picks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Frūctūs</td>
<td>legit, (he) is gathering fruit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fruits</td>
<td>picks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avis</td>
<td>aequor</td>
<td>legit, the bird skims the level-sea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bird</td>
<td>picks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nāvis</td>
<td>lītus</td>
<td>legit, the ship skirts the shore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>boat</td>
<td>picks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nauta</td>
<td>lītus</td>
<td>legit, the sailor scans the shore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sailor</td>
<td>picks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. The original meaning of the root leg- is easily seen in its descendants, legible (writing) and eligible (persons).

c. The underlying idea conveyed by leg- is something like
pass-along-seeing-gathering or following,

according as it refers to the passing along of the eye and finger of a reader, the eye and hand of a picker, the eye and body of a bird, or the hull of a ship. And the sameness of the actions becomes still more apparent as we consider the spread-out surface of the ancient roll or book, the extended row of rolls to select from, the ground traversed in picking wild berries, the level expanse of the sea and the extent of shallows, beach, and coast land.

d. We must not think of the abundant fruit of cultivated trees or of glancing easily over printed pages, with separated words, for when leg- was first used, picking meant searching and reading once meant painfully gathering ideas from rudely carved lines of words all run together as one. And the few words of primitive peoples were made to perform many services, whereas we have borrowed words from all our neighbors in our desire to have one word for each thing.

219. The prefixing of prepositions and other particles has made vowel changes in many common root words.

1. ae sometimes becomes i; au sometimes becomes ū.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Verbs, etc.</th>
<th>Compounds</th>
<th>Related Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aestimäre rate</td>
<td>esteem</td>
<td>ex-istimäre think out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quaerere seek</td>
<td>query</td>
<td>ex-quirere seek out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caedere hew, cut</td>
<td>chisel</td>
<td>oc-cidere cut on front, kill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prae ahead of</td>
<td>pre-clause</td>
<td>pri-mus foremost, first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>claudere shut</td>
<td>clause</td>
<td>ex-clăedere shut out or off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clausi I closed</td>
<td>enclose</td>
<td>ex-clūsi I shut out or off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>causa reason</td>
<td>causal</td>
<td>re-cūsāre give back reasons (why not)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Short a becomes e, especially before r or two consonants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Verbs, etc.</th>
<th>Compounds</th>
<th>Related Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dare put, give</td>
<td>date</td>
<td>ab-dere put away, conceal render</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dedi I gave, sent</td>
<td>ab-didi I concealed circum-dare surround</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crē-faith, trust</td>
<td>creed</td>
<td>crē-dere put faith in credible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scandere climb</td>
<td>scan</td>
<td>a-scendere climb up ascension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gradī walk, go</td>
<td>gradual</td>
<td>ag-gredi go at, attack aggressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pati suffer</td>
<td>patient</td>
<td>per-peti endure through perpetual</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Short a and e become i before single consonants, except r.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>habère hold, keep habit</th>
<th>pro-hibère keep forth, off prohibit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tenère hold, tenant</td>
<td>con-tinère keep together contain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facere (i) make, do fact</td>
<td>cōn-ficere (i) do up, finish confection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tangere touch, tangent</td>
<td>at-tingere touch upon contingent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frangere break, fragile</td>
<td>in-fringere break into infringe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. In words beginning with a vowel or h contractions often occur.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>emere take, buy redeem</th>
<th>sūmere (sub-emere) take up resume</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agere drive, do agent</td>
<td>cōgere (co-agere) collect, force cogent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habère have inhabit</td>
<td>dēbère (dē-habère) have from, owe debt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

220. The consonants in prepositions vary greatly when used in compounds according to the first letter of the root word.

1. ab (ā-, ab-, abs-, au-) from, away, aside, off.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verteere turn vertex</th>
<th>ā-verteere turn aside avert, averse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iacere (i) throw jet</td>
<td>ab-icere (i) cast away abject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenère hold, keep tenure</td>
<td>abs-tinère keep from abstinence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferre bear fertile</td>
<td>au-ferre carry off; ablātus ablative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulī I bore</td>
<td>abs-tulī I took away</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. **ad** (a-, ac-, ad-, af-, ag-, al-, am-, an-, ap-, ar-, as-, at-) 
to, for, up to, up on, toward, near, by, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Verbs, etc.</th>
<th>Compounds</th>
<th>Related Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>scandere climb</td>
<td>scansion</td>
<td>a-scendere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēdere yield, go</td>
<td>cede</td>
<td>ac-cēdere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dare put, give</td>
<td>dative</td>
<td>ad-dere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facere (i) do, act</td>
<td>fact</td>
<td>af-ficere¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agere drive</td>
<td>agent</td>
<td>ad-igere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gradi walk, go</td>
<td>gradual</td>
<td>ag-gradi²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferre bring</td>
<td>refer</td>
<td>ad-ferre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lātus brought</td>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>al-lātus²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūntiāre bring</td>
<td>word</td>
<td>an-nūntiāre²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petere seek</td>
<td>petition</td>
<td>ap-petere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sistere stand</td>
<td>insist</td>
<td>as-sistere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tribuere give</td>
<td>tribute</td>
<td>at-tribuere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rapere (i) snatch</td>
<td>rapid</td>
<td>ar-ripere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **ante** ahead of, before; **circum-**, **circu-** around, about.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Verbs, etc.</th>
<th>Compounds</th>
<th>Related Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēdere come, go</td>
<td>cession</td>
<td>ante-cēdere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dare put, give</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>circum-dare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ire travel</td>
<td>itinerant</td>
<td>circu-ire</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. **cum** (co-, col-, com-, comb-, con-, cor-) together, up, fully or thoroughly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Verbs, etc.</th>
<th>Compounds</th>
<th>Related Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>emere take, buy</td>
<td>redeem</td>
<td>co-emere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōscere begin to</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>co-gnōscere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loqui speak</td>
<td>loquacious</td>
<td>col-loqui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parāre get</td>
<td>prepare</td>
<td>com-parāre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūrere burn</td>
<td></td>
<td>comb-ūrere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facere (i) make</td>
<td>fact</td>
<td>cōn-ficere¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rumpere break</td>
<td>rupture</td>
<td>cor-rumpere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Often printed ad-ficere, but pronounced af-ficere. ² Cf. note 1.
Formation of Compound Verbs

5. dē- down, from; dis- (dī-, dif-, dir-) from, apart, off.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Verbs, etc.</th>
<th>Compounds</th>
<th>Related Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capere (i) take</td>
<td>capere</td>
<td>dē-cipere (i) take down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facere (i) make</td>
<td>facere</td>
<td>dē-ficere (i) fail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dare put, give</td>
<td>data</td>
<td>dē-dere lay down, give up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specere (i) look</td>
<td>spy</td>
<td>dē-spicere (i) look down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medius middle</td>
<td>mid-</td>
<td>dī-midium from-the-middle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferre bear, carry</td>
<td>bear</td>
<td>dif-ferre bear apart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emere take</td>
<td>example</td>
<td>dir-imere break up or apart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pōnere set</td>
<td>position</td>
<td>dis-pōnere put at intervals</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. ex (ē-, ef-, ex-) out, out of, forth, up out.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Verbs, etc.</th>
<th>Compounds</th>
<th>Related Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dare put, give</td>
<td>dē-dere put forth, raise out</td>
<td>edit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūntiāre report</td>
<td>nuncio</td>
<td>é-nūntiāre tell out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facere (i) make</td>
<td>fact</td>
<td>ef-ficere (i) make out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferre bear, transfer</td>
<td>transfer</td>
<td>ef-ferre carry away; (ē-lātus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pedēs feet</td>
<td>pedestrian</td>
<td>ex-pedire free (the feet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequi follow</td>
<td>sequence</td>
<td>ex-sequi follow out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. in (il-, im-, ind-, ir-) in, on, into, upon, at; in-, un-.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Verbs, etc.</th>
<th>Compounds</th>
<th>Related Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lātus brought</td>
<td>relate</td>
<td>il-lātus brought upon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pedēs feet</td>
<td>pedal</td>
<td>im-pedire entangle (feet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pendere hang</td>
<td>pending</td>
<td>im-pendere hang over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-uere put off</td>
<td>ind-uere put on, clothe</td>
<td>induce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ridère laugh</td>
<td>ridicule</td>
<td>ir-ridère laugh at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opināns thinking</td>
<td>opinion</td>
<td>in-opināns unthinking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. inter-, intel- between, at intervals; intrō- into, in.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Verbs, etc.</th>
<th>Compounds</th>
<th>Related Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>legere gather</td>
<td>legend</td>
<td>intel-legere be aware</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēdere yield, come</td>
<td>cede</td>
<td>inter-cēdere come between</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facere (i) make</td>
<td>§ 219, 3</td>
<td>inter-ficere (i) do to pieces, kill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittere let go</td>
<td>mission</td>
<td>inter-mittere let go at intervals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcere draw, lead</td>
<td>duke</td>
<td>intrō-dūcere take into</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9. nec- not; ob (o-, ob-, obs-, oc-, of-, op-) in face of, against.

Simple Verbs, etc. | Compounds | Related Words
--- | --- | ---
ötium leisure, ease | neg-ötium not ease, work | negotiate
legere gather, pick | neg-legere not gather | negligent
läxi I gathered | neg-läxi I overlooked |
mittere let go | o-mittere let go by | omit
tenère hold, gain | ob-tinère hold against odds | § 219, 3
tendere stretch | os-tendere show | ostensibly
tetendi I stretched 4 | os-tendi I showed |
currere run | oc-currere run in the face of | occur
ferre bring | of-ferre bring before | offer
fuli I brought | ob-fuli I brought before |
látus brought | ob-látus being offered | oblation
pónere place, set | op-pónere put in way | opponent

10. per-, pel- through, over, to pieces, to destruction, very.

facere (i) do | factor | per-ficere (i) do through | perfect
íre go, travel | per-íre go to destruction | perish
tenère hold | tenant | per-tinère hold through | certain
pauci few | paucity | per-pauci very few (all told) | § 64

11. prae- ahead of, before; praeter- beyond, past, by.

cédere yield, go | cede | prae-cédere go ahead of | precede
habère hold, keep | have | prae-bère hold before, furnish | § 219, 4
facere (i) make, put | prae-ficere (i) put at head | prefect
íre go, travel | initial | praeter-íre go by, pass | preterit

12. pró- (pol-, por-, pro-, pró-, prōd-) forth, on, beforehand.

licēri bid, offer | pol-licēri offer beforehand, promise
regere go straight | Rex | por-rigere go straight on, extend
fugere (i) flee | fugitive | pro-fugere (i) flee forth
grādi (i) go, walk | grade | pró-grādi (i) go on | § 219, 2 progress
íre go, travel | exit | pród-íre go forth
Formation of Compound Verbs

13. sē-, sēd- apart, away, aside; re-, red- again, back.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Verbs, etc.</th>
<th>Compounds</th>
<th>Related Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cernere see</td>
<td>d:`scern</td>
<td>sē-cernere separate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crētus seen, taken</td>
<td>sē-crētus taken aside</td>
<td>secret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parāre get, put</td>
<td>prepare</td>
<td>sē-parāre set apart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red-itiō a going back</td>
<td>sēd-itiō going apart</td>
<td>sedition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēdere move</td>
<td>cede</td>
<td>sē-cēdere go apart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cessi I gave way</td>
<td>cess:ion</td>
<td>sē-cessi I withdrew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cūra care</td>
<td>curator</td>
<td>sē-cūrus having no care of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14. sub (sub-, suc-, suf-, sug-, sum-, sup-, sū-, sus-) under, up; as support or help.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ire</td>
<td>go, travel</td>
<td>it:nerant sub-ire undergo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequi</td>
<td>follow</td>
<td>sequence sub-sequi follow up subsequen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēdere</td>
<td>go, move</td>
<td>recede suc-cēdere come up or after succeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferre</td>
<td>bear</td>
<td>offer suf-ferre bear up under suffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerrere</td>
<td>make</td>
<td>belligerent sug-gerrere build up suggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gessi</td>
<td>I made</td>
<td>sug-gessi I built up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittere</td>
<td>let go</td>
<td>remit sum-mittere send as help submit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petere</td>
<td>seek</td>
<td>petition sup-petere be on hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portāre</td>
<td>bring</td>
<td>import sup-portāre bring up support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emere</td>
<td>take, buy</td>
<td>§ 219, 4 sū-mere pick up, take assume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēmi</td>
<td>I took</td>
<td>sū-mpsī I took up sumptuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specere (i)</td>
<td>look</td>
<td>species su-spicere (i) look up suspicious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capere (i)</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>capacity sus-cipere (i) undertake susceptible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenēre</td>
<td>hold</td>
<td>tenure sus-tinēre hold up, endure sustain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15. super over, above; trāns, trā- across, over.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>esse</td>
<td>be, remain</td>
<td>essence super-esse be over or left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dare</td>
<td>give, put</td>
<td>dative trā-dere hand over, § 219, 2 tradition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īre</td>
<td>go, travel</td>
<td>exit trāns-īre cross, go over transit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcere</td>
<td>lead</td>
<td>induce trā-dūcere lead or take over</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
221. a. Prepositional ideas are often reëchoed by the verb. Where there are several prepositional ideas in connection with a single verb, each is expressed separately.

Inde per Alps in Italian contendit from there he hurried-on over the Alps into Italy.

b. But a single prepositional idea is very often expressed twice; once by a preposition used with a noun, and again by the same preposition or a particle of similar meaning prefixed to the verb, especially in expressions of place and position.

Longē à domō abest he is far away from home  Cf. §§ 61 e, 230
Ā Rōmā discēdit he departs from-the-vicinity-of Rome
Ad oppidum accēdit he is coming-up to the town  Cf. § 220, 2
Cum Rōmānīs contendunt they contend with the Romans  § 62 a
Dē salūte dēspērant they give-up hope of saving themselves
Dē finibus suis exeunt they go-out of their borders  § 220, 6
Cōpiās (ex) castrīs ēdūcīt he leads-out his troops from camp
Eōs dēdūcīt ex his regionibus he takes them out of these parts
Eōs in insidiās indūcīt he draws them into a snare  Cf. § 60
Intrā finīs nostrōs ingrediuntur they enter inside our borders
Inter nōs et id silva intercēdit there is a wood between us and it
Inter hunc et mē mūrus interest there’s a wall between him and me
Cōpiās prō castrīs prōdūcīt leads-forth troops in front of camp
Sub nostram aciem succēdunt they come-up (hill) under our line
Cōpiās (trāns) flūmen trādūcō I lead my troops across the river

Frequentative Verbs

222. Some verbs denote an action as repeated or intensified.

a. Originals

beat, daze, spit,
twit, wrig, shove.

batter, dazzle, sputter,
twitter, wriggle, shuffle.
b. Latin frequentative verbs are made on the participial stems of other verbs and contain the element -tā- or -sā-.

c. | Originals | Frequentatives |
---|---|---|
 näre float | navy, naval | nātāre keep floating | natatorium |
 volāre fly | volatile | volitāre flit, bustle |
 habēre have, hold 4 | have | habitāre dwell in 6 | inhabit |
 dicere say, tell | diction | dictāre keep telling | dictate |
 specere (i) see | species | spectāre keep viewing | spectacle |
 verti turn self | invert | versāri busy self | versatile |
 iacere (i) throw | reject | lactāre toss, keep throwing | jet |
 venire come | convention | ventitāre come and go |

d. The originals of some frequentatives are uncertain.
dubitāre keep delaying, hesitate Inf.; doubt quin Sub. dubious
flāgitāre demand insistently or urgently 4 p 4 t § 230 h
solicitāre keep urging or insisting 4; urge on 4 solicitous

Inceptive Verbs

223. Verbs denoting the beginning of an action are formed by annexing the element -sce- (grow, become, begin to), which appears as -ish in the English vanish and flourish. See p. 12.

a. | Originals | Inceptive Verbs |
---|---|---|
 lūcère be bright | lucid | lūcēscere become (grow) bright |
 flōrère bloom | flower | flōrēscere begin to bloom flourish |
 frigère be cool | frigid | frigēscere grow cool refrigerator |
 alere feed | aliment | ad-olēscere grow up ad-olescent |
 alitus raised | altitude | ad-ultus grown up adult |
 valēre be well | valor | valēscere get well convalescent |
 prōficere (i) make forward, gain | profit | prōficisci begin to ad-
 creāre make | create | crēscere grow crescent, increase |
b. The originals are often missing or little used.

oblivisci become unmindful of, forget 2 § 230 b
reminisci become mindful of, recall, remember 2
nōscere become acquainted with, come to know 4

know, knowledge

recognize

nāscī spring up, rise, be born

nascent, innate, nation

cognōscere become aware of, find out, recognize

vetērāscere grow old, become established

inveterate, veteran

224. The Latin "Guide Posts"

Words meaning who, that, as, because, when, since, if, etc., introduce parts aside from the main statement, and show that the verbs, that go with them, are not the main verb. They are the "guide posts" pointing the way to the main verb by indicating how many subordinate verbs come before it.

qui, quae, quod who, which, that, as, that-he, since-he, though-he

quod, quoniam (w. Ind.) because, since, that, as, inasmuch-as

ut, uti, ubi, postquam, simul ac (w. Ind.) when, after, as-soon-as

ut, uti (w. Sub.) that, in-order-that, so-that, how

nē (w. Sub.) that...not, in-order-that...not

sī if; nisi if...not, unless; sīn but if

cum (w. Ind. denoting time) when;

(w. Sub. denoting cause) since, as

cum (w. Sub. denoting situation) when, while, after

cum (w. Sub.) although

quamquam, etsī (w. Ind.) even if, although

dum (w. Ind.) while; dum (w. Sub.) till, until; dum modo if only

1
Dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīx-era-t, prefectus est.

0
About fourth watch, as told-had-he, set-out-he.

He set out about the fourth watch, as he had told (them he would).

Ut and as are marked 1 because they show that one verb is coming before the main verb. Dixerat and he-had-told are
marked 0 because they show that no other verb is coming before the main verb is reached, unless another "guide" intervenes.

225. Each new "guide" adds one to the number of verbs expected before the main verb, and each subordinate verb reduces that number by one. Figures at any given point indicate how many verbs are thus far known to precede the main verb.

1
Caesar, quoniam senātus cēnsu-erat, utī, quī-cumque
1
Caesar, inasmuch-as senate decreed-had-it, that, who-ever
1 2 1
Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod-posset, Aeduōs dēfende-
Gaul province held-he, what could-he, Aeduans defend-
0 1 2 1
ret, Aeduōrum iniūriās neglēct-ūrus nōn era-t.
should-he, Aeduans' wrongs overlook-going-to not was-he.

Inasmuch as the senate had ordered, that, whoever held Gaul
(as his) province, should, as far as he was able, defend the Aeduans,
Caesar was not going to overlook the Aeduans' wrongs.

The first verb after a "guide" belongs with it, unless another "guide" intervenes.

Iūs est, ut, quī vincant, eīs, quōs vinca-nt imper-e-nt.¹
Law is, that, they who win, those, who-m win-they, rule-may.
It is a law, that those who win may rule those, whom they subdue.

¹ The figures should be reduced to 0 before a period. A semicolon
requires the same, as it indicates the practical completion of the sense.
Parts between semicolons may be treated as complete sentences.
The Framework

Iūs erat bellī, ut, qui vicissent, eis, quōs
Right was-it war-of, that they-who won-had-they, those, who-m
vicissent, quem ad modum vel-let imperāre. subtended-had-they, what after fashion like-d-they, rule-might-they.
It was the right of war, that those who had conquered, might rule those, whom they had subdued, after what fashion they liked.

226. If a word meaning and (or or nor) stands immediately after the main verb, it points to another main verb farther on; but if it follows a subordinate verb, it revives the force of the "guide" to which the subordinate verb belongs.

Caesar duās legiōnēs cōnscripsit et initā aestātē.
Caesar two legions enrolled-he and begun-at summer-at,
in Galliam quī dēduces-re-t, Quintum Pedium misit.
to Gaul that-he take-might-he, Quintus Pedius sent-he.
Caesar enlisted two legions and at the beginning of summer sent Quintus Pedius, that he might take (them) to Gaul.
Standing after cōnscripsit, et points on to misit.

Da-t negotium Senonibus, qui finitimī Belgīs
Gives-he task Senons-to, who borderers Belgians-to
era-nt, utī ea, quae apud eūs gerauntur,
were-they, that those, which among the-m going-on-are-they,
cognosc-ant, sēque de hīs rēbus certiorēm
learn-shall-they, him-and as-to these things pretty-certain
faci-ant. Hī omnēs nūntiā-vērunt, manus cōgī.
make-shall-they. They all report-ed-they bands gathered-be.
He assigned (it as) a task to the Senons, who were neighbors to the Belgians, that they should find out those (things) that were going on among them, and should keep him posted about these things. They all reported (that) bands (were) being gathered.

-que, and, connects faciant to cognoscant and renews the force of uti, which governs cognoscant.

227. Verbs are often omitted, where they are easily understood.

| Flūmen Dubis, | ut | circin-ō | circum-ductum | ( ) |
| River Doubs, | as-if | compasses-by | about-dug | ( ) |

Oppidum cingi-t.

Town girdles-it.

The river Doubs encircles the town, as if (it had been) drawn around it with a pair-of-compasses.

| Ėdūc tē-cum etiam omnīs tu-ōs, | 1 | sī minus | ( ), 0 |
| Out-take thee-with also all thy-men, if not-all ( ), | 1 |

Quam plūrimōs ( ).

As most ( ).

Take out all your men with you too, if (you can) not (take them) all (take out) as many as (you can).

The full Latin sentence is: Ėdūc tēcum etiam omnīs tuōs, sī minus (potes), quam plūrimōs (potes).

We say: as well as he can or as best he can. Latin uses only the latter form: quam optimē potest, as best he can, or, quam celerrimē potest, as quickest he can, or, quam maximum mālitium numerum, as greatest a number of soldiers he can.
Our task and how it is to be accomplished

228. Nothing can make the purpose of well-graded readings clearer, or better emphasize the importance of helps such as are given in this appendix than a glance at the problem which is solved for you below.

It is a rather complicated sentence from the author you are likely first to attack, and the solution serves at once to illustrate the most convenient and satisfactory method by which you must already have attained the ability to attack that author and to outline the surest steps by which you may still attain such ability, if you have not already done so.

229. You will probably regard this sentence difficult at first sight.

of Sentences

But you can easily read in Latin and understand:

1 a. Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolēbant.
2 a. Germānī autem ¹ Rhēnum trānsībant.
3 a. Germānī in Galliam veniēbant.
4 a. Multitūdō Germānōrum in Galliam veniēbat.
5 a. Germānī autem Rhēnum trānsībant et magna multitūdō eōrum in Galliam veniēbat.

Note. — Cōnsuēscēbant, were becoming accustomed, assumes the tense of trānsībant (2 a) and veniēbant (3 a) and changes them to present infinitives. See § 132.

6 a. Germānī autem Rhēnum trānsire cōnsuēscēbant.
7 a. Germānī autem Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam magna eōrum multitūdō venīre cōnsuēscēbat.²

Note. — The statement of an actual occurrence is changed to the infinitive with subject accusative when it becomes the subject of a verb. §§ 142, 152 a.

8 a. Germānōs in Galliam venīre perīculōsum erat.
9 a. Germānōs autem cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire Rōmānīs perīculōsum erat. (Cf. 2 a and 6 a above.)

Note. — A declaration changes its form when it becomes the object of a verb. §§ 142, 153. Here erat becomes esse.

10 a. Paulātim ³ autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire Rōmānīs perīculōsum esse vidēbat.
11 a. Magnam multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam venīre populō Rōmānō perīculōsum esse vidēbat.
12 a. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre populō Rōmānō perīculōsum esse vidēbat.

¹ Autem however. ² Agrees with its nearest subject. ³ Paulātim gradually, little by little.
1 b. *Hominēs* sibi temperātūrī erant.
2 b. *Cimbrī* Teutonīque Galliam occupāverant.
3 b. *Cimbrī* et Teutoni *ita* fēcerant.
4 b. Rhodanu *Galliam* ā prōvinciā dividēbat.
5 b. *Sēquanī* proximi prōvinciae¹ ex Gallīs sunt. Facile erat Rhodanum ē Sēquanīs in prōvinciā trānsīre.

_Note._ — *Cum* with the _subjunctive_ may mean _after_. §§ 115 b, c, 224.

6 b. *Cum* Cimbrī Teutonīque omnem Galliam occupāvissent, in prōvinciām exībant. Ex prōvinciā in Italiam contendēbant.

_Note._ — _Quīn, but, so that . . . not, takes the subjunctive._ § 115.

7 b. *Hominēs* barbarī sibi temperātūrī nōn erant, _quīn_ in prōvinciām exīrent. § 155 b.

8 b. *Hominēs* barbarōs sibi temperātūrōs nōn esse existimābat, _quīn_ in prōvinciām nostram exīrent.

9 b. *Hominēs* ferōs ac barbarōs sibi temperātūrōs nōn existimābat, _quīn_ ex prōvinciā in Italiam contenderent.

_Note._ — _Ut_ with the indicative often means _as_. § 147 b.


11 b. *Hominēs* ferī ac barbarī temperātūrī nōn erant, _quīn, cum_ omnem Galliam occupāssent, in prōvinciām exīrent, _cum_ Rhodanu Gallōs ā prōvinciā divideret.

_Note._ — But in indirect statements, all subordinate verbs stand in the subjunctive. § 137 b.

12 b. *Hominēs* ferōs ac barbarōs sibi temperātūrōs nōn existimābat, _quīn, cum_ omnem Galliam occupāssent, _ut_ ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciām exīrent atque inde² in Italiam contenderent, _cum_ Rhodanu Gallōs ā prōvinciā divideret.

¹ _I.e._ the cisalpine province, now northern Italy.
² _Inde from there._
How to Read

"Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rēnum trānsire et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venire, populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs existimābat, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliām contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanūs divideret." §§ 225, 226.

The tricks thus employed by Latin authors to express thoughts are limited in number. You can learn them all (or nearly all) beforehand and then read the authors. But to become used to them and master them you must read. This is what is meant by preparing for Caesar, Cicero, and other writers; and if you have not read an abundance of easy Latin intelligently, you are not prepared to read the average Latin of their writings without the greatest drudgery and difficulty.

What shall one do in order to become able to read the authors easily and comfortably and enjoyably?

1. Read easy Latin first. 2. Read connected Latin from the first. 3. Re-read it till you master it. 4. Make yourself understand yourself as you read. 5. Read plenty of Latin that is easy to master. 6. Read aloud to train your eye, to get your own tongue accustomed to narrate to you, and to impress the Latin forms and phrases (in their natural order) on your own ear and understanding. 7. Read the Latin both before and after translating. 8. Read harder and harder sentences and read them harder and harder, and you will soon be able to read anything.

1 Praesertim especially.
The Governing Power of Words

230. a. What appears to be direct or indirect object in English is expressed in a variety of ways in Latin according to the nature of the governing word. The governing power of certain words (especially verbs) will frequently be indicated by using abbreviations to point out some of the more common constructions that must be used with them. Other constructions will be learned by experience and observation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONSTRUCTIONS</th>
<th>ABBR.</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive as subject</td>
<td>Inf. s.</td>
<td>Legere licet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive as object</td>
<td>Inf. o.</td>
<td>Legere cónātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive with subject Accusative</td>
<td>4 Inf.</td>
<td><em>Puerum īre</em> iubet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Puerum īre</em> patitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Libri cupidus est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Puerī interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Consentīō interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Servis præest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Takes the Genitive</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Takes the Dative</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Takes the Accusative</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Puerum vocat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Takes the Ablative</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Librō útitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. of the person Abl. of the thing</td>
<td>4 p 6 t</td>
<td><em>Puerum librō</em> dōnat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Puerum librō</em> spoliat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Puerō librōm dōnat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. of the person Acc. of the thing</td>
<td>3 p 4 t</td>
<td>Puerō librōm imperat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Puerō librōm ēripit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two Accusatives</td>
<td>4 p 4 t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. (thing) ab abl. (person)</td>
<td>4 t ab p</td>
<td>Librumā puerō postulat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Id ab aliis quaeit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Id ā mē petit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ë, ex abl. (person)</td>
<td>4 t exp</td>
<td>Id ex puerō quaeit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. and Dat.</td>
<td>4 t 3 p</td>
<td>Id puerō persuādet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ut-clause (thing)</td>
<td>3 p ut w. Sub.</td>
<td>Puerō persuādet ut eat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Translate of the boy.  
2 Translate from the boy.  
3 Translate of others.
ENGLISH—LATIN EXERCISES

(Based on text and word lists and paradigms of Appendix. No English—Latin vocabulary necessary.)

While striving to master the forms of a few nouns thoroughly, pupils often console themselves with the thought that they are preparing to recognize the cases of all nouns promptly and unerringly. Their expectations may well be fulfilled in forms like

sōlis virtūtī magnus amīce lūcem tōtō
bonōs cornūs omnīs āera rēgum Circēs

because no other case has the same spelling. But when we remark that no Latin scholar on earth can possibly tell the case of

omnis amīci tempus mare decem fīliō
custōs fūctūs equīs oppida rēgnum diēs

without first seeing them used in sentences, it becomes evident why the pupil’s hope of being able to tell the case of a word by the last letter or so is every day being shattered in Latin classes.

The fact is that the character and form of most Latin words are not to be determined so much by knowing their lineage as by observing the “company they keep” — i.e. their relation to the words with which they are used.

These exercises aim to develop the habit of looking at words from both points of view and to train pupils to employ both these indispensable methods of procedure, viz.:

a. Using forms found in model sentences or like those given in paradigms, and

b. Writing forms of other words known to be correct from their use in easy passages of the text.

Note. — Easy exercises accomplish the desired results far more readily than more difficult ones. These exercises have been made especially simple and easy, as they are intended either for rapid oral or written work. They may be used at intervals, as the reading proceeds, to clinch the pupil’s grasp of forms, while their use is most apparent, and to assist in developing a clearer and more definite idea of the machinery through which the human mind works to express thoughts both in English and Latin.

281
One-Word Exercises. English Case-Forms

English cannot be turned into Latin without careful study of the use of each word. The purpose of Exercises I–VI is to compel attention to the construction of single words in English and Latin sentences. Constructions that are apt to be confounded or need to be contrasted are studied together. Sections marked (a) in Exercises I–VIII require the use of the nouns found in §§ 75–6 and other words having the same endings.

Exercise I — Predicate Nominative and Direct Object

Study carefully §§ 5 a, d, e; cf. § 74, 3, 4; 76. Omit words in parentheses. Number each. Commence each exercise with a capital. Punctuate as in English.

a. 1. (It is) evening. 2. (I love) the evening. 3. (I see) the master. 4. (He calls) his son. 5. (That is) the son. 6. (He is called) Mark. 7. (He is thought) an enemy. 8. (He is) unfriendly. 9. (That island is) Rhodes. 10. (Do you see) Rhodes? 11. (That is) Philippi. 12. (Do you see) Philippi? 13. (That is) the boy. 14. (We see) the boy. 15. (They are) boys. 16. (They see) the boys. 17. (That is) a book. 18. (He has) a book. 19. (Those are) books. 20. (They have) books.

b. Express the following in Latin (see pp. 3–5) as predicate nominatives.


Express the following in Latin as direct objects.


¹ Predicate nominatives are either nouns or adjectives; p. 5 note, § 83.
EXERCISE II — Direct and Indirect Object

Study carefully § 5 d, f; cf. §§ 56, 3; 74, 3, 4, 6 and 93. Use words occurring in § 5 and on pages 2–5 of the text.

a. 1. (It is) Mark. 2. (Call) Mark. 3. (Give) Mark (this). 4. (I see) pupils. 5. (Are they) pupils? 6. (They are not) masters. 7. (Tell) the pupils (so). 8. (He saw) boys. 9. (Did he tell) the boys (so)? 10. (He told) most (of them). 11. (See) the books. 12. (Are they) books? 13. (Some are) pupils; (others are) teachers. 14. (That is) a village. (See 5 g and Vocab.)

1. (Call) the boys. 2. (Do not call) the master. 3. (They are called) globes. 4. (See) the globes. 5. (It is) the master. 6. (That is) a boy. 7. (He is not) a pupil. 8. (It is) his son. 9. (Give) the son (a book). 10. (Call) a boy. 11. (Is he called) Mark? 12. (He calls) most-of-them. 13. (We choose) the boys. 14. (Tell) the boys (so). 15. (Give) the sons (this).

b. Express as indirect objects (see pp. 6–8, 11 and § 74).


Express as direct objects (see pp. 6–11 and § 74, 4).


Express as predicate nominatives (see pp. 6–11; § 74, 3).


¹ Use two or more different words.
² Which are plural? Which neuter? § 55 c, e, f.
Elements of Sentences

EXERCISE III — Direct Address and Exclamations

Study § 74, 7 and 8. Cf. §§ 75–6. Use words on pp. 2–5.


EXERCISE IV — Ownership Asserted; Ownership Assumed

Study § 5 e. Cf. §§ 56, 2, 3; 105 and 106 b.


Express in Latin (see pp. 7–14).

1. Earth’s. 2. Of the moon. 3. Its. 4. Their. 5. Stars’. 6. Of the sky. 7. Of the sun. 8. Of this figure. 9. Of the smaller dipper. 10. And-of-them.

EXERCISE V — Measures of Extent and Difference; Time

Study § 68. Cf. § 5 d, j; 56, 4, 6; 74, 17, 18, 19.

a. 1. (It is) autumn. 2. During autumn. 3. During the evening. 4. At evening. 5. Within a year. 6. (I see) hamlets. 7. (They are) villages. 8. (It is) the year. 9. A year’s (time). 10. Years’ (work). 11. (Time) of year. 12. (Is there any end) to the year? 13. (It lasts) a year. 14. (It lasts) for years (§ 56, 4). 15. A year (later). 16. (Ten) years (after).

1 Lūdus. 2 In more than one way. 3 §§ 109 b, c. 4 Autumnus.
b. Express in Latin; see pp. 6, 10, 12, 18, 19.

1. During-the-day. 2. During the night. 3. So great a distance (§ 74, 17). 4. At midday. 5. In the morning. 6. All day. 7. Late in the day. 8. All night long. 9. The whole year. 10. At midnight. 11. At the rising (of the sun). 12. At night. 13. The higher the better (74, 19). 14. (Is away) a-great-deal. 15. A-great-deal better. 16. Next year. 17. Last year. 18. (Can)not (read) at all. 19. A year before. 20. The year before. 21. (Is away) two years. 22. Seven years later. 23. Yesterday. 24. Today. 25. Tomorrow. 26. On that day. 27. In six years. 28. For six years.

Exercise VI — Subject Nominative; Subject Accusative

Study §§ 56, 1 and 4; 121, 122, 125, 134, 142 a. Cf. § 74, 1 and 2.


b. Express as subjects of finite verbs (see pp. 2–11).


Express as subjects of infinitives.

1. A globe. 2. The moon. 3. The sky. 4. The sun. 5. Light. 6. Night. 7. Earth. 8. This light. 9. These lights. 10. Globes. 11. Stars. 12. Us; me; it; them.

1 Latin adverb. 2 English adverb; Abl. in Latin. 3 More than one way. 4 Of which declension is each? § 55 c.
Elements of Sentences

a. 1. (There goes) a boy. 2. (I see) the boy (go). 3. (He bade) the boy (go). 4. (There) he (goes). 5. Horses (run). 6. (I see) horses (run). 7. The sons (go). 8. (I let) the sons (go). 9. (Where are) the boys? 10. (There are) the boys! 11. (He orders) the boys (to go). 12. (Here is) the boy! 13. (Where is) the master? 14. (He is calling) the boy. 15. The boy (is called). 16. (He bids) the boy (hurry). 17. (There go) the boys. 18. (I see) the boys (run). 19. (They order) the school (closed). 20. The school (is closed). 21. (It is closed) for a year (§ 56, 4). 22. (Here comes) Mark.

1 If the word here, there, or where stands first in an English sentence, the subject usually stands after the verb. 2 § 146 a.

Two-Word Exercises 1

Predicate Nominative — what a person or thing is, becomes, is made or called or said to be, etc.

Predicate Accusative — what one knows, thinks, declares or learns a person or thing to be or become, etc.

Exercise VII — Study § 5 a–c; cf. §§ 74, 3; 146, 1. Use words (pp. 24–6) like paradigms §§ 75–6.

a. 1. Paulus (is considered) a friend. 2. (I think) Paulus a friend. 3. (I know) Paulus (to be) a friend. 4. (I see) my friend Paulus. 5. His son (is thought) hostile. 6. (I think) his son (to be) an enemy. 7. (I call) his son an enemy. 8. The boy (is named) Paulus. 9. (He calls) his son Paulus. 10. (We know) the boy (to be) Paulus. 11. (We know) the boys (to be) friendly. 12. The master (is) a Greek.

b. Express as predicate nominatives (see pp. 5, 6, 10–1, 14).


1 In exercises marked (a). 2 More than one way.
Uses of Case Forms


Express as predicate accusatives (see pp. 5, 6, 10–2).


Express as predicate nominatives (see pp. 15–21).


EXERCISE VIII — Predicate of the Object; Appositives

Note. — Predicate Nouns are attached to the direct object in such a way as to become a part of the assertion.

Ex. (They count) the boy a friend. Cf. § 5 b.

Write the word for boy as direct object; then friend, predicate of the object (accusative). Puerum Puerum amicum.

Study § 5 b and § 93; cf. § 74, 5.

1. (He considers) the Romans his enemies. 2. Romans (seem) friendly. 3. Most-of-them (are not) enemies. 4. (I call) most-of-them friends. 5. Our friend Mark (is calling). 6. Our friend Mark’s (plan). 7. (Tell) our friend Mark. 8. (They see) your friend the master. 9. Friend Mark! 10. (We know) the boy (to be) Mark.

1 More than one way. 2 Of which declension is each? § 55 c; cf. §§ 42, 2; 52. 3 § 79 a.
b. *Express as predicates of the object (see pp. 3, 12–5).*
1. A globe. 2. The East. 3. The West. 4. The South. 5. The pointers. 6. The North. 7. The west wind.

*Express as subjects with appositives (pp. 15, 17, 19).*
1. The first (one), Boreas. 2. The latter being adjusted. 3. The star Polaris. 4. Water when-falling (p. 42).

*Express as objects with appositives (see pp. 20–3).*
1. Places that-were-deserted. 2. The fruits that-are-ripe. 3. Fields and woods that are white.

*Study § 94. Use words found on pp. 24–6.*

a. 1. O (fortunate) Greeks who-were-philosophers. 2. (They call) the Greek Theodorus. 3. (He names) his son Lucius. 4. (He is older) than my friend Aemilius. 5. (They saw) Rhodes when-it-was-a hamlet.1 6. (He is) a boy that-is-friendly. 7. The master who-is-our-friend (told us this). 8. (We knew) his son when-a-boy. 9. (He saw) Philippi when-it-was-a-mere-village. 10. The son (is learning it) while-he-is a boy. 11. (We told) most of-them as-they-were-friendly. 12. (Invite) the Greeks even-though-they-are-enemies. 13. The master (lived here) when-a-boy. 14. (Tell) the son, if-he-seems-friendly. 15. (Ask) the boy even-if-he-is-a Greek. 16. (We shall ask) the Romans because-they-are-our-friends. 17. (Invite) Titus since-he-is-my son. 18. (They are stronger) than Mark when-he-was-a boy. 19. A boy who-was-his-friend (warned him).

**Exercise IX — Infinitives in English and Latin**

*Study §§ 121–3, 127–8, 130. What is a finite verb? § 125. Use Infinitives only. Omit words in parentheses.*

1. (I ought) to call. 2. (I will) call. 3. (They may) be called. 4. (I can) be called. 5. Calling (may) be done. 6. (I

1 Study § 94.
ought) to try. 7. (I can) make effort. 8. (I can) order. 9. (It may) be ordered. 10. Order (may) be given. 11. To read. 12. (It can) be read. 13. (I may) take. 14. (We can) let. 15. (It may) be heard. 16. (I can) send. 17. (He is willing) to go. 18. Traveling (may) be done. 19. (I may) be unwilling. 20. (It cannot) be. 21. (He began) traveling. 22. (They dare not) speak. 23. (Doesn't he dare) to be heard?

**Exercises of one to three words.** *See §§ 131–4 a.*

*a.* 1. Trying (is permitted). 2. (One may) try. 3. Reading (is allowed). 4. Bribing (is) giving. 5. Call (is) speak. 6. To order (is) to allow. 7. To be taken. 8. Be going. 9. To be. 10. To be put. 11. Be able. 12. Let. 13. To wish. 14. Prefer. 15. Be unwilling.

1. (I seem) to be able. 2. (Seem) to be. 3. (Seem) to hear. 4. (Kept) from trying. 5. (Ordered) to read. 6. (Kept) from being. 7. (Forced) to let. 8. (Said) to be.

1. (I wish) to call my friends (§ 133). 2. (We can) be friends. 3. (He seems) to be unfriendly. 4. (Might) be called friend. 5. (Is ordered) to call the boys. 6. (Seems) to be calling the master. 7. (Appears) to be a wall. 8. (May) be willing to speak. 9. (I may) prefer to read. 10. To try to go.

*b.* 1. (Hear) Mark call (§ 134). 2. (I hear) calling done. 3. (Let) a boy go. 4. (I think) Mark willing. 5. (Regard) boys able to speak. 6. (I order) boys to be called. 7. (I hear) the son call. 8. (I hear) it ordered. 9. (Hear) the order given. 10. (I saw) a boy take a horse. 11. (I saw) the horses taken.

*Express as direct objects of other verbs (pp. 21–2, 26).*

1. To ripen. 2. Reaping. 3. Picking. 4. To be. 5. To become white. 6. To pick. 7. To gather. 8. To make-ready. 9. To speak. 10. To learn.
Express as subjects of other verbs (cf. §§ 129, 131, 133):


§ 131.

Complete Sentences

EXERCISE X — The Present Indicative (Finite)


1. He is calling. 2. The boy is calling. 3. She is calling the boy. 4. A boy is being called. 5. It is called Rhodes. 6. (The island) is called Rhodes. 7. He is called Mark. 8. The boy is called Mark. 9. Calling-is-being-done. 10. They call. 11. Boys call. 12. They call the boy Lucius. 13. The boy is called Lucius. 14. He calls the boys friends.

1. The boys are called friendly. 2. They order. 3. The order-is-given. 4. They are ordered. 5. Reading is being done. 6. It is read. 7. They do go. 8. One goes.

Note.—Every language has its own peculiar order of words. Latin words must be written or spoken in the natural Latin order. The infinitive regularly stands before indicatives meaning may, can, let, wish, try, will, prefer, are heard, are ordered, etc. Imitate the order of words in the model sentences given in §§ 130–4.

EXERCISE XI — Indicatives and Infinitives

a. 1. They call. 2. They can call (§ 121). 3. They are trying. 4. They may try. 5. It is permitted to try. 6. One may read. 7. They read. 8. They will not read. 9. They

1 Place the verb at the end of the sentence or of its clause.
Indicatives and Infinitives

will-rather hear. 10. He prefers to hear. 11. He is reading. 12. He is ordered to read. 13. He is ordered to go. 14. It is being read. 15. It can be read. 16. She reads.

Infinitives with Indicatives (§§ 129, 132; cf. § 155).


Express in Latin (as found on pp. 22–3; cf. §§ 136–7).

Irr. -ä- -ē- -e- -i- -i-

brings blows shines\(^1\) burns there begins raves
becomes roars sees\(^2\) grows looks-down comes\(^3\)
(they) are blow see fall begin come\(^4\)
become bend are silent seek look-down go\(^4\)
are-away\(^5\) move are-rigid dry-up take; make\(^6\) hear

Express in Latin (see pp. 10, 20–3; cf. §§ 181–3).

is called is seen is spoken of is-made\(^7\) is heard
detains-itself seems turns-itself\(^8\) dies bribes
are called seem feed (selves) die bribe
gather (selves) dread come-back let open
attempt are-mixed help-selves\(^9\) go (§ 206) go out


\(^1\) p. 12. \(^2\) § 74. \(^3\) p. 15. \(^4\) p. 24. \(^5\) p. 10. \(^6\) p. 21. \(^7\) § 212. \(^8\) p. 19. \(^9\) p. 26.

Note. — A former thought or statement is often mentioned as a part of a new thought or statement (§ 142). Former thoughts are often expressed as the direct object of verbs meaning see, hear, perceive, know, say, read, order, bid, let, wish (§ 142).

d. 1. The master calls. 2. They hear the master call. 3. Boys try. 4. He lets the boys try. 5. The sons speak. 6. They let the sons speak. 7. The-order-is-given. 8. They hear the-order-given. 9. The master is reading. 10. The boys wish the master to read. 11. The son goes. 12. He lets his son go. 13. They hear that the son goes. 14. The boys try. 15. They wish the boys to try. 16. He wishes that the boys try. 17. It is being read. 18. They wish it to be read.

e. Imitate the sentences on pp. 12 and 13.

In the morning the sun rises. It rises off east. We see the sun rise. At mid-day the sun is high in the sky. We call the mid-day noon. The sun shines all day. We see the sun shining in the sky. Late in the day it sets. We see (it) set off west. At evening it-gets-dark. The stars grow bright. We see the stars grow bright. The moon rises off east. We see the moon rise. It shines all night. We see the moon shining in the sky. Late at night the moon sets. The stars also seem to set in the west.

f. Express in Latin as found in the text.

(We) are (p. 16); call, see (p. 12); get (p. 7); hear (p. 13). (We) are-away, stand, like, choose (p. 24); desire (p. 26). (We) are able (p. 48); are called (§ 187); are taught (p. 43). (We) think (for ourselves), help-ourselves, measure (p. 38, § 182).

1 § 146 a. 2 or wish.
(We) look, speak-of, declare, know, know-not, inquire (p. 42).  
(We) notice, regard, learn, become-acquainted-with, are able,  
advance-ourselves, become, distinguish, can, are taught (p. 45).  
(We) get, go out, make, are-made (p. 46).  
(We) shall-note, have-said, were, shall-learn, shall-follow (p. 34).  

Express in Latin as found in the text or paradigms.  
(Thou) art (p. 57); art reading (p. 5); askest (p. 43);  
(Thou) callest (§ 187); art rejoicing; dost-understand (p. 57);  
takest (§ 202); hearest (§ 207); goest (§ 212).  
(Thou) canst (§ 183); art called; art excited; art forgetful  
(p. 57); art taken (§ 202); art heard (§ 207).  
(Thou) wilt-have-completed; wilt-begin; wilt-be-clad (p. 57).  
(You) did-read; are-reading; will-read (p. 10).  
(I) am; think; am called; hold; rejoice; understand (p. 57);  
take (§ 202); hear (§ 207); can; could;¹ was; were¹ (§ 183).  

Exercise XII — Commands; The Position of the Vocative  

*Study Imperative forms. See §§ 183 c, 186, 189, 191 b, 194,  
196 b, 199, 201 b, 204, 206 b, 209, 211 b, 214. Cf. § 170, note.*  

The negative of a command or entreaty is nē (not). The  
negative of a declaration is nōn (not).  

Nōli, nōlite² (do not) followed by the infinitive is far more  
common and more polite than nē with the imperative.  

Nē puerum vocā! Nōli eum vocāre Nōn vocat  
don’t call the boy! do not call him he is not calling  

1. Call the master, Mark.³  2. Don’t call the boys!  3. Do  
not call the boys.  4. Go, boy! Don’t be called.  5. Go,  
boys;³ don’t be called!  6. Try,⁴ Aemilius.  7. Try, boys!  

¹ More than one way.  ² § 186.  ³ § 56, 5.  ⁴ §§ 181-2.
8. Do read,¹ master! Order² the boys to read. Bid Mark (to) try. 9. Read, Mark! Don't be bidden. 10. Let³ the boys go, master! 11. Let Titus be invited, boys. Don't let Paulus hear! Do not let³ the master hear. 12. Go, boy! Don't be ordered. Don't be caught. 13. Be friendly, Mark.

¹ Cf. § 199. ² Cf. § 194. ³ Cf. § 206 b.

EXERCISE XIII — Adverbs and Indeclinable Numerals

Study § 69 and the table of numerals, p. 29.

The boy has a book. He reads well. The boys have books. They can read well. The barbarian is not a pupil. He can not read. Most Greeks can read. The majority (of) Romans can read well. Romans speak (in-) Latin. Mark speaks (in-) Latin. He can speak well. Titus speaks better. Most pupils speak very well. Theodorus speaks differently, He speaks (in-) Greek. The barbarians do not speak (in-) Greek. They cannot even speak (in-) Latin. The Gaul¹ tries to speak Latin. He speaks as well as he can. Theodorus speaks badly. The master calls the boys. They hear the-calling-done. They do not wish to go. He calls again-and-again. Afterward though-unwilling² they go as quickly as possible. He tells (bids) them to read. They read very well. They read as long-as they can. Afterward he lets them go.

1. How long is he absent³? ² He is away for a-long-time. 3. The master calls the boys more-than-once. 4. They are far away.⁵ 5. They do not hear. 6. They are too far away. 7. They stay (are) away ³ too long. 8. They go away ⁴ as far as possible. 9. They wander⁶ far and wide. 10. They go away very seldom. 11. They do not love the master as much as they fear him. 12. They do not wish the master ill.

¹ Gallus. ² invit. ³ § 185. ⁴ abeunt. ⁵ vagantur.
Adverbs, Numerals, and Prepositions 295

1. There are ten pupils. 2. Apollonius (3) has fifty books. 3. Titus gives Theodorus books. 4. The boy does not read well. 5. He reads as best he can. 6. The barbarians \(^2\) cannot even read. 7. The boys read more easily. 8. Marcus reads the book five times. 9. He loves to read. 10. He reads as rapidly as he can. 11. He often makes-mistakes.\(^2\) 12. Titus loves horses especially. 13. He loves horses more than (he loves) books. 14. \(^3\) Titus (3) has twenty horses.\(^1\) 15. He gives the master books. 16. The master reads very well. 17. They express-themselves otherwise than the master (speaks).

\(^1\) See § 62 f. \(^2\) errat. \(^3\) (3) = Dat. (1) = Nom.; cf. § 105.

Exercise XIV — The Use of Prepositions

Note. — Some Latin prepositions are always followed by the accusative case; some always take the ablative; in and sub may take either case. Each Latin preposition has just one underlying idea, that we cannot express exactly with any one word. Each partial meaning given must be taken in the sense of all the others. English prepositions have no exact equivalents in Latin.

Ex. They send Mark a book. Cf. § 5 f.
Write the word for book (direct obj.)
Distance is involved. Use ad
Ad governs the Acc. case
Dare § 128 means give or send

Ex. He starts for the fields. Cf. § 5 g.
Destination; in with Acc.
Proficisci start (like loqui § 136)

Ex. He seems (a man) of friendly feeling toward Titus.
Amicō animō in Titum vidētur.
Use a preposition with the accusative in each. Study § 57.

1. In-the-direction-of the hamlet. 2. (Wait) till evening! 3. Near the village. 4. Up to the walls.\(^1\) 5. They go toward the fields. 6. Up on the wall. 7. Close-by the village.\(^3\) 8. He is next-to Mark. 9. He is ordered to go ahead-of the boys. 10. The pupil is in-care-of the master. 11. They are going among friends. 12. They are wandering in-the-vicinity-of the village. 13. They happen\(^3\) upon a barbarian. 14. He is starting for school. 15. Between the pupils.

Use only prepositions with the ablative. Study § 58.

1. From-the-direction-of the village. 2. From a boy (up). 3. He is called by a boy. 4. Away from the walls. 5. From-the-direction-of Rhodes. 6. Down from the wall. 7. The boy is with the master. 8. They are among friends. 9. He is on the wall. 10. And for this reason. 11. He speaks concerning the books. 12. A few of our men are speaking. 13. He speaks for his friends. 14. They are (§ 185) far away from the school (§ 221\(b\)). 15. He is in the village.

Use at least one preposition in each exercise. Study § 60.

1. He sends Mark a book. 2. They are on the wall. 3. They lead the horses up on a hill. 4. Titus goes to the village (§ 5\(g\)). 5. He puts the boys to flight. 6. The boys have in mind to call the master (§ 105). 7. Call the boys to the house, Titus. 8. They are far away from the house (§ 221\(b\)). 9. Titus sends Theodorus a book. 10. Our friends are at the village. 11. They return home from the village. 12. The boy

\(^1\) § 63\(a\). \(^2\) vicus -i, m. \(^3\) incidere, cf. §§ 197, 221\(b\).
goes with the horses. 13. Mark is one of them. 14. Not a few of the boys are in the school. 15. They rush to arms. 16. He is (a boy) of unfriendly mind toward the Greeks (§ 62 g).

Use no prepositions. For case forms see §§ 56, 60–2, 76.

1. Give a book to Mark! 2. They ride on horses (§ 62 b). 3. Apollonius goes to Rhodes. 4. They return home. 5. Mark goes to Philippi. 6. He is in Cyprus. 7. They go (out) from home (§ 221 b). 8. Mark gives Theodorus a book. 9. They return at evening. 10. They are coming-back from Rhodes. 11. They till the land with horses. 12. They wait for a year. 13. It is the master's son. 14. It is the house of Titus. 15. The field is next (§ 68 c, Ex.) to the village (3).

Use one preposition with the accusative in each. § 57.

1. Beyond the village. 2. In the eyes of Apollonius. 3. At my house. 4. At Titus' house. 5. In which direction are they going? 6. In sight of town. 7. They are wandering over the fields. 8. Because of the height of the walls.

Use one preposition with the ablative in each. § 58.

1. One of them is returning. 2. There is a bridge over (on) the river. 3. One of the boys is going out from home. 4. In comparison with the books. 5. Not a few of the pupils are trying. 6. They wait-for Titus in front of the walls. 7. I take Titus for a friend. 8. They go along with the master. 9. He is among the boys. 10. The master returns ahead of the pupils. 11. In behalf of the barbarians.

1 currere; cf. § 197. 2 reverti like locui, § 136; see § 182. 3 See § 66 c. 4 exspectare.
Elements of Sentences

EXERCISE XV — Indefinite Numbers

Study § 64. Use prepositions in Nos. 14 and 16.

1. How-many pupils are there? 2. There are many. 3. They are going home. 4. They see horses. 5. The horses belong to Titus. 6. Titus sees several. 7. How many does Theodorus see? 8. He sees five horses. 9. The master sees just-as-many. 10. Mark sees as many as Titus. 11. The Gaul sees none. 12. How many are going? 13. Our (men) are going. 14. Titus takes as many as possible with him. 15. The majority wish to go. 16. Not-a-few of the boys ride on horses.

EXERCISE XVI — Indefinite Pronouns (Masculine)

Study §§ 40, 65–6 and 108–10 masculine only. See § 74.

Use one preposition in each sentence (except 12, 13, 15, 16).

1. The boys are wandering in the fields. 2. A-few are in the school. 3. Some prefer to remain (§ 128) in school. 4. Very few are going to the village. 5. The master goes with the boys. 6. They go to the fields. 7. She sees the boys go to school. 8. She sees her (people) go to the village. 9. They call their men into the house. 10. She sends her (friends) books (§ 5 f). 11. My-people are of friendly feeling toward Mark. 12. The good-men love horses. 13. Horses do not like bad-men. 14. The good are of friendly mind toward the bad. 15. Some praise Mark, others blame him. 16. The one praises Mark, the other (praises) Titus.

1. One praises one, another another. 2. Which one of the (two) boys blames Mark? 3. Neither-one blames Mark. 4. Neither (§ 66) Mark nor any one of the boys speaks. 5. Some blame one, others another. 6. The ones praise the master, the others blame him. 7. Nobody calls the pupils. 8. Who is ordering the boy to speak? 9. He alone is going home. 10. They alone return home (§ 182 b).
EXERCISE XVII — First and Second Declension Nouns

Note. — All the nouns thus far given belong to the same class as alumnus, pl. alumni. First Declension nouns belong to the same class as our word formula, pl. formuleae (borrowed from Latin). Neuter nouns of the Second Declension are of the same class as stratum, pl. stratae. They have -um (rarely -us) in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular and -a in the same cases of the plural. Note that the ending -a occurs in the singular of the one class but in the plural of the other.

Study § 77. Use no prepositions. Cf. §§ 56, 60.

1. In Alexandria. 2. In Rhodes. 3. At Arpinum. 4. In Philippi. 5. From Syracuse. 6. At Leuctra. 7. He is Titus' son. 8. She is a daughter of Titus. 9. Arpinum is a town. 10. Son's and daughter's. 11. Town's. 12. The sons' and daughters'. 13. Towns'. 14. He goes to Philippi. 15. They go either\(^1\) to Athens or\(^1\) to Leuctra. 16. He goes to Arpinum. 17. They go to Rhodes. 18. According to a plan. 19. He goes out from Athens. 20. By the north wind.

\(^1\) Use aut . . . aut: cf. § 66 a.

Use one preposition in each. §§ 57–8.

1. To the town. 2. Through towns and villages. 3. With sons and daughters. 4. Into the crowd. 5. Into camp. 6. Into the provinces. 7. Toward the provinces. 8. In-sight-of Arpinum. 9. Away from the camp. 10. Toward Athens. 11. In the towns. 12. To-a-point-near Philippi (§ 60).

Note. — To get the base of a noun of the First or Second Declension, drop -i or -órum, -ae or -arum from the genitive. Use the uncontracted Genitive Singular only to get the base. In writing Latin use the contracted form of the Genitive Singular, if any. Do not attempt to write the Nominative Singular without first making sure of the exact spelling; see §§ 6 c, 41–3. Each noun has its own set of endings. From the Nominative and Genitive given in the vocabulary, it can be determined which set of terminations a noun has.
Study §§ 59, 129, 135; cf. §§ 190 b, 191 d, 195 b, 196 d, 200 b, 201 d, 205 d, 206 d, 210 b, 211 d, 215 b.

1. For the sake of hearing. 2. For attacking. 3. Is necessary to try (cf. § 152 a). 4. He is ready to read. 5. He can read well. 6. Upon inquiring. 7. Upon taking. 8. By fleeing. 9. He is prepared to flee. 10. They wish to read. 11. To act is necessary. 12. It is time to act. 13. Time to see is not given. 14. Time to take arms is not given.

Exercise XVIII — Time, Cause, Purpose, Manner, Respect

Study §§ 56, 6; 59; 74, 12, 15, 16, 18; 96 b, c. See pp. 31–2.


1 cōnsilium. 2 cópia -ae, f. 3 hōra -ae; f. 4 incola -ae, m. 5 Galba -ae, m. 6 spatium -i, n. 7 studium -i, n. 8 serva -ae, f.
Uses of Case Forms

Study §§ 66 b, c and 120 a–e. Use words on pp. 28–9.

One preposition in each. 1. One of the sons is calling. 2. Aemilia is calling one of the girls. 3. Two of the boys are at home. 4. They can see one of the towns. 5. He is called by one of (his) daughters. 6. They see the horses of two of the barbarians (§ 63). 7. Three of the towns are taken. 8. He can see three of the horses. 9. Thousands of barbarians are fighting with the Romans. 10. The master gives three of the boys books. 11. Titus is reading a book of one of his sons. 12. Mark gives one of the boys a book. 13. The camp is in-sight-of Leuctra. 14. They are ten miles away from the camp. 15. Both are coming from the village. 16. Either Lucius or Galba will call the boys to the house.

Study §§ 67–8; cf. uses of words on pp. 31–2.

1. Year before last. 2. Ten miles. 3. Ten miles away. 4. On that day. 5. He cannot read at all. 6. Twice in the course of a year. 7. Four times in a period of three years. 8. For a period of four days. 9. He cannot see at first. 10. He sees Aemilius for the first time at Arpinum. 11. Five times in the course of a year. 12. He calls again and again.

Study §§ 70, 71 c; 72; 73 a–e; 74, 17 and 19.

1. There is need of so much for the pupils. 2. How much of good is there to the book? 3. It is rated of very great (value). 4. He buys it at a very small (figure). 5. It is so much the interest of the pupils. 6. They take part in reading. 7. Slaves are for-the-most-part a protection to boys. 8. How much do they read? 9. They read as much as I. 10. How much better can Titus read? 11. Very little better. 12. The one reads too little, the other well enough. 13. There is nothing bad to him. 14. He is not alarmed at all.
Exercise XIX — Indefinite Pronouns (Neuter)

Study §§ 71 a, b; 108 a, b; 109 a, 110, 111, 112.

1. What is of more (value)? 2. They hear nothing else. 3. The Greeks defend none of the towns; boys are a protection to the one, slaves to the other. 4. If there is any protection, he may tell them. 5. If any one knows anything, one may tell it. 6. What one hears, he may tell them. 7. How able are they? 8. Which of the towns is defended better? 9. They defend both, what they can. 10. We do not know whether they read or speak (§§ 137 c; 139; 143). 11. They neither read nor speak (§ 66). 12. They are ready for neither (thing). 13. It is permitted to read everything (that is) best.

Exercise XX — The Agreement of Pronouns

Note. — Pronouns agree with the words for which they stand in gender and number. What determines their case?

Express by words found in the text.

The earth is not luminous; it is dark; the sun gives it\(^1\) light, 6, 5. We choose boys; we select two; they are not far from us; we hear them speaking.\(^2\) We see a light; it is called the sun, 4, 3. The sun is not flat; it looks globe-like, 4, 3. The earth and moon are dark; they are not luminous, 8, 2. What gives them light? The sun illuminates them, 7, 4. There are two dippers; and one of them is called the smaller, the other the larger, 14, 9. The second is Auster; and it starts from-the-direction-of-the noonday-sun, 15, 7.

We call the fourth Zephyrus; it blows from the west, 15, 11. There are two poles; and one of them is called the North, the other the South Pole, 19, 9. These regions are cold; everything in them is frozen, 19, 11. The farmer plants trees, whose fruit

\(^1\) Figures refer to pages and lines where pronouns are found.  \(^2\) P. 24.
he will never see, 20, 21. He plants trees, that-they may profit others, 20, 22. There is a school at Rome; prominent men let their sons go to it, 26, 2; in it they learn Greek (things).

Exercise XXI — Personal and Reflexive Pronouns

Study §§ 116 a–c; 138–9; 147 c.

1. I call thee. 2. Thou callest me. 3. I urge that thou call (§ 188) us. 4. Give (§ 184) me the book. 5. They send me (§ 5 f) books. 6. They are at my house (§ 57). 7. Who is at thy house? 8. He asks who is going (§ 143) with me. 9. You urge that we call Mark. 10. Whom (§ 110) do you call us? 11. Why does he order us to go? 12. A demand-is-made by you. 13. Which (§ 108) of you (two) blames us? 14. What one of us accuses you?

1. I call my (friends, § 64) to me. 2. I urge that thou call (§ 188) the boy to thee. 3. We request that he call the pupils to him. 4. He demands lands for himself. 5. He calls Titus to him. 6. They take¹ (their) sons with them. 7. We reproach² ourselves. 8. We take² the boys with us. 9. He forgets (§ 107 c) Mark's insult (2) to him (2). 10. They forget Titus' injury to me.³ 11. He has⁴ troops about him.

Exercise XXII — The Imperfect and Perfect Tenses

Study §§ 183–5. Translate past tenses by the Perfect.

Where were you last year, Titus? You were at home (§ 60)? I was at thy house (§ 57). I could not see thee. Thou wast absent at-the-time. Wast thou not at Mark's house (§ 109 b)? There is (some one-) who knows (§ 137 c) where thou wast. Many are said to have been with thee. They did not fail

¹ duxunt ² § 64. ³ Use the genitive. ⁴ habet.
thee (3). One is said to have been absent. Many do not know where thou wast (§ 143). Galba says many wish (§ 142 a) to find out. I was with Galba. We were not far away. There were many with us. Thou couldst not see Galba. He could not see thee. Neither of us could see thee.

Translate past tenses by the Imperfect. See §§ 144-5.

I was at Arpinum year before last, boys. Doesn’t Mark know where I was (§ 143)? He was in the camp. The camp was (§ 66 c) not far from town. And-if-he (§ 115 c) was in the town, he could see me often. Why (§ 114) did you fail me (3)? You could easily (§ 69) find out where I was. Galba will go away if he can. They however wish the boys to be at hand.

EXERCISE XXIII — The Perfect, Active and Passive

Note. — To get the perfect stem of any verb, drop -I from the Perfect Indicative, Active, First Person, Singular. The Perfect Active of all verbs has the same endings as fui (§ 183 b). For the passive, see §§ 168, 171, 187, etc.; cf. §§ 99 and 101.

rogavi I asked habui I had dixi I said cepi I took fui I was
vetui forbade vidii saw legi read feci did veni came
vocavi called iussii bade tulii bore ivi, ii went dedi gave

1. I asked. 2. Thou hast called. 3. He forbade. 4. We have had. 5. You saw. 6. They have bidden. 7. I said. 8. Thou hast borne. 9. She has read. 10. We took. 11. You have done. 12. They have gone. 13. I was. 14. Thou hast been. 15. He has come. 16. We came. 17. You have been giving. 18. They have been. 19. They have been absent. 20. I was able. 21. Thou hast been asking. 22. I have seen. 23. It has been going. 24. He has been reading. 25. We have often (§ 69) forbidden. 26. To have taken; to have seen; to have gone; to have given.

Note. — Rewrite changing to the Subjunctive. To the passive.

1 Translate in four different ways.
Exercise XXIV — The Third Declension

Study §§ 57–8, 78–81, 82 a–c. One preposition in each.


Exercise XXV — Nouns of all Declensions and Classes

Study §§ 81; 82 a–c; 145. Use words on pp. 51, 56.

There is a house near by the river. A boy is going-up to the house. He is called Aemilius. He approaches the doorstep. On it (§ 119 e) he reads "Look-out-for the dog." Does he see the dog? Does it alarm him at all? There is a maiden near the entrance. She is a girl of nine years. Her-name-is Aemilia. She is Aemilius' sister. She calls him. She wishes her brother good-health. The brother hears his sister's voice. He comes to her. They talk. Then they run to the house.

General Truths — Present Tenses (see pp. 52–4)

With us (p. 31) the father is called the man-of-the-house. He rules the household. The house is a care to him. It is the father's (duty) to build a home, to provide all (things) of which there is need. It is the mother's (part) to look after the children. She is spoken-of-as a matron. Many things are a care to her.
The mother brings up her sons and daughters, makes bread, prepares food, keeps all (things) in order. Children obey their father, mother (and) elders; yield to them, bow to their will. It is necessary that children be obedient.

Actions Continued in the Past — The Imperfect (pp. 51–2)

Among (p. 31) the Romans the father had the power of life and death over the mother, children (and) slaves. They led away captured (men) into slavery. It was permitted slaves however to buy back their freedom by serving.

There was a river in Latium. It was called the Liris. It flowed into the sea. Not far from the Liris was a plantation. It was a possession of Paulus who was a Roman citizen. The river Fibrenus flowed into the Liris. There was a villa near the river. It was Paulus’ villa. Paulus was a farmer. He had possessions at either side of the river Fibrenus. There was a bridge over the river Liris. The depth of the water was very slight. Some used-to-cross by-fording, others by the bridge.

Paulus was sitting in the atrium. He was talking with a Greek. The Greek was called Chilo. He was inquiring of him what there was new. Chilo was telling him all (things). The master was praising Chilo, because he looked-after the cattle. He was giving him instructions. He was equalizing the tasks of the work. He was assigning each-one a share of toil. He was deciding where each should go, what he should do on the next day.

Acts Finished in the Past 1 — Perfect Tenses

There was too little water for the cattle. The slaves cared-for them. They drove them to the river Fibrenus. One of the slaves ran-away. Brennus saw him escape. He did not tell

1 Occurring on a single occasion and not spoken of as repeated.
this to Chilo, the overseer. The latter spoke with the master Paulus. He made mention of Brennus. He ought to have paid \(^1\) the penalty. The master forbade Chilo to punish him. Chilo, to be sure, being-a-Greek did not seem (a man) of good feeling toward Gauls.

**Exercise XXVI — Agreement of Adjectives (§§ 83–9; 109 c)**

pauci, paucæ, paucæ, few \(^2\) plērique, plēraequē, plēraque most \(^2\)

- m. m. m. f. f.
  - liber bonus agricolae boni plēraque puellae
  - a good book of a good farmer most (of the) girls

1. He is a good (§ 91) son. 2. He is a good boy. 3. He is a good farmer. 4. It is our horse. 5. It is my book. 6. It is another's book. 7. It is our town. 8. It is our daughter. 9. It is our friend. 10. Aemilia is a good girl. 11. He sees our horse. 12. He calls few friends. 13. They are good sons. 14. It is our father. 15. He is a powerful friend. 16. Toward our camp. 17. Of most horses. 18. Of few horses. 19. Of our father. 20. Of my horse. 21. Of another's horse. 22. Of a good farmer. 23. He is a bad boy.

N. s. m. N. s. m. G. s. m. G. s. m. N. pl. m. N. pl. m.
Galba amicus Libri veteris Agricolae amici sunt
Galba (who is) friendly of an old book farmers are friendly


\(^1\) dare début. \(^2\) Place before their nouns. \(^3\) Rewrite in the plural.
Write the following expressions in the Nominative. See § 42.


Note. — Rewrite the above in the Nominative Singular, Genitive Singular, Genitive Plural, Accusative Singular, and Ablative.

Exercise XXVII — Comparison of Adjectives

Place the adjectives tantus and quantus before their nouns, the others after their nouns. Use words on pp. 38–9. Write each expression in the Nominative, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative cases.


Note. — Rewrite Nos. 1 to 15 above in the plural.

Exercise XXVIII — Irregular Adjectives (§§ 40, 108–9, 120)

Write each in the Nominative, Genitive, Dative, and Accusative cases.


Note. — Rewrite in the plural.

\(^1\) bellum, -i, n. \(^2\) periculum, -i, n. \(^3\) gêns, gentis, f. \(^4\) via, -ae, f. \(^5\) homô, hominis, m.
Comparison of Adjectives

Exercise XXIX — Adjective Forms of Verbs

Study §§ 93–104. Write each in the Nominative, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative cases.

1. A boy (who is) trying. 2. A maiden (who is) waiting. 3. (One who is) reading. 4. A crowd (that is) departing. 5. The sun (when) rising. 6. A (thing that is) extending. 7. A slave fleeing. 8. (He) going. 9. A (thing) demanded. 10. (He when) ready. 11. (She though) terrified. 12. A (man who had been) taken. 13. A town (that was) fortified. 14. A legion (that was) best prepared. 15. A less impeded route. 16. A thing heard. 17. (He) having delayed. 18. (She) having spoken. 19. A boy having followed. 20. A crowd going to follow. 21. A maiden (when) going to go out. 22. A judge (who was) going to grant. 23. A (thing that ought) to be granted. 24. A ship (that is) to be awaited. 25. A number to be divided. 26. A town (that ought) to be fortified. 27. A river (that ought) to be crossed (§ 215 a, c).

Note. — Rewrite in the plural.

Exercise XXX — Expressions of Purpose, Result, etc.

Write each sentence six different ways. § 159.

1. Envoys come to seek peace. 2. They send (a man) to call the boys. 3. They come to Rome to ask aid. 4. He sends envoys to seek auxiliaries. 5. They send troops to devastate the fields. 6. Soldiers are called to defend the town.

Write each sentence one or two ways. §§ 149, 151.

1. They are not so brave as to try this. 2. No one is so brave that he would not be frightened. 3. They had done it to frighten him. 4. There are many that are easily frightened. 5. There is no one but is frightened occasionally.

! Neuter. rēs. § 81. auxilia, -ōrum, n. vāstāre. mūles, mūlitis. dēfendere.
Exercise XXXI — The Indicative and Subjunctive

Review §§ 136-40; study §§ 137 c, 138 a-c, 147, 149, 156.

Present Tenses

He is going; they urge that he go. Who is he? I know who he is. They try; he recommends that they try. If he is away, he does not hear it. If he should be away, he would not hear it. He hears; they speak so, that he hears. He can not read the book. He would read, if he should be able.

Imperfect Tenses (§§ 171-2)

He was trying; they urged that he should try. Where was he? They knew where he was. If he was present, he heard it. If he were present, he would hear it. He kept-hearing (it). It was said in-such-a-way that he heard it. He could not read. He would read it, if he could.

Perfect Tenses

Where was he? They told Titus where he was. He heard (it); it was said in-such-a-way that he heard (it). If he was away, he could not hear it. If he should be away, he would not hear it. He would tell Mark, if he should be able.

Pluperfect and Imperfect

He had been away; he had not heard (it). If he had been present, he would have heard it. Where had they been? No one told Titus where they had been. He had been able to tell Mark. He had not been willing. He could have told Mark, if he had been willing. He did not tell us, because he was not willing. Although (§ 115 b) he had heard it, he would not tell. If we had seen you, we should have called you.

1 Use a form of adesse; cf. § 185. 2 Subjunctive, see § 186. 3 = would have been able (to tell).
Uses of Case Forms — Review

Exercise XXXII — Variations of Expressions

Study the sections referred to with each group. Express in Latin as found in the text or reference given.

§§ 56, 6; 57-8; 74, 15; 224. Because they are so great a distance away 10, 8 and 17.\textsuperscript{1} Therefore 15, 5. By reason of its very nature. On account of evenness 17, 5, 8. Suffer for lack of water. Suffer with thirst 21, 17. (And) for this reason; (and) on account of this fact 20, 8; 35, 10; 47, 18; 69, 17; 75, 9. For the same reason 49, 6. For my sake 57, 21. Why? 57, 4, 21; § 115 c.


§§ 56, 6; 96 b. In the right proportions 30, 8. With greater pains 47, 4. Slowly and with great care 48, 3. With great diffi-

\textsuperscript{1} Numbers refer to pages and lines.
As quickly as possible 60, 3. With great danger 63, 3. Accor-
ding to his own notion 63, 17. With fitting words 65, 17. With
a king's taste 67, 8. In a hoarse language 71, 8. In a louder
voice 71, 11. With a great fuss made 72, 14. Without wrong
doing 87, 20. In secret 91, 22. Without offense 92, 19. In a
low voice 55, 21.

§§ 56, 2, 6; 62 g. (Some are of one color) others of another
To the depth of many thousand feet 39, 19. Of a smaller body;
of shorter stature 40, 12. Of good feeling toward Gauls 52, 4.
Of good mind toward him 55, 15. A girl of nine years 55, 19.
Of enormous size 59, 12. Of any favor (in the eyes of his father
at that time) 60, 16. Of good disposition toward him 65, 18.
A boy of eleven years stood 70, 17. He would have appeared
to us (a boy) of fifteen years. He was of so large limbs 70, 19.
Was of great favor 76, 27.

Two thousand books 29, 13. One fourth of a day 31, 24. As
much of trouble as 34, 16. More of trouble 36, 17. Length is
estimated in miles 38, 16. One half (of) a pace 40, 14. What
is there (of) remainder? Nothing (of) remainder 43, 16. What
good or beautiful 45, 11. Something new 46, 7. Some business
What affair? 60, 10. No annoyance 61, 7. Any hindrance
62, 8. A large part of the public land 63, 11.

§§ 56, 6; 94–6. With light absent; (when) light (is) absent
30, 3. The sun (when) setting 35, 13. In counting days;
when counting days 36, 9. And-upon-this being done; and (as
soon as) this (is) done 43, 4. When reading-is-being-done 47, 9.
During the night 6, 5; 14, 2. During Caesar and Bibulus con-
suls 57, 3. On the fourth day 31, 16. On these things having
been found out 59, 14. Upon this message being given 62, 11. Upon Aemilius requesting it 65, 16. With Caesar unwilling; (if) Caesar (is) unwilling 86, 5. And—with it removed 87, 5. Upon the Aeduans promising grain 89, 6.

§ 96 c. According to the custom; by the method 50, 2. According to the custom of Greeks 64, 18. By what method 31, 5. Of his own accord 64, 9. According to his own notion 63, 17. According to his custom; according to her custom; according to their custom (§ 96 c).

§ 56, 4; 68 a, b. How much they differ 34, 21. Differ a great deal from ours 40, 9. Advance more or farther every-day 45, 6. Writes a great deal 50, 6. Pleases us little 51, 10. Not at all 57, 13. Do you understand at all? 57, 18. Are as far apart as the length of a man can occupy of space 59, 8. For the most part 69, 7.

Teaches them many (things) 34, 5. (We) are taught the most important tricks 43, 4. Are taught to read 45, 2. Asks me my name (§ 155). Ask the Aeduans (for) grain 90, 19.

§§ 5 j; 56, 6; 69. More than five miles 50, 21. Longer than a year 70, 13. More than five miles 90, 13. Was shorter than the one that we use 40, 11. They stepped shorter than we 40, 13. The Romans were of shorter stature than we (are).

§§ 5 e; 105–6. There is weight to all things. Each has its own weight 42, 2, 3. Each (thing) has its own color. Blue (belongs) to the sky. Gold has a yellow color. There are different-colored rays to light 30. There is a golden color to the fields 21. (There is) only one name to most Greeks 25. We have in mind 24. There are thirty days to November 31. There is no measure to space 33. For reading (persons) there is access 45. A name belonged to the boy Arm'nius 71.

¹ More than one way.
EXERCISE XXXIII—The Rendering of English Prepositions

Study the sections referred to with each group.


Over. §§ 56, 6, 6; 57–8. Over the fields 21, 5. (Over) the earth 23, 14. Over this thing 85, 10. (Boast) over this victory 83, 5. Over this river 86, 4. Above this number 29, 13.

To. §§ 60, 159. To-day 10, 11. To-morrow 10, 13. To air 18, 3. To the fields 20, 17; 21, 12. To Arpinum 24, 8. To school 25, 13. To it 26, 2. To Italy 26, 15. To each (thing) 30, 4. To these measures 32, 16. To all space 33, 7. To the depth 39, 19. To their body 40, 1. To establish peace 84, 16. To go out 84, 5. To any one 64, 20; 88, 5. Till the last day 31, 17.

For. §§ 56–60. For rest 12, 10. For the cattle 21, 9. For themselves. For winter 21, 11. For lack of water 21, 16. For each day 22, 7. For Rome 26, 10. For us 26, 21. For many years 26, 13. (For) great use. For reading the books 34, 8. For width 41, 8. For example 43, 11. For writing 49, 10. For-what-place 51, 24; cf. 119 d. For my sake 57, 21. As for Paulus (§ 57). For him 64, 11. For his age 70, 19.


VOCABULARY

Where the uses or peculiarities of words are more important than the mere meaning, reference is made to sections of the appendix where they are treated. Certain proper names are purposely omitted in order to allow the student to master them by observation as directed in §§ 45, 55c. The nominative case of such nouns should be used to render them in English, unless they are found in an anglicized form in headlines or in the appendix.

Some words not found in the text are given to illustrate the form or meaning of others.

The following abbreviations are used: Ab., Abl. ablative; Ac., Acc. accusative; adj. adjective; App. appendix; B. G. Gallic War; cf. compare; dir. direct; Eng. English; f., fem. feminine; Futp. future perfect; Imp. imperfect; Inv. imperative; Ind. indicative; indir. indirect; m., mas. masculine; n., neu. neuter; o., obj. object; Part. participle; P. P. perfect participle; Plup. pluperfect; sing. singular; Sub. subjunctive; s., subj. subject; w. with.

For explanation of other signs see § 230, page 280.

ä, ab, abs 58; 62d; 220, 1
ab-dō, -dere, -dídi, -ditus, in 4; 219, 2
ab-dućō, ab-dućere, ab-duxi, abductus lead away
ab-eō, ab-ire, -ii, -itus go away
ab-horreo, ab-horrēre, ab-horrui shrink from
abs-tineō, abs-tinēre, abs-tinuī, -tentus 220, 1
ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fuī, ā-futūrus 185, ā or ab 6; absēns 94b
ac 66, 69
ac-oēdō, ac-oēdere, ac-cessī, -cessus ap-proach, come near, be added, ad 4; 220, 2; 221b
ac-celerō, ac-celerāre hasten
ac-cidō, ac-cidere, -cidi 3; 95
ac-cipiō, ac-cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus receive, accept, learn

ac-clivis, -e upward sloping
ac-commodō, ac-commodāre adjust
ac-curro, -currere, -curri, -cursus run to or up to ad 4
ac-cūsō, ac-cūsāre 4; 74, 4
ācer, ācris, ācre sharp, active, spirted; ācrītus sharply; acerbus, -a, -um bitter; acīs, acīi f. edge; line (of battle)
ad (w. Acc.) §§ 57, 220, 2
ad-dō, ad-dere, -didi, -ditus put beside, give to, add 3p, 4t
ad-dućō, ad-dućere, -duxi, -ductus lead on, bring to, induce
ad-eō, ad-ire, -ii, -itus go to, get at; aditus, -ūs m. a going to, an approach, access
ad-hibo, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitus have at hand or present

315
ad-húc up to this 119d
ad-míror, -mírári, —, -mírátus
wonder at 4
adolésoē, adoléscere, adoléví,
adúltus grow up; aduléscéns,
-entis young (man)
ad-órior, ad-óorris, —, ad-órtus
rise up against, attack
ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fuí, ad-
fúturus be present, be at hand
adventus, -ús m. a coming to
ad-vertó, -vertere, -verti, versus
turn toward; animum adver-
tere or animadvertere turn
attention to, notice 4; adversus
turned towards; facing, op-
posed, unfavorable 3; adversus
w. Acc. against
aedēs, -is f. building; temple;
(pl.) house; aedi-fícō, -âre
build a house, build; aedi-
fícium -i n. building
aeger, -gra, -grum sick; aegrē
with difficulty; hardly.
aequus, -a, -um level, even, equal;
fair, kindly; aequum est it is
fair; aequē (ac) equally, as
well (as); aequitās aequi-
tātis f. 43; aequor, -oris n. 41;
eaquâre equal
aes, aeris n. copper, bronze;
money; aes aliēnum (another’s
money), debt
aestās, aestātis f. summer
aestimō, -âre 73; ex-âstimāre
reason out, think, judge
aetās, -átis f. age, time of life
aethēr, -is m. 51, ether, a very
light, colorless and attenuated
substance thought to pervade
all other substances and all
space so far as known.
av-ferō, ad-ferre, at-tuli, al-
lātus bring to, carry to
af-fícō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus
do to, affect, visit with
affinitās, -âtis f. relationship (by
marriage), affinity
ager, agri 41; agri-cola, -ae m.
(landsman) farmer, peasant
ag-gredior, ag-gredi, —, ag-
gressus 219, 2; 220, 2
agmen, -minis n. drove, army on
march
agō, agere, ēgī, āctus 97–8; 102–
4; 197; drive, carry on, do, act,
discuss, treat; grātiās agere
render thanks; agitō, agitāre
keep driving, pursue, hound;
ad-igere drive to, hurl
albus, -a, -um dead white 223
aliquis (aliqui), aliqua, aliquid
(aliquod) some, any p. 182
aliquot some, several; aliquōtiēns
several times 64; 120g
alius, -a, -um 40, 65, 103, 117;
alius atque or ac other than;
aliter 69; aliās p. 183; aliō
p. 182; alibi elsewhere; ali-
unde p. 183; aliēnus, -a,
-um 109c; strange, foreign, un-
favorable; aes aliēnum n.
debt
alō, alere, aluí, alitus or altus
feed, support, raise; altus, -a,
-um 92; altum n. high sea, deep
(sea); altē highly, deeply;
altitūdō, -dinis f. 62g, 92
alter, altera, alterum 40, 65, 109,
120
ambō, -ae, -ō 55a note
Vocabulary

ā-mittō, ā-mittere, -mīsī, -mis-sus let go away, lose; send away
amō, amāre 97, 107; amor,
-ōris m. love; amicus, -a, -um 91; amīcē in a friendly way;
amōitīa, -ae f. 91
am-plector, am-plectī, —, am-plexus fold or wrap around, embrace, surround; amplexus,
-ūs m. embrace
amplus, -a, -um large, spacious; splendid; amplius more (of distance or number); amplē largely, on a large scale
an see utrum 71
an-cepīs, -cipitīs two-headed; double, doubtful
angustus, -a, -um 92; angustiae, -ārum 92; deīlīle, narrows
animus, -ī spirit, feeling, mind; courage, high spirits; animad-
vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -ver-
sus turn the mind to; notice, observe, attend to, punish in 4
annus, -ī 74, 17; annuus, -a, -um for-a-year, yearly, annual
ante 57; ante . . . quam 69;
ant-eā 69; antiquus, -a, -um ancient, old, time, former
ante-pōnō, ante-pōnerē, -pōsūi, -pōsitus put ahead of 3 and 4
a-perīō, a-perīre, a-perulī, a-pertus (get from) uncover, open;
apertus, -a, -um open, uncovered
ap-pellō, ap-pellāre call (to), call upon, appeal to
ap-petō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus seek for
ap-propinquō, -propinquāre draw near to, approach
Aprilis, -ae of April 109c
apud 57
aqua, -ae f. water
Arar 79
ara, -ae, f. altar
arbitror, arbitrāri, —, arbitrātus serve as judge; consider 181;
arbitrium, -i n. notion, judgment
arbōr, arboris f. tree
arcessō, arcessere, -iī, -itus summon, invite, send for
ārdēō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsus blaze;
glow; ārdor, -ōris m. a burning
āreō, ārēre dry up, wither; āri-
dus, -a, -um dry 223
arma, -ōrum n. 44, 60; armō, armāre arm, equip
arō, arāre plow, till
ar-ripiō, ar-ripere, -ripūi, -rēptus seize upon, snatch 3p, 4t
ars, artis f. skill, art, trick
a-scendō, a-scendere, -scendi, -scensus 219, 2; 220, 2;
ascent, -ūs m. ascent
a-sciscō, a-sciscere, -scīvī, -scītus take to, adopt 3 and 4
asper, aspera, asperum rough, harsh, bitter, rugged
as-sentiō, as-sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsus agree (to), assent
at but, but yet cf. 66
ātēr, ātra, ātrum (dull) black, dark.
atque or ac 66, 69; simul atque as soon as 224
ātrium, -i m. reception room, atrium, a main hall of a Roman house
at-tingō, at-tingere, -tīgī, -tāctus 219, 3 ad + tangō
at-tribuo, at-tribuere, -tribui, -tribútus assign to 220, 2
auctor, -órís m. originator, producer, author; auctóritás, -átis authority, power, influence
audeó, audère, —, ausus 94b; 100; audáx, audáx, audáx Gen. audácis 85; audácter 91; audácia, -ae boldness, daring, recklessness
audió, audire 98, 122, 136, 207
au-feró, au-ferre, abs-tulü, ab-látus 220, 1; 180-1; cf. 136, 142
augeó, augère, auxí, auctus increase
aurum, -ì m. money, gold
aut 66a, b
autem (never stands first in a sentence) moreover, but, however
auxílium, -ì support, assistance; pl. auxíliaries (augeó)
á-vertó, á-vertere, -verti, -versus 220, 1; avert; áversus, -a, um, unfriendly, hostile
avus, -ì m. grand-father; avunculus, -i maternal uncle
bellum, -ì m. war; belló, belláre (make) war; bellicosus, -a, -um warlike
bene 69; bene-ícium, -ì service, kindness; benígnus, -a, -um kindly, friendly
bis 67; bini, -ae, -a 120; bi-duum, -ì n. 68; bi-ennium, -ì n. 68 (annus)
bonus, -a, -um 64, 70, 91; melior, -ius 91; optimus, -a, -um 91
bracchium, -ì n. fore-arm, arm
brevis, -e 88, 92; brevitás, -átis f. 92; breviter shortly
cadó, cadere, cecídī, cásus fall; be slain; cásus, -ús m. fall, chance, accident, case
cædó, caedere, cecídī, caesus cause to fall, fell, cut, kill, slay; caedes, -is f. killing; cf. nūbēs 79c
cælum -ì n. air; sky
campus, -ì m. plain, field
candéō, candere be white, glow; candidus, -a, -um shining, white; candor, -órís m. whiteness; incendere set on fire
canis, -is m. dog
cantus, -ús m. singing
capió, capere, cēpī, captus 97, 98, 102, 104, 127, 136, 220, 5; captus, -ús m. a taking, idea
caput, capitis n. 82; aniceps, ancipitis two-headed
carcer, -is m. prison
carrus, -ì m. 149f
cārus, -a, -um dear
casa, -ae hut
castra 62f, 66b; castellum, -ì n. little camp, fort, redoubt
causa, -ae f. cause, reason 59; case; ac-cūsāre bring case against, accuse
caveō, cavère, cāvī, cautus take care, be cautious — (of or that) 4 or né w. Sub.
cedó, cédere, cessi, cessus move, step, go away, yield, retreat 97
celer, -is, -e 74, 1; celeritás, -átis f. swiftness, rapidity; celeriter quickly
centum 120; p. 29; centuriō, -ōnis m. commander (of hundred), centurion
cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētus separate, distinguish, see
certus, -a, -um certain, sure;
certiōrem facere 155a; p. 46
cervus, -i m. stag, buck
cēterus, -a, -um other, the rest
cibus, -i m. food; cibāria, -orum
n. food stuffs, (ground) meal
cingō, cingere, cīnxi, cinctus 181b; p. 1
circu-ọ, circu-ōre 220, 3; circuitus, -ūs a going around, circuit, detour; circus, -i m. circle, ring; circus, games;
circum 57, 220, 3; circiter 57;
circīnus, -i m. 26, compasses
circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus
3 and 4 or 4 and 6; 220, 3
circum-fundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus pour around
circum-veniō, -veniūre, -vēnī,
-ventus come around, surround 4
cis or citrā 57; citerior, -ōris on this side, hither, nearer
civis, -is m. citizen; civitās,
-tātis f. citizenship; state
clāmō, clāmāre shout; clāmor,
-ōris m. outcry, shout
clārus, -a, -um clear, bright
Claudius, -a, -um Claudian, of the Claudian family
cœpi, coepisse, coecptus 123
co-ercoī, -ercēre, -ercui, -ercitus shut together; restrain, check
cognōmen, -inis n. surname, name
cōgnōscō, co-cōnāscere, co-gnōvī,
co-gnītus become thoroughly acquainted, learn; Perf. know &
cōgō, cōgere, coēgi, coactus 98, 103, 121, 219, 4; cōgitō, -āre think
cohors, cohortis f. cohort
co-hortor, -hortāri 147e
collega, -ae m. associate in office
col-īgō, -īgere, -īgī, -īctus gather
collis, -is m. hill
col-locō, -locāre place, arrange;
nūptum collocāre send to marry
col-loquor, -loqui, —, -locūtus
220, 4; colloquium, -i n. interview
collum, -i n. neck
colō, colere, colui, cultus till, cultivate, cherish, worship; incolere dwell in, live
comb-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustus
220, 4
com-memōrō, com-memorāre speak of, call to one's attention
com-meō, com-meāre (ad) go back and forth (to) visit, go to;
commeātus, -ūs m. supplies;
trip
com-mittō, com-mittere, -mīsī, -missus join together, do, allow
3p, 4t or ut w. Sub.
com-moveō, com-movere, -mōvī, -mōtus starile, alarm 98
commūnis, -e common, general
commūtātīō, -ōnis f. a change
com-parō, com-parāre 220, 4
com-perīō, com-perīre, com-perī,
com-pertus find out, learn
com-plēō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus
fill completely, fill up
com-plūrēs, -plūrium several
con-cēdō, con-cēdere, con-cessī, con-cessus 102, 104
con-cīdō, con-cidere, -cidī fall
flat, collapse
con-cīdō, con-cidere, con-cīdī, -cīsus cut down or to pieces
concīlium, -i n. meeting, council;
concīliāre win (over), get by
asking
con-diciō, -ōnis f. terms
con-dōnō, -āre give up, for-give,
pardon
con-ducō, con-ducere, -duxī, -ductus bring together; hire
cōn-ferō, cōn-ferre, -tuli, -lātus. 82, 104, 155; sē cōnferre take
self
confēstim promptly, with haste
con-ficō, cōn-ficere, cōn-feci, -fectus 98, 102, 219, 3; 220, 4
cōn-ficō, cōn-ficere, —, fīsus
trust firmly, rely on 3 or 6
con-firmō, -firmāre make firm,
strengthen; assure, encourage
con-fligō, -figere, -fīxi, -fīctus
dash together, fight, struggle
con-gradior, -gradī, —, gressus
come together, meet cum 6
con-iciō, con-icere, con-īcī, con-
jectus hurl, throw at in 4
con-iungō, con-iungere, con-
īnxī, -īnxus join together,
unite
coniux, -ugis consort, spouse,
husband or wife
con-iūrō, -iūrāre swear together;
coniūrātiō, -ōnis f. conspiracy
cōn-or, cōnāri 97, 100, 102, 122,
127, 191; cōnātus, -ūs m. 157
con-sanguineus, -a, -um of same

blood; kindred; pl. mas. kīn-
men
con-sciscō, con-sciscere, -scivi,
-scitus; sibi mortem cōnscisc-
ere take or bring death on self
con-scribō, cōn-scribere, -scripsi,
-scriptus 226; patrés cōn-
scripti enrolled fathers, senators
cōn-sentiō, cōn-sentīre, cōn-
sēnsi, cōn-sensus 156 cum 6
cōn-sequōr, cōn-sequī, —, cōn-
secūtus follow up, overtake,
attain
cōn-servō, cōn-servāre preserve,
put away, save (for 3 or in
4)
cōn-sīdo, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessus
settle, take position, encamp
cōnsilium, -i n. 77; counsel,
advice, wisdom
con-sistō, cōn-sistere, cōn-stitī
take a position; consist; halt
con-spiciō, cōn-spicere, cōn-
spexi, -spectus catch sight of,
see; cōnspectus, -ūs m. view,
sight; cōnspicāri esp, catch
sight of
con-stitūō, cōn-stituere, -stitūi,
-stitūtus put together, establish,
build, set up, station; decide
con-stō, cōn-stāre, -stitī stand
with, be consistent, agree, be
complete, consist; cōnstat it is
established, known, or certain;
cōnstanter consistently, uni-
formly
con-suēscō, cōn-suēscere, cōn-
suēvī, -suētus become accus-
tomed; cōn-suēvisse or cōn-
suēsse be accustomed; cōn-
suētūdō, -inis f. 148
Vocabulary

cōnsul, -is m. 95–6; cōnsulāris, -e consular; e exconsul; cōnsulātus, -ūs consulship; cōnsul tum, -i decree; cōn-sulō, -sulere, -sulūi, -sultum (lake) counsel, ask 4p, 6t
cōn-sūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūmpstus use up
cōn-tendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum stretch with, struggle with, strain, struggle to, make haste Inf. o; insist-on 4. See 154
cōn-terneō, -terneāre, -terneāui, -ternetus 62f, 63, 97, 98, 154, 219, 3;
(terra) continēns, -ntis f. mainland
contrā prep. with acc. against;
contrārius, -a, -um opposite
contumēlia, -ae f. 107
con-veniō, -venire, -vēni, -ven tus come together, meet, as semble; convenit it is meet, fitting, or agreed Inf. s; con ventus, -ūs m. meeting, conference; court
cōn-vocō, -vocāre call together
cōpia, -ae f. supply, abundance,
opportunity; pl. forces, troops;
supplies, resources; cōpiōsus,
-a, -um well supplied
cornū, -ūs horn; wing (of army)
81
corpus, corporis n. body
cōs. = cōnsulibus
cotidiē every day: cotidiānus,
-a, -um daily, ordinary
crassus, -a, -um thick; crassi tudō, -inis f. thickness
crēber, crēbra, crēbrum thick, close, frequent
orōdō, crēdere, crēdidī, -crēdi-
tus believe, trust 3 or 3p, 4t;
219, 2
creō, creāre, 223; crēscere,
crēvī, crētus 223
crucītātus, -ūs m. torture, torment
crūdēlīlis, -is, -e cruel; crūdelītās,
-ātis 94b crudeler cruelly
cuius 109b; cui 110; -que 111
cultus, -ūs m. civilization; looks
cum 58, 220, 4; 221b
cum 115b, c; 119a, b; 224
cuneus, -i m. wedge
cupīō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus
long for, desire 4; 4 Inf.; 162;
cupidus, -a, -um destivos 2;
cupidītās, -ātis desire, eagerness 2
cūr 141b
cūra, -ae f. 63; cūrāre 158
currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus
run; ac-currere run up to;
cursus, -ūs m. a running;
run, course
cūstōs, -ōdis 43, 78; cūstodia,
-ae f. protection, custody; cūs-
tōdire guard
damnō, damnāre declare guilty,
condemn
dē 58, 220, 5; 221b
dē-beō, dē-bère, dē-buī, dē bitus Inf. o. 121, 219, 4
decem p. 29; dēnī, -ae, -a ten each 120; deciēns p. 29;
decimus, -a, -um 120
dē-cernō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crē tus determine, decide, decree
dē-cipiō, dē-cipere, dē-cēpi, de ceptus 220, 5
dē-dō, dē-dere, -didī, -ditus lay down, give up, surrender; sē
Vocabulary

dēedere devote; dēeditō, -onis
f. a giving up, surrender

dē-dūcō, dē-dūcere, -dūxi, duc-
tus lead away, conduct, take

dē-ferō, dē-ferre, dē-tullī, -lātus
bear away, carry away, report

dē-ficiō, dē-fiicere, dē-fēcī, -fectus
220, 5; revolvēt ā, ab 6

dē-iciō, dē-icerē, -īeci, -iectus
throw or cast down; disap-
point; dēiectus, -ūs m. down
pitch, slope

dē-inde thereupon, then 120g

dēliberō, -āre think over

dē-ligō, dē-ligere, -lēgi, -lēctus
select; dēlēctus, -ūs m. levy

dē-minuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtus lessen, diminish

dēmum or dēnique 66

dēnī, -ae, -a ten each 120

dē-nūntīō, -āre send word to

dē-populō see populō

dē-serō, dē-serere, -seruī, -ser-
tus give up, abandon, desert

dē-siderō, -āre long for, miss;
 désiderium, -ī n. desire, longing

dē-sistō, dē-sistere, -stīti desist
from, stop, cease 6 or Inf.; 157

dēspērō, dēspērāre (dē) despair
(of); 221b

dē-spiciō, dē-spicere, dē-spexī,
dē-spectus 220, 5

dē-stituō, dē-stituere, dē-stituī,
dē-stitūtus leave unsupported,
desert

dē-sum, de-esse, dē-sūī 185

dē-terreō, -terrēre, -terrūi, -terri-
tus 153; 155b

dē-trahō, dē-trahere, dē-trāxi,
-tractus draw off, take away, rob

dē-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus
take or carry along

dexter, -tra, -trum right; dextra,
-ae f. right hand; ā dextrā on the right

diciō, -onis f. sway

dīcō, dicere, dixī, dictus tell, say,
speak, speak of as, call (see
103; 146a); causam dicere
plead a case; dictiō, -onis f.
the pleading

diēs, diē m. or f. day 81

dif-ferō, dif-ferre, dis-tullī, di-
lātus 220, 5; cf. 212

dif-ficilis, -is, -e 92, 157e; dif-
ficultās, -ātis f. 92

dif-fugī, -fugere, -fugī flee away

di-ligō, di-ligere, -lēxi, -lēctus
pick out; cherish; di-ligēns 97
careful; diligentia, -ae f. 74,
15; dilēctus, -a, -um 98 loved

dīmidius, -a, -um 220, 5; di-
midium, -ī

di-mittō, di-mittere, di-misī, di-
missus let go away, dismiss

dis-cōdō, dis-cedēre, dis-cussi,
dis-cessus 97; discessus, -ūs
m. departure, flight

disoō, discere, didicī learn; dis-
cipīnia, -ae f. training; learn-
ing; discipulus, -ī m. learner,
pupil

dis-pōnō, dis-pōnere, dis-posui,
dis-positus 220, 5

dis-simulō, -simulāre pretend not
dis-tineō, dis-tinēre keep apart

dīn 69, 119b

diversus, -a, -um turned apart,
different, diverse

dīves, -itis rich; divitiae, -arum
riches, wealth
Vocabulary 323

dividō, dividere, -visi, -visus 98, 104
dō, dare, dedi, datus 97–8; 102, 104, 106a, 128, 184; in fugam dare put to flight; operam dare pay attention; give effort
doceō, docère, docui, doctus teach 4p 4t; explain
doleō, dolère, dolui, dolus feel pain or grief; suffer; dolor, -ōris pain
dolus, -ōs f. 81; domi 61; domum homeward; domō 60; dominus, -i 146; domina, -ae mistress, lady; domicilium, -i n. dwelling, abode; 181b
dōnō, donāre 230 sp 4t or 4p 6t; dōnum, -i n. gift, present
dubius, -a, -um doubtful; nōn dubium est quin 153; dubitāre 146b
ducentī, -ae, -a 120 or p. 29
dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus lead, draw (conclusion), deem, consider, hold; in mātrimōnium or uxōrem dūcere marry; ductus, -ūs leading cf. 157
dum 147d
duo 120; duodecim 120
duplex, -icis 120f; duplicāre double
dux, ducis leader, guide, general

ē, ex 58
ea 115
eā p. 183
ec —! ec-quis? -qua? -quid? 145a
ē-dō, ē-dere, -didi, -ditus 220, 6;
ēditus, -a, -um elevated, raised
ē-doceō, ē-docère show exactly
ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus 221b
ef-ferō, ef-ferre, ex-tuli, ē-lātus let out, take out, get out (news)
ef-ficiō, ef-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus 220, 6; work out, bring about, 4 or ut w. Sub.
ef-fugīō, ef-fugere, -fugī fīle (away), escape 4
ego I, mei, mihi, mē, mē-cum 116a
ē-gredior, ē-gredi, —, ē-gressus 97, 100, 102
eius, eiusdem 109b
ē-ligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus 218
ē-loquor, ē-loquī, —, ē-loquītus speak out
ē-mittō, ē-mittere, ē-misī, ē-missus send out or up, let go out
emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus 73
ē-nārrō, -āre tell off, recite, recount
enim (never stands first) 66
ē-nŭntiō, ē-nŭntiāre 154, 220, 6
ēō, īre, ī or īvī, itum 97–8, 102–4, 137, 140, 212
ēō 74, 19; ēō 119d or p. 182;
eōdem 112b; 119d or p. 182;
eōrum, eōrundem 109b
epistula, -ae f. formal letter
equus, -i 62, 74, 12; eques, -itis m. 43, 159; equester, -tris, -tre of a horseman, equestrian;
equitāre ride, drill (on horse);
equitātus, -ūs m. cavalry
ē-ripīō, ē-ripere, -ripui, -reptus 230g, 4p; ē, ex 6 rescue
errō, errāre go astray, wander, err; error, -ōris m. wandering, mistake
Vocabulary

ërumpō, ē-ruptere, ē-rūpi, ē-ruptus break out, burst forth, dash out; ēruptiō, -ōnis f. a dash
et 66
etiam (et + iam) also, even
et-sī w. Ind. 156 ; 224
ē-veniō, ē-venire, ē-venī, ē-venitus come out: ēventus, -ās m. outcome
ē-vocō, ē-vocāre call out, summon
ex, ē 58, 220, 6 ; 221b
ex-audīō, ex-audīre overhear
ex-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus go out, leave
ex-cipiō, ex-cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus take out, take up; except, meet
ex-eō, -ire, -iī, -itus 221 go out;
exitūm, -i n. ruin, overthrow
ex-erceō, ex-ercēre, ex-ercui, exercitus keep in motion, train, exercise, carry on; exercitus, -ās m. training, army; exercitāre drill; exercitātiō, -ōnis f. training
ex-igō, ex-igere, ex-ēgi, ex-āctus drive out, exhaust, finish, take from by force
ex-istimō, -āre 219, 1 ; 4 Inf.; existimātiō, -ōnis f. opinion
ex-pedīō, ex-pedire 98 -i-; 220, 6
ex-pollō, ex-pellere, ex-pulī, expulsus drive out, expel
ex-plōrō, ascertain; explōrātus assured; explōrātor, -ōris m. 62e
ex-pōnō, ex-pōnere, -posui, -positus set forth, explain
ex-pūgnō, -pūgnāre take by storm, storm; expugnātiō, -ōnis capture
ex-quirō, ex-quirere, -quisīvi (-ii), -quisītus 219, 1
ex-sequor, ex-sequī, —, exsecūtus 220, 6
ex-siliō, ex-siliēre leap up or forth;
exsilium, -i n. exile
ex-spectō, -spectāre 104–6d, 141
extrā w. acc. outside of; exterī those outside, foreign; exterior outer; extrēmus outermost, end of
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus do, make, arrange, cause 148–9, bring about; facinus, -oris n. evil deed, crime; facilis, -e 92 ; faciē 69, 92 ; facilitās, -ātis f. ease; factō -ōnis f. party; facultās -tātis 92
fallō, failere, fefelli, falsus deceive; falsus, -a, -um deceptive fāma, -ae f. report, rumor; fame famēs, -is f. abl. famē 55c
-familiās (old Gen.) = familiae fās right, fate; fātum, -i n. fate faucēs, -ium f. jaws; throat faveō, favēre, favī, fautus favor 3 fēmina, -ae woman; fēmineus, -a, -um of a woman, woman's cf. 109c
ferē almost, about
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus 212, 104, 155b; bear, carry, endure; bear news, declare; ferāx, -ācis or fertilis, -e bearing; productive
ferrum, -i iron; weapon; ferreus, -a, -um of iron cf. 109c
ferus, -a, -um wild; fera (bēstia) wild animal
Vocabulary 325

fidō, fidere, —, fisus confide, trust 3; rely 6; fidēs, -ei 47; protection; fidus, -a, -um faithful
figūra, -ae f. shape, form
fila, -ae; daughter; -us, -i son
finis, -is 44, 47; finire end, terminate; finitimus, -a, -um bordering 3; finitimi, -orum neighbors
fiō, fieri, —, factus 212 become, be done, happen
firmus, -a, -um, strong, firm, solid; steadfast; firmiter firmly
flāgitō, -āre 147e, 230
flāvus, -a, -um yellow
fleō, flēre, flēvi, flētus weep
flō, flāre, flāvi, flātus blow
flōs, flōris m. 42; flōrēre 223
fluō, fluere, fluī, fluxus flow; influenza flow in; flūmen 74, 1; 78
focus, -ī m. hearth
fodiō, fodere, fōdi, fossus 162 (via) fossa, -ae f. ditch
folium, -i n. leaf, page
fore 183 = futūrus esse
foris Abl. out of doors
fors (fortis) f. chance; forte by chance, perchance; fortasse, forsitan (for fors sit an), perhaps, perchance
fortis, -e 91, 149; fortiter 91; fortitūdō, -inis f. bravery, strength
forum, -i m. market or public place
fossa, -ae f. see fodiō
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter; fragor, -oris m. breaking, noise, din
frāter, frātris brother; fraternus, -a, -um, brotherly cf. 109e
frētus, -a, -um leaning, relying 6
frōns, frontis f. forehead; front frumentum, -i 74, 17; frumentārii procure grain, forage; frumentarius, -a, -um of grain 109e
fuga, -ae f. 60; in fugam dare or fugāre p. 15 put to flight; fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus 4, 97
fuit 183
furō, furere rave

gaudēō, gaudere, —, gāvisus rejoice; gaudium, -i n. joy
gēns, gentis f. race, family, clan, tribe; genus, generis n. birth, origin, lineage; sort, kind; generātum by tribes
gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus bear, carry; wear, carry on, accomplish, manage, do; rem gerere do business; bellum gerere make or wage war 226 or p. 238
gladius, -i 62
glōria, -ae f. fame, pride; liking, admiration; gloriāri glory in, take pride, boast 6
gradior, gradī, —, gressus step, walk, move; gradus, -ūs a step, grade, rank pl. steps, stair
 Graecus, -a, -um Greek; Graecus, -i a Greek; graecē 69; Graecia, -ae Greece
grātus, -a, -um pleasant, agreeable, acceptable; grātum, -i a thing pleasing, a favor; grātia, -ae 59, 62g; grātiam habēre be grateful; grātiās agere
Vocabulary

return thanks; grátiam referre
return a favor; grátulári congrátulare
gravis, -e heavy, severe, serious, dignified; graviter severely, seriously; gravitás, -átis f. weight; dignity

habeō, habère, habuí, habitus 58, 102, 104, 222c; habitáre 222c
haerēō, -ère, haeši, haesus stick
harēna, -ae f. dry soil; sand, arena.
hibernus, -a, -um of winter;
(castro) hiberna winter camp cf. 109c
hic, haec, hoc 117b, 119c; hic
... hic; this... that; the one... the other; hic...
ille the latter... the former; hic 119e; hinc 119f; hác 119g; hóc 154; hodiē this day, to-day; húc 119d; ad-húc up to this, thus far
hiems, hiemis f. winter; initā
hieme at the beginning of winter; media hiems mid-winter; extrēma hiems last of winter; summa hiems the depth of, dead of winter; hie-māre pass the winter
hodiē see hic; hodiernus, -a,
-um to-day's, of to-day cf. 109c.
homō, hominis human being, man
honōs or honor, honōris m. office,
honor; honestus, -a, -um honor-able; honestāre, honor
hóra, -ae f. hour
hortor, -āri, —, hortātus 147c.
hortus, -i, m. garden
hōrum, 109b
hostis, -is 63; stranger, for-eigner, enemy (public) as opp. to inimicus (private) enemy
huius 109b
hūmānus, -a, -um of man, hu-man 109c; cultured, refined; hūmānitās, -átis f. refinement, culture
humus, humi m. ground; humi
(Loc.) on the ground; humiliis,
-e 92
iaceō, iacere, iacuí lie (dead)
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus throw,
hurl; iactāre 222c; coniciō, conicère, coniēcī, coniectus
throw (all together), thrust
iam now, soon, already; at that
time, at this time; iam diū
long since; iam... iam at
one time... at another; nōn
iam no longer
ibi p. 183
idem, eadem, idem 47; eōdem
p. 182; ibidem p. 183; in-
didem p. 183; eādem p. 183;
item 119b
id, quod; ea, quae 115
idōneus, -a, -um suitable 3 or
ad 4
Īdūs, -uum f. Ides; see page 36
igitur 66
ignis, -is m. fire
ille, illa, illud 109b, 118b (after
its noun) that well-known or
famous; ille... hic the one
... the other, the former... the
latter; illō, illūc 119d;
illic 119e; illinc 119f; illāc
119g
imber, imbris m. rain shower
immótus, -a, -um, unmoved 98 ;
220, 7
im-pediô, im-pedire 98
im-pendeô, -pendère 220, 7
im-perô, -âre 147e ; 3p, 4t ; 3p
ut Sub. ; imperâtor, -ôris m.
commander, general; impe-
ierium, -i n. command; chief
command, power, control, go-
vernment
im-petrô, -âre 147e ; 4 ab 6 ; ut
Sub.
impetus, -âs m. charge, attack,
rush
im-plôrô, -âre ask 4t, ab ploro
beg
im-pônô, -pônere, -posui, -posi-
tus put in, put on, put upon,
impose, levy upon 3p, 4t or 4,
in 4
imus, -a, -um 92
in 57 and 58
in-cendô, in-cendere, in-cendi,
in-cêsus set on fire; incendi-
um, -i n. fire, conflagration
in-cidô, in-cidere, in-cidi fall
upon, happen upon, in 4
in-cipió, -cipere take to, begin
in-citô, in-citâre rouse
in-colô, in-colere, in-coluï dwell
in, inhabit 4 ; in-cola, -ae m.
inhabitant; agri-cola farmer
in-columis, -e unharmed, safe
in-cûsô, in-cûsâre bring charge
against, upbraid
inde, p. 183
index, -icis m. pointer, discloser,
informer; indicium, -i in-
formation, accusation; indi-
câre point out, show, make
known, accuse
in-dûcô, in-dûcere, -dûxi, -duc-
tus lead on, influence
indulgeô, -ère indulge 3
in-eô, in-ire, -îi, -itus go into
enter (upon); initium, -i n.
an entering upon, beginning
inferî, inferior, infimus 92
in-ferô, in-ferre, in-tuli, il-lâtus
155b, 220, 7 ; bellum inferre 3
carry war against
infirmus, -a, -um weak, unsteady
ingêns, ingentis cf. 84 ; enor-
mous
in-grediôr, in-gredi, —, in-gres-
sus in 4 ; 153
in-imicus, -a, -um unfriendly 75;
inimicîtia, -ae f. enmity
in-iqus, -a, -um unfair, unjust
219
initium see inêô
in-iûria, -ae f. 107
in-iusus, -a, -um unbidden cf.
98 ; 220, 7
inopia, -ae f. want, lack
in-opinâns, -antis (when) not ex-
pecting, unaware 84, 220, 7
inquam I say; inquit says he
in-sequor, in-sequi, —, in-se-
cûtus follow on, pursue
insidiaë, -ârum f. a sitting
against; ambush, treachery
insolenter insolently
in-stituô, In-stituere, In-stituî,
in-stitütus set up, decide, es-
ablish; equip; institûtum, -i
n. custom, institution
in-stô, in-stâre, in-stiti stand on,
keep at, press on; insist
in-struô, in-STRUERE, in-strûxi, in-
structus heap up; arrange, set
in order, plan, contrive
insula, -ae f. 60 ; 74, 21
in-sum, in-esse be in
in-teger, -gra, -grum untouched; 
  fresh, complete
intel-legō, intel-legere, intel-
lēxī, -lēctus 220, 8 ; 1 aware, 
  see
in-tendō, in-tendere, -tendi, -ten-
tus strain toward, stretch out 
toward
inter 57 ; 220, 8 ; 221b
inter-cēdō, inter-cēdere, -cessi, 
  -cessus 220, 8 ; 221b
inter-diū during the daytime
inter-dum sometimes, meanwhile
inter-eā there between; mean-
while
inter-ficiō, inter-ficere, -fēci, -fect-
tus make away with, kill, put 
to death 220, 8
inter-iciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus 
thrust in, situated between, in-
tervening
inter-im there between, meanwhile
inter-mittō, inter-mittere, -missi, 
  -missus let go between times, 
  interrupt, let up, stop 220, 8
interneció, -onis f. massacre 
  (nex)
inter-pōnō, inter-pōnerē, -posui, 
  -positus put between, interpose; 
  offer, allege
inter-sum, -esse, -fuī 70, 73c, d 
  intervallum, -i n. interval
intrā (w. Ac.) within
intrō-dūcō, intrō-dūcere, -dūxī, 
  -ductus 220, 8 lead into
intuli see īnferō
in-venīō, in-venire, -vēni, -ventus 
come upon, find 4 ; find out
  4 Inf.
in-victus, -a, -um unconquered, 
  invincible
invitō, invitāre, invite
invitus, -a, -um (when) unwilling, 
  (though) reluctant 94, 96
ipse, ipsa, ipsum 118
īra, irae anger; irācundus, -a, 
  -um hot-tempered; īrāsci 223b 
grow angry; īrātus angry, en-
raged
is, ea, id 112, 115, 119c ; p. 182 ; 
  eō p. 182 ; ibi p. 183 ; inde 
  p. 183 ; ēa p. 183 ; īta 119b
iste, ista, istud 109b, 118b;
  istic 119e ; īstāc 119d ; īstinc 
  119f ; īstāc 119g
ita-que and so, therefore
item 119b
iter, itineris n. 82a, b, e a going; 
  journey, route, line of march; 
  iter facere march; (eōs) iti-
nere prohibère keep (them) 
  from marching or passing
iterum 67, 120g
itārus 102–3
iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus 4
  Inf. ; 122, 127, 136, 139
iūdex, iūdicis 46, 78 ; iūdicāre 
  serve as judge, judge, decide, 
  think, declare; iūdicium, -i n. 
  court, judgment, decision
iugum, -i n. yoke; ridge, chain of 
  hills; summit; iūmentum, -i n. 
  yoke animal
Iūlius, -i 60
iungō, iungere, iūnxi, iūnctus 
  join
iūs, iūris n. 42, 225 ; iūrāre take 
  oath, swear; coniūrāre swear 
  together, conspire; iūs iūran-
dum oath; iūstus, -a, -um
right, just, fair; iūstitia, -ae
f. fairness
iussus, -ūs m. a bidding cf. 157
iuvenis, -is young; iuventūs 44
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtus 4 help,
    aid, assist; iuvat it pleases
labor, labī, —, lapsus slip
labor, -ōris m. toil; labōrāre toil,
    work out, be in trouble, suffer
    (inconvenience)
lac, lactis n. milk
lacessō, lacessere, -ivi, -itus
    challenge, provoke, excite
lacrima, -ae f. tear
lacus, -ās m. lake
lapis, -idis m. 43
largus, -a, -um copious, lavish,
    unstinted; largiter copiously;
    largīrī 136, 139; largītiō,
    -onis f. lavish giving, bribery
Latium, -i n. Latium; Latinus,
    -a, -um Latin; latinē 69
latrō, -ōnis m. robber, highway-
    man
lātus see ferō
lātus, -a, -um 92; lātē 69;
    lātitūdō, -dinis f. 42, 92
latus, -eris n. side, flank
laus, laudis f. praise; laudāre,
    151
laurus, -i f. laurel (tree)
legō, legere, légī, lēctus 97 -e,-
    106, 136, 218; legiō, -onis f. a
    choosing; legion; legiōnārius,
    -a, -um of a legion, legiō-
    nary: légāre appoint legally,
    commission; bequeath; légā-
    tus, -i m. lieutenant, envoy;
    légātiō, -onis f. mission, com-
    mission, embassy
lēnis, -e soft, gentle; lēniter
    smoothly, gently; lēnitās, -ātis
    f. softness, gentleness, mildness
lentē slowly
lēx, lēgis f. law, statute
liber, libri m. inner bark; 62
liber, libera, liberum 91; pl.
    liberī, -ōrum free children;
    liberē freely; liberāre to make
    free; libertās, -ātis f. freedom;
    liberāliter generously
libet, libēre, libuit, libitum 119b;
    libēns pleasing; libenter with
    pleasure, gladly
licet, licēre, licuit, licitum 139
lingua, -ae f. tongue; language
littera, -ae f. letter pl. 218a;
    litterārius, -a, -um of letters
lītus, -oris n. 218a
locus, -i m. place, room; pl. loca
    n. places; locāri passages in
    books; locāre place, locate; let;
    collocāre arrange, station, put
longus, -a, -um 92; distant;
    longē 69; longītūdō 92
loquor, loquī, —, locūtus 136;
    express one’s self
lūdō, lūdere, lūsi, lūsus play 6;
    make sport of 6; lūdus, -i m.
    game, play; school; ē-lūdere
    dodge, escape
lūstrō, -āre survey, look over
lūx, lūcis f. light of day; lūcēre
    shine; lūmen, -inis n. light;
    lūna (for lūcīna) moon 223
lūxus, -ūs m. luxury, taste
māchina, -ae f. machine, struc-
    ture; māchināri contrive, in-
    vent, scheme; māchinātiō,
    -onis f. contrivance
Vocabulary

magister, -trī m. 76 master, overseer; teacher; magistrātus, -ūs m. chieftainship, office

magnus, -a, -um 70, 92; magnitudō, -dinis f. greatness, size; maior, -ius 92; maximus 92; magnopere, magnō opere 70; magis 69; maximē 69, 92

mālō, mālle, mālui 137, 186

malus, -a, -um 91, 64, 70; male 69; maleficium, -i n. 91

mandō, mandāre 3 and 4 give up to; entrust, bid; command; mandātum, -i order

manoē, manēre, mānsī, mānsus remain, abide, stay

mānsuētus, -a, -um gentle

manus, -ūs f. band, force 81

mare, -is n. 79b; marītus, -a, -um of sea, maritime cf. 109c; aequor level sea; pelagōs broad sea; pontus deep sea, altum high or deep sea

māter, mātris 41; māternus cf. 109c; māterfamilias; see -familias

mātūrus 91; mātūrē 91; mātūrius 91; mātūrāre Inf. o. 91; 223

medius, -a, -um mid-, middle, central

mei 116a

mel 41

melior, -ius 91

membrum, -i n. limb

meminī, meminisse remember, recollect 4, 4 Inf.; memor, -oris mindful or remembering 2; memoria, -ae f. recollection; tradition, record 2; memoria tenēre keep in mind, recollect; memūrāre recall, recount, relate 4

mēns, mentis f. mind

mēnsis, -is m. month; mēnsūra, -ae f. measure; mētiri measure

mēreō, mērēre, mērui, meritus deserve, merit; meritum, -i n. merit, desert; merītō deservedly; merx, mercis f. ware; mercēs goods; mercēs, -ēdis f. pay; mercātor, -ōris m. trader

metus, -ūs m. fear, dread; metuere, metui fear, apprehend, dread

meus, mea, meum 64, 83, 109c

miles, -itis 44; militāris, -e 109c soldier's, military; militia, -ae f. military service; domi militiaeque L. at home and abroad

mille, milia 120; millēsimus, -a, -um 1000th

ministrō, -āre furnish

minor 150; minus, -ōris 70; minus 118c; minuere, minui, minūtus lessen, decrease; minimē 69; minimus 92

mirus, -a, -um wonderful; mirāri wonder at, marvel

misceō, miscēre, miscui, mixtus mix, mingle; 4 and 6

miser, misera, miserum 74, 8

mittō, mittere, misi, missus let go, 159, 62

modus, -i m. measure, kind; modo 66 in a measure, in a (limited) manner; only, but, just, just now; modestus, -a, -um self-restraining

moenia, -ium n. 79, walls

mōlēs, -is f. shapeless mass; pile, heap, dam, mole, dyke, burden;
Vocabulary 331

molīri pile up, heap up, build, plot; molestō with annoyance
molitus, -a, -um ground
moneō, monère, monui, monitus warn, advise 4, ut w. Sub.
mōns, montis m. mountain
mora, -ae f. delay, hindrance; morāri 100 detain self cf. 181, delay
mors, mortis f. 100; morior, morī, —, mortuus 100
mōs, mōris m. 42
moveō, movere, mōvī, mōtus 98, 145; mōtus, -ūs m. a move, uprising cf. 157
mulier, -eris f. (married) woman
multus, -a, -um 64, 70; 74, 17; 74, 19; plūs 70, 150; plūrimus 64, 70; 72, 73; multitudō, -inis f. body, number, great quantity
mūnus, mūneris n. task, function, service; gift; mūniō, mūniōre 97–8, 104; mūnītiō, -onis f. 98
mūrus, -i m. wall
mūtō, -āre change

nāscor, nāscī, —, nātus 223b; nātus, -i son; nāta, -ae daughter; maior nātū elder; minor nātūr younger; less in age; nātīō, -onis f. race, people, tribe; nātūra, -ae f. 6d
nātō, nātāre 222c; nauta, -ae (for navita § 178) m.; nāvis, -is f. 62c, 79; nāvīgāre sail; nāvīgātiō, -onis f. sailing
-ne interrog. particle 145a, b nē 69, 141, 148, 153–155 nec, neque 66
necesse nom. or acc. necesse est it is urgent; necessitās, -ātis f. urgency; necessitūdō, -dinis f. relationship; necessārius, -a, -um urgent, necessary; relative
neg-legō, neg-legere, neg-lēxi, neg-lēctus 98, 102; 220, 9; 225; neglegenter, carelessly
nēgō, negāre say no, deny, refuse
negōtium, -ī n. 220, 9 nē-mō, nēmini, nēminem 118c ne-quā-quam p. 183 ne-que, nec 66
neuter, neutra, neutrum 40, 65 nēve; see nē and -ve
nex, necis f. slaying, death, murder
nihil, -i n. 118c, 70–1, 145b nisi (ni) 141b, 113, 156 nītor, nīti, —, nīsus or nīxus strive; rely or rest 6; or in 4 nīx, nīvis f. 46
nōbilis, -e see nōscō
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui 121, 128, 137 nōmen, -inis n. 41; suō nōmine on one’s own account; nōminātīm by name; nōmināre call by name
nōn 141; nōn-dum not yet; nōn iam no longer; nōnnūllos; nōnnunquam cf. 64, 119b nōnus, -a, -um 120; nōngenti 900
nōs 116b
nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus 107, 223; perf. nōvī I know; nōbilis, -e knowable; prominent
nōster, nostra, nostrum 64, 109c
nōtō, -āre mark, denote
Vocabulary

novem 120; noviēns 120g
novus, -a, -um new, strange; novae rēs revolution; novissimus newest, last (to come or pass); novissimum agmen rear-guard; novāre renew, repair, change; novitās, -ātis f. newness, novelty, strangeness
nox, noctis f. 46; noctū, nocte 74, 18; primā nocte at nightfall; multā nocte late at night
nūbēs 79; nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi nūpta (f.) (veil), marry; nūptiae, -ārum f. marriage (ceremonies); nūptum (Sup.) 157
nūdus, -a, -um bare; nūdāre make bare, clear 4 and 6; 63
nūllus, -a, -um 40, 64, 65, 118b num? 145e
numerus, -i m. number, amount; saepe numerō oftentimes; numerāre count
numquam p. 183
nunc now; nunc ... nunc at one time ... at another; nū-per just now, lately; 220, 10
nūntius, -a, -um announcing; messenger, news; nūntiāre 142
nūper see nunc

ob 57; 220, 9
ob-aerātus, -a, -um in debt; debtor
ob-lātus see of-ferō
ob-liviscor, ob-livisci, —, ob-litus 2 or 4; 4 Inf. 107, 223b
ob-œdiō, ob-œdīre listen to, give heed to, obey
ob-sideō, ob-sidēre, ob-sēdī, ob-sessus sit by or against; be-
siege, blockade; obses, -idis 106e; obsidiō, -onis f. blockade, siege
ob-stringō, -stringere, -strīnxi, -strictus bind
obstrictus, -a, -um bound
ob-tineō, ob-tinēre, ob-tinui, obtentus 98, 220, 9
oc-cidō, oc-cidere, oc-cidī, -cāsus fall, settle, set; occāsus, -ūs m. a falling down; setting; occāsiō, -onis f. opportunity
oc-cidō, oc-cidere, oc-cidī, oc-cīsus 219, 1
oc-cupō, oc-cupāre take possession of, seize
oc-currō, oc-currere, oc-cucurri or oc-currī, -cursus 220, 9
Ōceanus, -i m. ocean; mare Ōceanus the Atlantic
octō 120;-Octōber 87; octāvus, -a, -um 120; octōgintā 120;
oc tingenti, -ae, -a eight hundred
oculus, -i m. 62g
ōdī, ōdisse 74, 22; odium, -i n. in 4, § 5f
of-ferō, of-ferre, ob-tuli, ob-lātus 220, 9
officium, -i n. service, duty
oliva, -ae f. olive
omnis, -e 71; omnīnō in all
opera, -ae f. labor; pains, effort
opiniō, -onis f. idea, expectation
oportet, oportēre, oportuit 152
oportūnus, -a, -um lucky
oppidum, -i 77; oppidānus, -i m. townsman
op-primō, -primere, -pressi, -pressus oppress
Vocabulary

op-pugnō, op-pugnāre assault, attack, storm (a town); op-pūgnātiō, -ōnis f. assault, storming
optimus 91; ē 69; optimātēs, -ium, m. aristocrats
opus, operis n. 70, 71c; magnopere 70; quantopere 70; tantopere 70
opus est 6, 71c
ōra, -ae f. coast, border, zone
orbis, -is m. circle, round, orbit; orbis terrārum the circle of the lands i.e. the world
ōrdō, -inis m. 42
orior, orīrī, —, ortus 97, 100, 102; origō 42; oriēns 97; ortus, -ūs m. the rising (of the sun)
ōrnō, ōrnāre adorn; ōrnāmentum, -īn. ornament, equipment, credit
ōs, ōris n. 78; face; ōrō, ōrāre move mouth, plead, beg; ōrātor, -ōris m. pleader, orator; ōrātiō, -ōnis f. plea, argument, speech
ostendō, ostendere, os-tendi, ostentus 146, 220, 9
ōvis, -is f. sheep
pābulum, -i n. 148h; pābulāri get forage; pābulātiō, -ōnis f. foraging; a foraging expedition
pācō, see pāx
paene almost; paen-insula, -ae f. almost-island, peninsula
pāgus, -i m. district, clan, canton
paūs, -ūdis f. 43
pandō, pandere, pandī, passus open, spread out; passim here and there
pār, paris 83; pariter equally
parcus, -a, -um sparing
pāreō, pārēre, pārui obey 3
pariō, parere, peperi, partus give birth to, bring forth; parēns, -entis parent
parō, parāre 98, 102
pars, partis f. 47, 79; pars . . . pars some . . . others; partim partly; parti-ceps, -cipis participant, sharer; partiri 104
parvus, -a, -um 70, 71, 92, 150;
parum 70; minor 150; minus 69, 148d, 150, 155, 118c;
minimus 70, 92; minimē 69
pāscō, pāscere, pāvi, pāstus cause to feed, pasture; pascor, pascē feed (self) on 6; 180-2;
pāstor, -ōris m. feeder, shepherd
passus p.p. of pātor 100
passus (p.p. of pandō) open
passus, -ūs m. a spreading; double step (about 5 feet);
mille passūs 1000 paces, a Roman mile 120
pateō, patēre, patui extend, lie open, spread pp. 33, line 9,'38, 14; pate-faciō, pate-facere, -fēci, -factus throw open, open, disclose
pater, patris 41; paternus, -a, -um 109c; patrius, -a, -um paternal; (terra) patria fatherland, country; patruus, -i ān uncle on the father’s side
patior, patī, —, passus let, allow
pauci, -ae, -a 64; paucitās, -ātis f. fewness
paulum 70; paululum 70; paul- lātim little by little, gradually; paulisper for a short time
pāx, pācis f. 46, 159; pācāre submit;
pactum, -i n. agreement
pecus, -oris n. cattle; pecūnia,
-ae f. (value of cattle) money
peius see malus 91
pellis, -is f. skin, hide, pelt
pellō, pellere, pepulli, pulsus
strike, beat, push, drive
per 57; 70
per-agō, per-agere, per-āgī, -āctus
drive through; finish, accomplish
per-dō, per-dere, -dīdī, -dītus put
through; destroy, loose
per-dūcō, per-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus take on or over, continue
per-eō, per-īre, per-īū, -ītus go
through; perish, be lost 220, 10
per-facīlis, -is, -e very easy
per-ferō, per-ferre, -tulī, -lātus
bear through, carry through;
endure to the end; carry news
per-ficiō, per-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus
98, 220, 10
perīculum, -i n. danger; pericu-
lōsus, -a, -um perilous; peri-
clitāri take risk (to self) 180-2
perītus, -a, -um 2 skilled in,
experienced, familiar with; im-
perītus 2 ignorant
per-magnus, -a, -um cf. 64, 70
per-maneō, per-manēre, -mānsī,
-mānsus stay through, hold out,
abide
per-mittō, per-mittere, -mīsī,
-missus let go through; yield,
allow, permit 4, ut w. Sub.
per-moveō, per-movēre, -mōvī,
-mōtus move throughout, rouse,
induce
permulti 64, 220, 10
perniciēs, -ei f. thorough killing;
destruction, disaster cf. nex
perpauci, -ae, -a 64, 220, 10
per-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rup-
tus break through
per-sequor, per-sequi, —, perse-
cētus follow thoroughly, pursue, press hard
per-sevērō, per-sevērāre perse-
vere, insist upon Inf. o.
per-spiciō, per-spicere, per-spēxi,
-spectus see through, see clearly,
made out, understand
per-suādeō, per-suādēre, -suāsī,
-suāsus 147e
per-terreō, per-terrēre, -terrui,
-terrītus terrify thoroughly
per-tineō, -tinēre, -tinui 220, 10
per-turbō, -turbāre, confuse
thoroughly, throw into confusion
per-venīō, -venīre, -vĕnī, -ventus
get through to, arrive at ad
4; arrive in in 4
pēs 43; pedes, -itis m. 43;
pedester, -tris, -tre belonging
to the feet; of infantry cf.
109e; peditātus, -ās m. a body
of foot-soldiers, infantry
petō, petere, petivī, petītus 147e
phalanx, -angis f. phalanx; close
formation of troops
pīlum, -i n. javelin, spear
placeō, placēre, placui, placitum
3, 133
plānus, -a, -um flat, even; plānē
plainly; plānitiēs, -ei f. level-
ness, plain
plēbēs, -ei f. commons
plēnu s, -a, -um 62
plērique most people 76
plērumque 70
plerusque, plēraque, plērumque 76
plūrimum 70
plūs, plūris n. 70, 72; 74, 19; 150
poena, -ae f. penalty, punishment
pol-liceor, pol-licēri, —, pol-
licitus hold forth; promise
pōnē, pōnere, posuí, positus put
down, put, place, establish
pōns, pontis m. 158
populō, populāre ravage, raid
populus, -i m. 107
porta, -ae f. gate, entrance; por-
tus, -us harbor, port
portō, portāre 97, 102, 104
poscō, poscere, poposcī demand,
claim; inquire into
possidēō, possidēre, possess, own
possum, posse 137, 183; potēns
84, 91; potentia, -ae f. power,
influence
post 57, 68; postea 69; pos-
terus, -a, -um; posterior
hinder; postremus or post-
umus latest, last, final; pos-
tridiē on the next day; pos-
trēmō at last
pōstulō, postulāre 147e
potēns 84
potestās, -ātis or potentia, -ae f.
power, chance (at) 2
potior, potīri, —, potitus 182
praec 58, 92, 220, 11
praecātus, -a, -um sharpened
praebēō, praebēre, praebēi,
praebitus 220, 11
praecēdō, praecēdere 74, 16; 220; 11
praecēpiō, praecēpere, -cēpi,
-ceptus take beforehand, antici-
pale, advise, warn, give direc-
tions, order; praecēpē especial-
praedā, -ae f. booty, prey;
praedāri make prey of, rob,
plunder
praecurrō, -ere run ahead
praedīcō, praedīcāre make
known, proclaim; vaunt, boast
praefēro, praeferre, -tuli, -lātus
place before, prefer 3 and 4
praeficīō, praeficere, praefēcī,
-fectus 3 and 4, put at the head
of or in charge of; praefectus,
-ī captain, prefect (of cavalry)
praefēgō, -ere read out
praefīmitō, praefīmētere, praef-
missī, -missus send in advance
praemium, -ī n. bounty, reward
praenōmen fore-name; cf. co-
gnōmen added name
praesidium, -ī n. garrison; guard
praestō, praestāre, -stīi, -stītus
stand in front, excel 3; put in
front of, furnish 3p, 4t
praesum, praesesse, praefuī be
at head of, in charge of 3; praesēns, praesentis present
cf. 84
praetō 57; praetō-eā besides;
praetō quam further than, except
praetō-eō, praetō-ere, -ii, -itus
220, 11
praetō-eō, -ere go ahead of; praetor,
-oīs m. one who goes before; a
praetor, a Roman magistrate,
general; praetōriōs, -a, -um
general's
premō, premere, pressī, pressus
press, crowd, oppress
prēndō, prēndere or prehendere,
prehendi, prehēnusus grasp; 
comprehendere seize, arrest
pretium, -i n. 73
pridēm long ago, long since; iam
pridēm this long ago, long ago;
pridē in the day before; prior,
prius 69, 92; prīmus, -a, -um
92, 120; prīn-ceps, -cipis first;
foremost, chief; principātus,
-ūs m. chiefship, leadership;
prīncipium, -i n. beginning;
prius, prius (-quam) 69; pristīnus, -a, -um former, old-time
privātus, -a, -um set apart
prō 58; 220, 12
probūs, -a, -um good; probāre
find good, approve, prove;
probītās, -ātis f. goodness; 
improbūs, -a, -um wicked, bad
prō-cēdō, prō-cēdere, prō-cessi,
-cessus go forth, advance
prō-cōnsul, -is m. proconsul
prōcul adv. afar off
prōd-eō, -ire, -i, -itus 220, 12
prō-dō, prō-dere, -didi, -ditus
give away, betray; prōditor,
-ōris m. traitor
prō-dūcō, prō-dūcere, -dūxī,
-ductus lead forth; protract,
draw out
proelium, -i n. 62 f, 63, proelīāri
do battle
pro-ficīscor, pro-ficīsci, —, pro-
ficīscus set out 223; profectō,
-ōnis f. a setting forth, depa-
ture
prō-flūō, -ere, flow out
pro-fugiō, pro-fugere, pro-fugi,
-fugītūrus 220, 12
prō-gredior, prō-gredi, —, prō-
gressus 100, 104, 220, 12
pro-hībēō, pro-hībere, pro-hībui,
-hībitus 63, 102, 123, 132,
148g, 219, 3
prope near; almost; propior,
propius nearer; proximus, -a,
-um 68c; proximē most re-
cently, last; propinquus, -a,
-um near; close, relative; pro-
pinquitās, -ātis f. kinship
properō, -äre hasten, speed
Inf. o
prō-pōnō, prō-pōnerē, prō-posuī,
-positus put forward, set forth
propius, -a, -um one’s own,
proper cf. Eng. property
propter 57; propter-a 154
prō-pulsō, prō-pulsāre beat off
prō-spiciō, prō-spicere, prō-
spexi, -spectus look forth or
look out for 3; prōspectus, -ūs
m. view
prō-vidēō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visus
foresee 4; provide for 3; prōvi-
dēns or prūdēns 91; prō-
videntia or prūdēntia, -ae f.
foresight, wisdom
prōvincia 77; p. 78 line 23
prō-vocō, prō-vocāre call forth,
challenge
prō-volō, -äre fly forth
púbicus, -a, -um 73; rēs
pública commonwealth, state;
púbicē in the name of the
people, publicly
puer, pueri 41, 44; puella, -ae f.
girl
pugna, -ae f. 62f; pugnus, -i m.
fist; puggō, pugnāre 62
pulcher, -chra, -chrums 91
Vocabulary

putō, putāre trim, clean; arrange, set in order, reckon, think

quadrāgintā 120g; quadrāgiēns; quadrāgēnsimus, -a, -um 40th;
quadrāns, -ntis one fourth; quadrēngenti, -ae, -a four hundred
quadriennium 67; quādriduum 67
quaerō, quaerere, quaeāvī, quae-
sītus 123, 143, 147e
quā 119g
quālis, -e 91
quam 64, 69, 90; quamquam however, and yet, though
quandō 119a
quantus, -a, -um 70, 92; quant-
topere 70
quā rē 115 c, 154
quattuor 120; quater 67, 120;
quārtus, -a, -um 120; qua-
ternī, -ae, -a four each; quatuordecim fourteen; quad-
ringenti, -ae, -a 400
-que 66
queror, quērī, —, questus com-
plain of, lament; questus, -ús
m. a complaint 157; querim-
mōnia, -ae f. complaint
qui, quae, quod 115
quis-cumque, quae-cumque, quod-
cumque 119b and p. 182
quidam, quaedam, quiddam, quoddam 119b and p. 182
quidem; nē . . . quidem 69
quiēs, quiētis f. 43; quiēscō,
-ere, quiēvi, quiētus go to rest;
grow quiet; quiētus at rest,
peaceful
quin 115b, c, 149
quinque 120 or p. 29; quinquēs
120; quintus, -a, -um 120;
quinī, -ae, -a 120; quinqua-
gintā 120 or p. 29; quīn-
genti, -ae, -a 120
quis, quid; qui, quae, quod
113–5
quis-quam, quid-quam or quic-
quam 119b or p. 182
quis-que, quae-que, quid-que or quod-que 119b or p. 182
quis-quī, quid-quī 119b
quī-vī, quae-vī, quid-vī, quod-
vīs 119b or p. 182
quō . . . eō 74, 19 or p. 18
quō . . . minus 148–9, 155
quod the fact that, as for the fact
that, because, since 115b
quon-dam 119a, b and p. 183
quon-iam since, whereas, as 224
quoque also, too
quōrum 109b
quot 64; quotiēns 120e; quot-
annis every year
rārus, -a, -um widely scattered,
loose; rārō rarely
rapiō, rapere, rapūĭ, raptus 97,
98, 162
ratiō, -ōnis, f. 42 a reckoning;
way, method; account; system,
plan, reason 154
ratis, -is f. raft; vessel
re-, red- 220, 13
raucus, -a, -um hoarse
recēns, recentis fresh, new
re-cipiō, re-cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus
98, 104; sé recipere betake
one’s self, withdraw
rēctē see regō
re-cūsō, re-cūsāre 154, 219, 1
red-dō, red-dere, -didi, -ditus
give back, return cf. 102
red-eō, red-ère, -iī, -itūs go back,
return; reditus, -ūs m. (a)
return; reditiō, -onis f. 220, 13
red-igō, red-igere, -ęgī, -ąctus
drive back; reduce, bring down
red-imō, red-imere, -ęmi, -ęemptus
buy back; purchase, acquire,
ransom
red-integrō, -āre renew
re-dūcō, re-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus
lead back, take back
re-ferō, re-ferre, ret-tuli, re-lātus
bring back, report, refer; relate
re-ficīō, re-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus
make over, repair, refresh
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus guide,
direct, rule; regiō, -onis f. 42;
rēctus direct, straight; rēctē
rightly; rēx, rēgis m. king;
regius, -a, -um kingly, royal;
rēgālis, -e king’s, kingly, royal;
109c; rēgina, -ae f. queen;
rēgnun, -i n. royal authority,
kingship; kingdom, realm;
rēgnāre reign
re-linquent, re-linquiere, re-liquī,
relictus leave behind, abandon,
desert; reliquus, -a, -um re-
maining; rest of; reliquiae,
-ārum f. leavings, remains
re-miniscor, re-minisci cf. 107,
223
re-mittō, mittere, -misi, -missus
let go back
repēns, -ntis sudden; repente
suddenly; repentinus, -a, -um
unexpected
re-perīō, re-perire, rep-perī, re-
pertus 135
re-petō, re-petere, -petī, -petitus
ask back, seek again
re-portō, -āre bring back
re-prehendō, re-prehendere,
-prehendī, -prehēnsus blame
re-pugnō, -āre resist, stand in the
way of
rēs, rei 44, 73c, 81, 113; rēs
publica the commonwealth; rēs
familiāris family property;
estate; rēs militāris art of war;
rēs novae revolution
re-spiciō, re-spicere, re-spexī,
-spectus look back, respect
re-stinguō, re-stinguerre, -stīnxi,
-stinctus extinguish
re-stituō, re-stituere, re-stitui,
-stitūtus re-establish, restore
re-tineō, re-tinēre, re-tinui, re-
tentus 155b
re-vertō, re-vertere, -vertī, -ver-
sus 182; reverti 181b
rēx, rēgis m. 46
Rhodus, -i f. 76
rideō, ridere, risī, risus laugh at
ripa, -ae, f. bank
rogō, rogāre 141b, 157b
Rōma, -ae f. 74, 13; Rōmānus,
-a, -um 109c; rōmānē in
Roman fashion
ruō, ruere, rūl, ruitūrus rush,
tumble, fall; ruīna, -ae f. 
breach
rūrsus, rūrsum 119b
rūs, rūris n. 42, 78; rūs (Acc.)
61b; rūri (Loc.) 61c; rūre
(Abl.) 61d
saepe 69; saepenumerō often-
times
saevīō, saevīre rage, be furious
sagitta, -ae f. arrow
salūs, -ūtis f. 43 ; salūtāre greet,
    wish good health
sanguis, -inis m. 43
satis 70 ; satisfacere 3 do enough
    for, give satisfaction
scandō 220, 2
sciō, scire, scīvi or scīi, scītus
    74, 3 ; sciēns knowing; sciēntia,
    -ae f. knowledge; inscius, -a, -um or insciēns not
    knowing
scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptus
    write, write down; scriptor,
    -ōris m. writer; scriptum, -i n.
    (thing) written, writing
scūtum, -i n. oblong shield
sē, sui 62 f
sē-, sēd- 220, 13
sēcrētus, -a, -um set apart;
    sēcrētō in private, privately
secundus, -a, -um (cf. sequi) follow-
    ing; next, second; favor-
    able, successful; secundum
    w. Acc. next to, along, following
sed 66
sē-decim 120
sedeō, sedère, sēdi, sessus sit, be
    fixed or settled; sēdēs, -is f.
    55d; seat, settlement
sēditiōs, -onis f. 220, 13 ; sēdi-
    tōsus, -a, -um seditious, rebel-
    lious
semel 67, 120
sēmen, sēminis n. seed; sē-
    mentis, -is a sowing
semper always, ever
senex, senis old man; senātus
    44
sēnī, -ae, -a six each (way)
sentīō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnus per-
ceive by senses; feel, hear, see,
    perceive, realize; sententia,
    -ae f. feeling, thinking, opinion,
    judgment; sententiam rogāre
    ask opinion or vote
sēparātus 220, 13 ; sēparātim
    separately
sepeliō, sepelīre, sepelīvī, sepul-
    tus bury; sepulture, -ae f.
    burial
septem, seven; septiēns 7-times;
    septimus, -a, -um seventh;
    septuāgentā seventy; septin-
    genti, -ae, -a seven hundred;
    septendecim seventeen; 'sep-
    ten-trīō, -ōnis m. seven plough-
    oxen; Great bear, the north
    sequor, sequī, —, secūtus 97,
    100, 102
serēnus, -a, -um clear, calm,
    fair; serēnō, serēnāre make
    clear
servīō, servīre be a slave, serve;
    servus, -i ; serva, -ae slave;
    servītūs, -ūtis f. 43
servō, -āre save, keep, guard,
    watch
sex, six ; sexiēns 6-times; sex-
    tus, -a, -um sixth; sēnī, -ae,
    -a six each; sexā-gintā sixty;
    ses-centī, -ae, -a six hundred
sēu = sive 66
sī 113, 224 ; sīn 156a, 224 ;
    sive (seu) 66
sic in such a manner, so; sicut
    just as
sidō, sidere (-sēdī, -sessus) sit
    down
signum, -i n. figure, mark, mili-
    tary standard, signal; signi-
    ficāre indicate, show
Vocabulary

silva, -ae f. forest; silvestris, -e (of) forest; wooded
similis, -e like, similar; simili-
ter similarly; simulâre pre-
ten
simul at once, together, at the
same time; simul atque (ac)
as soon as
sine 58
singuli, -ae, -a 120e
sinister, -tra, -trum left
sitis, -is f. thirst
socius, -a, -um allied, confederate,
friendly; comrade; societas,
-ätis f. association, alliance
sól, sólis m. 41
soleó, solère, —, solitus be
accustomed, wont Inf. o
solicitó, sollicitare 222d
solum, -i n. bottom, soil, ground
sólus, -a, -um 40, 65, 118b;
sóllum 66
solvó, -ere, solví, solútus loosen,
unbind, release, pay, fulfill
sónó, sonáre, sonui, sonitus
sound, resound; sonitus, -ús
m. sound, noise, din
soror, -órís f. sister; sorórcula,
-ae f. little sister
sors, sortis f. lot; fate, destiny,
oracle, success
spatium, -i n. 67
speciēs, -ēi f. appearance; looks,
sight; spectō, -äre look, face;
look at, consider; specula, -ae
f. look out; speculātor, -órís m.
scout, spy
spēs, speī f. 55c ; spērō, spēráre
hope, expect 4 ; 4 Inf.
spiritus, -ús m. breath; pl.
airs
spoliō, spoliāre 4p 6t, 230f rob
sponte of (one's own) will or
effort
statim see stō
statuō, statuere, statuí, statūtus
set up, station, fix; decide
stilus, -i m. stylus (for writing)
stipendium, -i n. tribute
stō, stāre, steti, statūrus 62c;
statío; -onis f. 42, 44, 157;
statim as one stands; at once;
forthwith; statūra, -ae f. stat-
ure; status, -ús m. state;
stābulum, -i n. stable
strepitus, -ús m. noise
studeō, studère, studuí be eager
or zealous 3 or Inf. o.; stu-
dium, -i n. 107, cf. 105; studiō-
sus, -a, -um fond
suavis, -e pleasant, sweet; suádeō,
suádère, suási, suásus 147e
sub 57, 58, 220, 14; close to,
towards
sub-dūcō, sub-dúcere, -dúxi,
-ductus lead up, draw up, haul
up
sub-eō, sub-iē, -ī, -itus 220, 14;
subitus having gone up to;
sudden, unexpected; subitō
suddenly
sub-levō, -äre relieve
sub-rideō, sub-ridère, -risi, -risus
half-laugh, smile
sub-sequor, sub-sequi, —, sub-
secútus 220, 14
subsidium, -i n. what sits or
remains below; reserve, assist-
ance, reinforcement
sub-cēdō, sub-cēdere, sub-cessi,
-cessus 3 ; 220, 14
sub-currō, sub-currere, sub-curri,
Vocabulary

cursus run up or under; run to assistance of 3
suf-ferō, suf-ferre, sus-tuli, sub-latus 220, 14
sui, sibi, sē 116c, 180
sum, esse, fui, futūrus 183
summa, -ae f. 92; summus 92
sum-ministrō, -āre; see ministrō 220, 14
sum-mittō, sum-mittere, -mīsī, -missus 3 and 4, 220, 14
sū-mō, sū-merē, sū-mpsī, sūmptus 219, 4; sūmptus, -ūs m. undertaking, expense
super prep. w. Acc. or Abl. over, upon 220, 15; suprā above; superbus, -a, -um overbearing, proud; superbē haughtily; superō, superāre 62f; super-
sum, 220, 15; superī 92; superior 68c, 92; summus 92; suprēmus 92; summā, -ae sum, sum total, chief position or command
sup-petō, sup-petere, sup-petīrī, -petitus (look up at) be in stock or on hand, be plentiful
sup-plex, -icīs bending under, kneeling; suppliant; supplicium, -i n. kneeling; punishment, penalty
sus-cipīō, sus-cipere, sus-cēpī, sus-ceptus 220, 14
su-spiciō, su-spicere, su-spexī, su-spectus look under or suspect; look up to; suspiciō, -ōnis f. 152b; suspicārī 220, 14
sus-tineō, -tinerē, -tinui, -tentus 220, 14
sustulī see sufferō and tollō
suus, sua, suum 63, 64, 109c

tabernāculum, -ī n. tent
tabula, -ae f. board, writing tablet
taeō, tacēre, tacui, tacitus be silent; tacitus silent
tālis, tāle 91
tam 64, 69, 149; tam-quam so as, just as
tamen still, nevertheless, yet
tandem at last, finally; pray, pray tell me
tantus, -a, -um 70, 92; tantulus, -a, -um 149 f; tantopere 70
tardus, -a, -um slow, late; tardē behind time, slowly; tardāre retard, hold back
tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctus cover, protect; tēctum, -i n. shelter, roof
tēlum, -i n. missile, weapon; spear, bolt, javelin; tēla mitere or conicere let go or hurl weapons in 4
tempus, -oris n. 42, 82; occasion; tempestās, -ātis f. period of time, weather, season; bad weather, storm; temperō, temp-
perāre ab 6 102, 155b
tendō, tendere, tetendi, tentus stretch; tenus, -e stretched; thin, slender, shallow
teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentus 97–104 -ē-
ter 67; ternī, -ae, -a three each; tertius, -a, -um 120e
tergum, -i n. back; rear; ā tergō on or from the rear
terra, -ae f. earth, land; terrēstris, -e earthly, of the earth cf. 109c
terreō, terrēre, terrui, territus 98, 148; terror, -ōris m. fright
Vocabulary

testūdō, -inis f. tortoise; tortoise-shaped shelter of shields or beams
timeō, timère, timui fear 153
toga, -ae f. toga; togātus, -a, -um clad in the toga
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus raise, lift up; puff up, remove, take away, destroy
torus, -i m. couch
tot 64; totīēns so many times, so often; tot-īdem 64
tōtus, -a, -um 40, 65, 118b
trā-dō, trā-dere, -dīdī, -ditus 220, 15
trā-dūcō, trā-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus 220, 15
trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus drag, draw
trāns 57, 220, 15
trāns-eō, trāns-ire, -ī, -itus 4, 220, 15
trēs, tria 120; tredecim 15;
trīduum, -i n. 67; trīnī or ternī, -ae, -a 3 each; triennium, -i n. 67; trīgintā 120; trecentī, -ae, -a cf. 120d;
triēns, trientis one third; tri-plex, -plicis 120f; triplicō, triplicāre triple
tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus 220, 2
tū, tui, tibi, tē 116
tueor, tuēri, —, tuitus or tūtus protect, make safe; tūtor, -ōris m. protector; tūtus, -a, -um safe
tuli see ferō
tum or tunc 66; tum cum 115b;
cum . . . tum while . . . at the same time, both . . . and
tumultus, -ūs m. commotion
tumulus, -i m. hillock, mound
turbō, -inis whirl; whirling storm, tornado, whirlwind
tuus, -a, -um 109c
ubi 119a; p. 183, 148; ubique p. 183
ullus, -a, -um 40, 65
ultrā 57; ulterior, -ius farther;
ultimus, -a, -um farthest
umbra, -ae f. shade, shadow
um-quam 119b
ūnā cum 58; ānus, -a, -um 65, 120; un-decim 120
unde p. 183; undique p. 183
urbs, urbīs f. 74, 21; urbānus, -a, -um (of the) city 109c
ürō, ūrere, ūssi, ūstus 220, 4
ūsque ad or in w. acc. all the way, up to or till; quo-ūsque how far
ūsus see utor 201
ut or uti 147, 148, 149
uter, utra, utrum 40, 65, 108;
uterum whether . . . an or;
uter-que, utra-que, utrum-que 65, 66b, 108, p. 182; utrimque p. 183; utrōque p. 182
UTOR, ÛTI, —, ěsus 6, 100, 182, 201; ěsus, -ēs m. use, experience; ex ěsus est it is of advantage; mihi ěsus est it is useful to me cf. 159g, p. 48, l. 7
uxor, uxōris f. wife
vacō, vacāre 55b; vacuus, -a, -um empty; vacuum a void
vadum, -i n. shallow, shoal, washing (place), ford, crossing
vagor, vagāri, —, vagātus wander about, roam
Vocabulary

valeō, valēre, valuī, valētūrus be strong; excel; be able, have power, be worth; valetūdō, -dinis f. health, illness
vallēs, -is f. valley
vāllum, -ī n. rampart, earthworks
varius, -a, -um various
vāstus, -a, -um empty, void, waste, wild; immense; vāstō, vāstāre lay waste, ravage
vehementer violently
vel 66
vēn-dō, vēn-dere, -didī, -ditus sell
vēn-o, vēn-īre, -īi, -itus go on sale, be sold
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus 92, 97, 98, 102–4
vēnor, vēnāri hunt; vēnātiō, -onis f. hunting; vēnātor, -ōris m. hunter
ventus, -ī wind
vēr, vēris, n. spring
verbōrum, -ī word
vereor, verēri, —, veritus 97, 100, 104, 182, 196
vergō, vergere bend, incline, slope
vergobretus, -ī m. vergobret
vertō, vertere, vertī, versus move, turn; vertī turn self, revolve; versāri 222c; dwell, conduct one’s self; versus 119b
vērūs, -a, -um true; vērō in truth, but; vērē truly; vērum but, but yet
vesper, -eris or -eri 76 evening star; west
Vesta, -ae f. Vesta, goddess of hearth and home
vester, vestra, vestrum your 109c
vēstigium, -ī n. footprint, track, trace; ē vēstigō forthwith, straightway
vestis, -is garment, robe; clothing, drapery; vestīre dress
vetō, vetāre, vetui, vetitus 123, 132 forbid
vetus, veteris 42, 86; veterāscere 223b
vexō, vexāre harass, ravage
via, viāe way, route, street
vincēsimus, -a, -um twentieth;
viciēs twenty times; viginti twenty p. 29
vicens f. change, turn; invicem in exchange, in turn
victus, -us m. see vivō
vicus, -ī 5g, 60; vicinus, -a, -um of same village; neighboring, near
videō, vidēre, vidī, visus 4; 4 Inf.; 97, 98, 121, 192; vidēri be seen; seem, appear Inf. āo. 155
vigilō, vigilāre be awake, be on guard; vigilia, -ae a lying awake, a night watch, guard p. 35
viginti see viciēs
vincīō, vincīre, vincī, vincūs bind, tie; vinculum, -ī n. bond, fetter, tie
vincō, vincere, vicī, victus 225; victor, -ōris m. winning, winner
vindicō, vindicāre claim as defender; defend, avenge
viola, -ae f. violet
vinum, -ī 82e; vīnea, -ae f. vinebower; shed used in military operations
Vocabulary

vir, viri man, husband, hero;
virtūs, -ūtis f. 43, 74, 16;
virilis, -e man's; manly
109c
virgō 78
viridis, -e verdant, green
vis vim, vi 80; virēs forces,
strength; vim facere do or use violence
vīta, -ae f. life; vivō, vivere,
vīxi, victus 74, 17; vivus, -a,
-um alive, living; vīctus, -ūs
m. living, food
vītō, vitāre, avoid, shun
vīx hardly, scarcely, barely; vīx-
dum hardly, yet
vocō see vōx
volō, volāre, volitāre 222c
volō, velle, volui 128, 137, 140,
186; voluntās, -tātis f. wish,
desire; voluptās, -tātis f. joy,
liking, pleasure
volvō, volvere, volvi, volūtus 82,
p. 47
vōs 116
vōx, vōcis f. voice; utterance,
word; magna vōx loud voice;
clāra vōx distinct voice; vocō,
vocāre call, name
vulgus, -i common people; vulgō
for common 77b
vulnus, -eris n. 78; vulnerāre
wound; vulnus inferre inflict
a wound
vultus, -ūs m. look, countenance,
expression, face
INDEX

[Numbers refer to paragraphs.]

Ablative, general meaning, 56, 6
  absolute (so called), 95, 96
  of accompaniment, 62
  of accordance, 56, 6; 96 c
  of agent, 62 d
  of cause or reason, 56, 6; 74, 15
  of comparison, 56, 6; 75
  of description, 62 g
  of manner, 96 b
  of means or instrument, 62 b
  of measure of difference, 68 b
  of price or value, 73
    place, in expressions of, 60, 61
    in names of towns, domus, and
    rūs, 60, 61; with certain words,
    230
  of respect or specification, 74, 16
  of separation, 63
  of time at or within which, 68 c
  of way or manner, 96 b
    with opus est, 71 c
  with prepositions, 58
    with utor, potior, 182 b
-ābus, dative and ablative, 55 a, note;
    77 a, 120

Accent, 35, 36

Accompaniment, with cum, 62

Accordance, ablative of, 56, 6; 96 c

Accusative
  of direct object, 56, 4; 74, 4
  of measure of extent, duration, etc.,
    56, 4, 68 a; 74, 17
  of place to which, with ad or in,
    60, 61
  predicate of object, 5; 74, 5
  predicate of subj. acc., 5 c; 74, 3
  subject of infinitive, 5 g: 56, 4,
    142
  "two accusatives," 155
  with prepositions, 57

Active voice, defined, 179

ad w. acc. of gerund, 121 b; cf. 158

Adjectives, declension, 83–90; 108–
  120, 150
  agreement of, 83
  as substantives, 64–5; 70–1 (64–5;
    70–1)
  comparison of, 88–92, 97–8
  possessive, 109 c
  pronominal, 108–18

Adjective pronoun, 64–5; 70–1

Adverbs, 69, 91–2

Adversative cum-clause, 115 b; 224
  qui-clause, 115 b

Agent, ablative of, with à or ab, 62 d
  dative of, 106

gaō, conjugation, 197–200

Agreement, 66 b, c; 83, 93–6

alius — alius —, one — another, 65
alter — alter —, one — the other, 65

Antepenult, 36

Appositive, 93–6

"As — as possible," 69, 90, 91

Attraction, subjunctive by, 137 b

audiō, conjugation in full, 207–10

capiō, conjugation, 202–5

Cardinal numbers, 120

Cases, defined, 56
  endings of, 55
  known by their use, 74, 1–22
  table of meanings, 56

castra, declined, 77

causā, of purpose, 59

Cause, ablative, 74, 15
  cum-clause, subjunctive, 115, 224
  qui-clause, subjunctive, 115 a, 224

quod, quoniam, 224–6

Characteristic clause, 151 b

Commands, 141, 143

Comparative adjectives, 89, 150
  with ablative, 56, 6

Comparative degree
  meaning "too," 69, 89, 91–2

345
Comparison of adjectives, 88–92, 97–8
Comparison of adverbs, 69
Complementary, infinitive, 132
Completed action, 183–5
Conditional sentences, 137 b, c; 141 b; 156
Conjugations distinguished, 169
Conjunctions, 66
cōnor, conjugation, 191
cōnsilium, declined, 77
Consonant, stems, 78–9
Consonant i, 22, 23
Consonants, pronunciation, 22–3
Contractions, 76, 178; 217; 219, 1, 4
cornū, declension, 81
cum, conjunction, 115 b, 119, 224
cum, enclitic with prons., 116
with abl. of accompaniment, 62
with abl. of manner, 96 b
cum, prep., 58, 62 a
Customary action, 183, 185

Dative, general force, 56, 3
of agent, 106
of indirect object, 5 f; 74, 6
of possession, 5 e; 105
of reference or concern, 56, 3;
73 e; 105–6, 159 g
of tendency, purpose, or result,
73 e; 159 g
w. spec. vbs. and adj., 230
"two datives," to denote purpose
and reference or person con-
cerned, 73 e; 159 g
dē or ex with abl. for gen., 66 c
Declension,
of nouns, 75–82
of adjectives, 83–90, 108–18
of pronouns, 108–18
Degree of difference, 74, 19
Deliberative subjunctive, 141
Demonstratives, 108–18
Deponent verbs, defined, 181–2
Description, 56, 2, 6; 62 g; 151
dic, imperative, 170 note
diēs, decl.; gender, 81 b
Diphthongs, 21, 27
Direct discourse, 142
Direct object, 5 d; 56, 4; 74, 4
Direction in space, 57, 60, 61
dis-, meaning, 220, 5
Division of syllables, 29
Divisions of time, pp. 35–7
dē, conjugation, 184
domus, declension, 81
cases in constructions of place,
60–1
dūc, imperative, 170 note
dūm, "while," "until," 147 d
duo, declension, 120
Duration, accusative of, 68
-e or -i, in ablative singular, 78–80,
84–9
-e, -er, pronunciation of, 24–26
 eius, distinguished from suus, 109 b, c
Endings, in conjugation, 124
in declension, 55
Entreaty, 141
eō, conjugation, 212–5
-ēs and -īs, in acc. pl., 78–80; 84
Exhortation, subjunctive, 141
Extent of space, 74, 17
faciō, passive of, 212–5
imperative, fac, 170 note
ferō, conjugation, 212–15
fīlia, declension of, 77
fīlius, declension of, 76
Finite moods, 125; 187–9; 191 a, b,
192–4; 196 a, b; etc.
fīō, conjugation, 212–5
First conjugation, in full, 187–90
First declension, of nouns, 77
fore = futūrum esse, 183
Forms, summary of, 37–55; 160–
182
Formation of verbs, 171–7
Fourth conjugation in full, 207–10
Future perfect indicative, use, 156 a

Gender, grammatical, 54, 55 f
Genitive, 56, 2
descriptive, 56, 2
possessive, 56, 2
price or value, 73
subjective, objective, 107
whole amount, 66 c, 72
with special verbs, etc., 230
Gerund, defined, 129; uses, 135
Gerundive, defined, 104; uses, 158
gradior, conjugation, 206
gratia, of purpose, 59
Growth of language, 218

Habitual action, imperfect of, 183
Harmony or Sequence of tenses, 147
Hortatory subjunctive, 141

i-consonant, 23
-i or -e in abl. sing., 78–9; 84
-i, pron. dative ending, 40
i-stems of third declension, 79
Imperative, uses of, 143; forms, 189, 191 b, etc.
dic, dúc, fac, fer, 170 note
Imperfect indicative and subjunctive, 137 c, 147 g; 156, 183–5, etc.
Impersonal verbs, 136; 140; 98 Irr., 106 c.
Indefinite pronouns, 65, 71, 108–19
Indicative, formation, 171
Indicative and subjunctive, compared, 138 b, c, d; rule for changing indicative to subjunctive, 137 b; 188, 193, 198, etc.
Indirect discourse, defined, 142
principal clause, 142–3
subordinate clause, 137 b
Indirect object, 56, 3; 74, 6
Infinitive, defined, 121–3; 127
distinguishing conjugations, 126, 169; in various case relations, 130–5
in indirect discourse, 142
Instrument, ablative of, 62 b
-iō, of third conjugation, 162, 202–6
Interrogative particles, 145
Interrogative pronouns, 65, 71, 108, 114, 119 a
-is and -ēs in acc. pl., 79, 80, 84, 86
index, declension of, 78
-ius and -īum, gen. and voc., 76–7
-iōs, pron. genitive ending, 40

"Jussive subjunctive," 141
-is and -se verbs, 127, 137, 140, 186
Less vivid future conditions, 156 a
Locative, endings, 55 a, b
Locative case, use of, 60–61
Locative meaning, 56, 7; 75; 77
Long vowels, 28

maior, pronunciation, 23
mālō, conjugation, 186
Material or composition, gen. of, 56, 2
Means or instrument, abl., 62 b, e
Measure of difference, abl., 68 b.
meus, vocative singular mi, 83
Middle verbs, 181
mille, declension and use, 120
Mixed stems of third declension, 79 c
Modes of the verb defined, inf., 121–7; ind., 136; sub., 138
More vivid future conditions, 156 a
multō, abl. of measure, 74, 19
multum, acc. of measure, 74, 17

navis, declension of, 79
-ne, interrogative enclitic, 145 a
nē, 69, 141, 148, 149, 155
Negatives, choice of, 69, 141
nōlī, with infinitive, 121, 141
nōlō, conjugation, 186
nōmen, declension, 78
Nominative as subject, 5 g; 74, 1
nōnne, in questions, 145 b
"Noun clauses," 122, 134, 142–3, 152–5
num, in questions, 145 c
Number, 66 b
Numerals, pp. 28–9; list, 120

Object of verb, 74, 4, 6
Objective genitive, 107
Obligation, or propriety, sub., 141
Obligation, or necessity, expressed by future passive participle, 106
oppidum, declined, 77
"ōrātiō obliqua," 142
Ordinals, 120

Participles, defined, 97–104
"Partitive genitive," 72
Parts of speech, 57–8, 64, 66, 69, 97–104, 113–5
Passive voice, defined, 181
Penult, 36
Perfect infinitive, formation, 99
Perfect participle, passive, 98
deponent, 100
Perfect stem, 163
Persons and things, 62
Personal endings of the indicative, 124, 168
Personal endings of the subjunctive, 124, 168
Place, general expression of, 60, 61
plus, declension, 150
Possession, expressed by genitive, 5 e, 109 b
   expressed by the dative, 106
Possessive adjectives, 109 c
Possibility, subjunctive, 141
possum, conjugation, 183
postquam, 69, 224
Potential subjunctive, 141
potior, ablative with, 182 b
potior, conjugation, 211
Predicate, defined, 74, 3, 4
   predicate accusative, 74, 3, 5
   predicate nominative, 74, 3
Prepositions, 57, 58
Present subjunctive, 139, 140
Present tense of indicative, meaning, 136–7
   "Primary tenses," tenses of the
   present or future, 147 f
Principal parts of verbs, 161–3
   "Principal tenses," see primary
tenses, 147
Prohibitions, subjunctive, 141; nul, 121
Pronominal adjectives, 64–5, 70–1, 108–18
Pronunciation, 21–36
pruvincia, declension of, 77
Purpose, expressed by, 59, 148, 158
Quantity of vowels, 27, 28
   of syllables, 33, 34
Quantity, position of words of, 68
-que, enclitic, 66
-que, indefinite particle, 76, 108, 119 b
Questions:
   indicative, of fact, 145
   subjunctive:
      of deliberation, 141 b
      of possibility, 141 b
qui-clauses:
   descriptive, 151
   determinative or characteristic, 151
   of purpose, 148
   of result, 149
   "rather," expressed by comparative, 69, 89, 91
   re-, red-, 220, 13
Reference or concern, 56, 3; 73 e; 150 g
Reflexive pronouns, 116 c
   distinguished from ipse, 118 a
Reflexive verbs, 181–2
Relative clause, 147–51
Relative pronoun, 115
Request or entreaty, expressed:
   by imperative, 142–3
   by subjunctive, 141
res, declined, 81 b
Respect, ablative of, 74, 16; 157
Result clauses, 149
-ro-stems in nouns, explained, 76
Rule for changing indicative to sub-
junctive, 137 b, 188, 193, 198, etc.
rus, rure, rur, in constructions of
   place, 61
s-stems, 42, 78 b
se-, sed-, 220, 13
Second conjugation, in full, 192–6
Second declension, 75–6
   of adjectives, 90
   "Secondary tenses," tenses of the
   past, 147 g
Semi-deponent verbs, audeo, fido
   (c-undo, dif-fido), gaudeo, soleo,
   see Vocabulary
Separation, ablative with verbs of, 63
   "Sequence of tenses," 147 f, g
Short vowels, 28 b
simul atque, 224
sine and cum in expressions of man-
   ner, 96 b
Sociative ablative, 62 a
Space, acc. measure of, 68
Specification, 74, 16
Subject, of finite verb, nom., 56, 1;
    74, 1
   of infinitives, acc., 56, 4; 74, 2
Subjunctive, formation, 172
   used to express:
      adversee or idea (opposition) with
         qui, with cum, 115, 224
      cause or reason, with qui, with
         cum, 115, 224
close connection with subjunctive or infinitive clause (attraction), 137 c
commands or prohibitions, 141
conditions and conclusion: less vivid future, contrary to fact, 156, b, c
deliberation, 141
description, in quī- clauses, 151
exhortation, 141
fear or anxiety, 153
obligation or propriety, 141
possibility, 141
purpose, with quī, quō, ut, or nē, 148
request or entreaty, 141
result, with ut, ut nōn, quīn, 149
situation, in cum-clauses, 115, 224
substantive idea, 152–5
after verbs of hindrance, prevention, or check, with nē, quō-
minus, or quīn, 155
with utinam, 141
adjectives as substantives, 64–5; 70–1
Substantive clauses, 146, 152–5
sum, conjugation in full, 183
Summary of forms of nouns and ad-
jectives, 37–56
Summary of forms of verbs, 160–78
Superlative degree, 69, 90
with quam, "as — as possible," 69, 90
Supine, formation; uses, 157–9
Syllables, division of, 29–32
quantity of, 33–4

Tables of:
endings of nouns, 55
endings of verbs, 168
conditions and conclusion, 156
indirect discourse, 142
natural harmony of tenses, 147 f, g
Tenses of participles, 97–104
of participle, 94 b, 97–101, 103
Terminations, see Endings, 55, 124
"Than," English, how expressed, 56, 6; 75, 69
Third conjugation, 197–206
Third declension adjectives, 83–9
consonant stems, 86
i-stems, 83–5; 87–9
Third declension nouns, 79, 80
Third declension participles, 97
Time at or within which, ablative of, 68 c
"Too," expressed by comparative, 69, 91
"Two accusatives," 155.
ubl, ut, postquam, simul atque, with indicative, 224
"Until," 57, 147 d
ut, "as," with indicative, 115, 147 b
utinam, wishing particle, 141
ūtōr, ablative with, 182 b
conjugation of, 201
v, ve, vē, vi, sometimes lost in per-
fest stems, 178, 217
vereor, conjugation of, 196
"Very," expressed by superlative, 69, 90–1
vesper, declension of, 76
vestus, declension, 86
vidēō, conjugation, 192–5
virgō, declension of, 78
vis, declined, 80
Vocative, regular formation, 75
or nouns, in -īus, 76
used in address, 56, 5; 74, 7
vocō, conjugation, 187–90
Voice, defined, 179, 180
Volitive subjunctive, 141
volō, conjugation, 186
Vowels, pronunciation, 21
quantity, 28
vulgus, declension of, 77
vulnus, declension of, 78
Whole, expressed by genitive, 72
by dē or ex with ablative, 66 c
Wish, expressed by subjunctive, 141
with utinam, 141
"Yes" and "no" questions, 145
To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

MAY 25, 1953